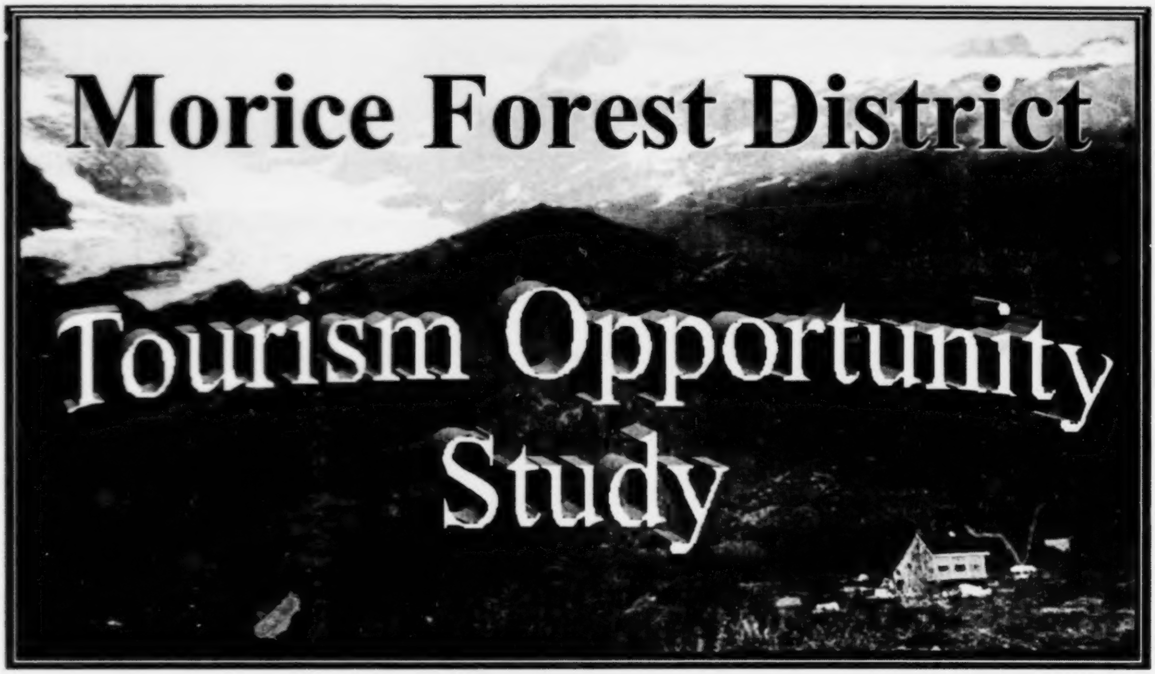
Morice Forest District

Tourism Opportunity Study



Prepared for the:

BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management

Prepared by the:

OFFICE OF THE WET'SUWET'EN
Moricetown, BC

In Partnership with:

MEREDITH & ASSOCIATES
Smithers, BC

& Study Team Associates:

LIONS GATE CONSULTING
Vancouver, BC

GEOSCAPE ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTING
New Westminster, BC

HILLCREST RECREATION CONSULTANTS
Quick, BC

CATHERINE BERRIS ASSOCIATES
Vancouver, BC

July 2002

106-01886/

Table of Contents

Executive Summary[1] A

1 INTRODUCTION 1

1.1 Study Purpose 1

1.2 Scope and Methodology 3

1.3 Report Structure 4

2 THE BC TOURISM INDUSTRY 5

2.1 Expenditures 5

2.2 Target Market Volumes 5

2.3 Employment in 2000 6

2.3.1 Growth in Tourism Employment 6

2.3.2 Wages and Salaries 6

2.3.3 Tourism-Related Business Establishments 6

2.4 Tourism GDP 7

2.5 Tourism: The Importer of the Export Sector 7

2.6 BC Tourism – Post 9/11 & Fore cast for 2002 8

2.6.1 North America 8

2.6.2 Asia/Pacific 9

2.6.3 Europe 11

2.7 Tourism and Rural Job Creation 12

2.8 Tourism and Regional Economic Development 12

2.9 Ecotourism and Activity Trends 13

2.9.1 The Evolving Adventure/Ecotourism Experience 13

2.9.2 Access and Opportunities 13

2.9.3 Technology 14

2.9.4 Societal Acceptance 14

2.9.5 Implications for Tourism Development in the Study Area 14

3 MORICE FOREST DISTRICT 17

3.1 Introduction 17

3.2 Morice Forest District – Overview 19

3.2.1 The Biophysical Setting 19

3.2.2 History of the Area 21

3.2.3 Communities 22

---

[1] Cover photo: Bernie Hut, owned and operated by Bear Mountaineering, Smithers, BC. Photo by Christoph Dietzfelbinger.

3.2.4 First Nations in the Morice Forest District 24
3.2.5 Employment and Income 25
3.2.6 Entrepreneurship and Training 27
3.2.7 Archaeological Sites and Trails 28

3.3 Visitor Statistics 29
3.3.1 Visitor Volume and Value 30
3.3.2 Visitor Origin 30
3.3.3 Trip Purpose 30
3.3.4 Visitor Demographics 31
3.3.5 Seasonal Variations 31
3.3.6 Overall Visitor Activities 31
3.3.7 Outdoor Activities 32
3.3.8 Visitor Spending Profile 33

4 WET'SUWET'EN FIRST NATION 35

4.1 Chapter Summary 35
4.1.1 Methodology 36

4.2 Part I: Aboriginal Tourism 36
4.2.1 First Nations people: A common worldview 38
4.2.2 The Changing Economy —on route to globalization 39
4.2.3 Historic Organizations 40
4.2.4 The Traditional System 41

4.3 Part II: Building the Aboriginal Tourism Sector 44
4.3.1 Legal, Political, & Economic Influences on Development 44
4.3.2 Globalization factors worth considering: 45

4.4 Contemporary Organizations 46
4.4.1 Keys to building strategic alliances 46
4.4.2 Office of Wet'suwet'en 46

4.5 Bands 48
4.5.1 Burns Lake Band 48
4.5.2 Nee tahi buhn 48
4.5.3 Wet'suwet'en First Nation (formerly Broman Lake Band) 49
4.5.4 Skin Tyee 49
4.5.5 Nat'oot'en First Nation 49

4.6 SWOT Analysis of Interests 51
4.6.1 Wet'suwet'en First Nation Tourism Initiatives 73

4.7 Conclusions 75

4.8 Recommendations 75

5 LAND USE PLANNING AND RESOURCE MANAGEMENT IN THE STUDY AREA 77

5.1 Land Use Planning and Tourism 77

5.2 Ecotourism and Adventure Travel Strategy for British Columbia 78

5.3 Tourism and Crown-Land Management 79
5.3.1 Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management 79
5.3.2 Land and Water British Columbia Inc. 80
5.3.3 Ministry of Water, Land & Air Protection 82

5.3.4 Ministry of Forests 83
5.3.5 BC Fisheries 84
5.3.6 Tourism British Columbia 84
5.3.7 British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office 84

5.4 Land Use Planning In The Morice Forest District 84
5.4.1 Strategic Planning 85
5.4.2 Local Level Planning 85

6 TOURISM RESOURCES OF THE MORICE FOREST DISTRICT & WET'SUWET'EN AREA OF INTEREST 87

6.1 Study Area and Features 87

6.2 Resource Area Description 87
6.2.1 Unit Desriptions 87
6.2.2 Area Polygons of High Tourism and Recreation Potential 87

6.3 Product Selection 94

6.4 Community and Product Matching 101

7 TOURISM OPPORTUNITY ANALYSIS 103

7.1 Snowmobiling 103
7.1.1 Description 103
7.1.2 Regional Overview 104
7.1.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 114

7.2 Historical Winter Adventure 121
7.2.1 Description 121
7.2.2 Regional Overview 121
7.2.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 125

7.3 Fresh Water Activity: Non-motorized (Canoeing, Rafting, Kayaking, Drifting and Associated River Activities) – Na'kiyhe 131
7.3.1 Description 131
7.3.2 Regional SWOT Summary 131
7.3.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 143
7.3.4 Fresh Water Activity: Non-motorized and Motorized Maps 147

7.4 Summer Trail Products (non-motorized) 151
7.4.1 Description 151
7.4.2 Regional Overview 152
7.4.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 163

7.5 Road Tours (Nyec'adihl'git) 171
7.5.1 Description 171
7.5.2 Regional Overview 171
7.5.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 175

7.6 Air Tour (Nyec'adihl'git) 181
7.6.1 Description 181
7.6.2 Regional Overview 181
7.6.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 185

7.7 Lake Touring 191
7.7.1 Description 191
7.7.2 Regional Overview 192

7.7.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 195

7.8 **Destination Lodge ('it tziwit ii)** **201**

7.8.1 Description 201
7.8.2 Regional Overview 202
7.8.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 214

7.9 **Hut System (Tahadak yikh khozlii)** **221**

7.9.1 Description 221
7.9.2 Regional Overview 222
7.9.3 Assessment of Lake and River Hut to hut systems 230
7.9.4 Market and Socio-economic Assessment 233

8 TOURISM ACTION PLANS 239

8.1 **Issues Overview** **239**

8.2 **Issues Scan** **239**

8.3 **Regional and Community Recommendations** **241**

8.3.1 Cooperating on Tourism Planning 241
8.3.2 First Nations Tourism Development 242
8.3.3 Tourism Business and Product Development 243
8.3.4 Marketing 246
8.3.5 Training and Education 247
8.3.6 Infrastructure 249

9 ANNEX A – DETAILED POLYGON DESCRIPTIONS 251

10 ANNEX B — DATA COLLECTION RESULTS 271

10.1 **Survey Results** **271**

10.2 **Respondent Profile** **271**

10.2.1 Tourism Survey Instrument 272

11 ANNEX C – PRODUCT PRE-FEASIBILITY PROFILES 205

12 ANNEX D – LIST OF ACRONYMS 221

13 ANNEX E – BIBLIOGRAPHY 223

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: The Adventure Tourism Experience 14
Exhibit 2: Morice TOS Plan Area 18
Exhibit 3: Ecoprovinces, Ecoregions, and Ecosections within the Morice LRMP area. 20
Exhibit 4: Population Trends for Houston & Granisle 22
Exhibit 5: Economic statistics for the Morice LRMP, 1996 25
Exhibit 6: Basic sector employment estimates (including Indian Reserves), 1996 26
Exhibit 7: After tax income estimates (including Indian Reserves), 1996 27
Exhibit 8: Overall Visitor Activities in Northwest BC 32
Exhibit 9: Outdoor Activities Undertaken in Northwest BC 33
Exhibit 10: Visitor Spending Profile in Northwest BC 34
Exhibit 11: INAC Land Registry for Lake Babine Nation 50
Exhibit 12: Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy – Product Development Initiatives 74
Exhibit 13: Existing Features and Facilities 89
Exhibit 14: Unit and Recreation Feature Polygon Descriptions 91
Exhibit 15: Climatic Characteristics for the Morice Forest District[1] 94
Exhibit 16: Product Descriptions 96
Exhibit 17: Snowmobiling Suitability Map 119
Exhibit 18: Ice Fishing Opportunities 123
Exhibit 19: Historical Winter Adventure Suitability 129
Exhibit 20: Freshwater Activity: Non-Motorized Suitability 149
Exhibit 21: Summer Trail: Non-Motorized Suitability 169
Exhibit 22: Road Touring Suitability 179
Exhibit 23: Air Touring Suitability 189
Exhibit 24: Lake Touring Suitability 199
Exhibit 25: Destination Lodge Suitability 219
Exhibit 26: Hut System Suitability 237

Executive Summary

Introduction

The tourism industry is one of the fastest growing economic sectors in the world economy. In BC, tourism is already the province's second largest industry – generating $9.2 billion in revenues with some 16,700 tourism-related businesses employing over 113,000 BC workers. British Columbia's tourism industry is expected to grow steadily over the next three years with the influence of the maturing baby boomer generation. With an increase in disposable income and leisure time, travel has become a priority for this segment of the population. There are also changes in the type of travel experiences being sought, with an increasing demand for specialty tours that cater to interests such as outdoor adventure, culture, education and wellness. Indeed, recent research would indicate that 'ecotourism' and 'adventure travel' is now the fastest growing segment of the tourism industry.

Many visitors to BC are already attracted to the province for its diverse natural beauty and outdoor recreational opportunities. Therefore, the province is perfectly poised to capitalize on the new opportunities for economic and employment growth possible from expansion in the ecotourism area. Rural BC communities, in particular, have a tremendous opportunity to expand and diversify their economic and employment base through land-based tourism development. Importantly, these opportunities for expansion in tourism are arriving at the same time that many rural BC communities are struggling with significant structural change in their traditional resource economies.

Cultural/heritage/aboriginal tourism is a sub-sector of the tourism sector, and one which shows promise for Northwestern BC. In total, there are approximately 1,250 cultural and heritage organizations, events and facilities in BC[2]. Interest in cultural tourism pursuits among BC's international markets compares favourable with interest levels associated with outdoors, golf and alpine skiing experiences. General interest in cultural tourism ranks second only to outdoor activity interest levels amongst Japanese, United Kingdom and German travellers. A Non-Resident Visitors Study undertaken in British Columbia clearly shows that half (51%) of travellers to BC claimed to have an interest in culturally based travel. Market opportunities exist in BC for the development of innovative and authentic cultural tourism experiences. Significant portions of all of the province's major geographic markets place importance on being able to experience various forms of culture during their travels.

The Office of the Wet'suwet'en – in partnership with Meredith & Associates of Smithers – was commissioned by the Ministry of sustainable Resource Management to undertake this Tourism Opportunity Study to identify opportunities for sustainable community-based outdoor recreation and backcountry eco/adventure tourism development in the Morice Forest District.

---

[2] Cultural tourism statistics sourced from: Ministry of Small Business, Tourism & Culture and Tourism BC, Strategic Directions for Culture and Heritage Tourism in British Columbia, Jim Lee and Dr. Peter Williams, November 1999.

Study Purpose

As the provincial tourism industry grows, demand for the Super, Natural experiences that have become the signature tourism product for the province will continue to increase. This study aims to support integrated resource and community planning to promote regional economic, social and environmental sustainability. Through updating the existing tourism baseline information and examining the region's tourism development potential, this study attempts to assist with: diversifying the regional economy; maintaining access to recreational resources for local residents; and minimizing conflicts among resource users. To achieve these goals, the purpose of this project is to:

- Update and enhance existing Forest Recreation Resource Inventory (FRRI) and Tourism Resource Inventory (TRI) data;
- Conduct research and analysis to identify land and resource issues that have a bearing on tourism and recreation development;
- Based on the above, identify the best opportunities for ecotourism and adventure travel development and make recommendations for their support and development; and
- Prepare an Action Plan that communities and government agencies can undertake to develop tourism opportunities in the region.

In addition to identifying key opportunities for tourism development, this report identifies important issues and constraints, which may threaten potential tourism growth in the study area.

It should be noted that this analysis is neither meant to be exclusive nor exhaustive. Rather, a major study objective is to identify products featuring the best development capability based on a combination of natural resources, market potential and local suitability. The ultimate value of this project is in identifying key opportunities and actions required to assist in the priority-setting of key players in tourism planning, and in providing further direction to communities, business people and organizations involved in tourism development in the region.

Study Objectives

The primary focus of this study's analysis is based on commercial outdoor recreation in the Morice FD and surrounding lands of interest to the Wet'suwet'en First Nations. Four major objectives involved in developing this TOS include:

1. Preparing an inventory of tourism operators, facilities, features, areas of use and infrastructure. Strategies involved to conduct this include: building on existing Forest Recreation and Tourism Resource Inventory (TRI) data; using existing data, previous studies, and first hand interviews and surveys of area tourism operators; identifying land and resource issues with a bearing on tourism development; and providing summary statistics on existing tourism activities.

2. Creating maps outlining the potential of the natural resource base to support defined tourism activities. Strategies involved to conduct this include: identifying up to 10 products/activities with high development suitability; reviewing the 1996 Northwest TRI product capability modelling; preparing an initial set of maps by adjusting the baseline using a feature-based

methodology; modifying product maps with input from industry and local community experts; and incorporating constraints where applicable and available.

3. Undertaking an economics-based analysis of Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats (SWOT). Strategies involved to conduct this include: using latest market research and information gathered through surveys and interviews; incorporating results of inventory compilation; and describing tourism opportunities in 10 tourism product areas.

4. Preparing a local ecotourism development Action Plan. Strategies involved to conduct this include: consulting with local stakeholders (elected officials, planning agencies, community groups, First Nations, tourism operators and recreational organizations); incorporating local concerns, constraints and issues about tourism planning; and preparing action plans which communities could follow in developing their tourism economies.

Study Methodology

To successfully conduct this TOS, a number of work steps were involved. This included:

- Reviewing previous studies to summarize of tourism opportunities.
- Surveying tourism operators, recreation groups, and agencies to identify information on existing operations and tourism opportunities.
- Compiling data through collecting, updating, refining and organizing information from government agencies and tourism operators.
- Conducting a preliminary product and community analysis report to identify key tourism opportunities.
- Establishing a status report and maps summarizing the process and its preliminary results.
- Conducting a tourism analysis to identify opportunities and related information in more detail, with specific implementation recommendations submitted as Draft Report.
- Finalizing the report and data to incorporate all reports, analysis, and map folios. Digital mapping adhered to provincial standards.

BC's Tourism Industry

BC's tourism industry is a vital and vibrant component of the provincial economy. In 1999, provincial tourism revenue totalled $9.2 billion, a 4.9% increase over 1998. This involved hosting approximately 22.3 million overnight visitors and employing an estimated 110,780 people, or 7.6% of the provincial labour force. Over a ten-year period, tourism employment rose 12.1% between 1990 to 1999 and contributed $2.3 billion in 1999 alone in wages and salaries.

Other impressive tourism industry statistics include the establishment of 17,075 tourism-related business operations in BC in 1999: a 2.2% increase from 1998, accounting for approximately 1 in 9 provincial business start-ups. Tourism industry growth figures within the provincial GDP include 0.7% in 1998, totalling $4.3 billion and accounting for 4.8% of the total provincial GDP. Furthermore, where traditional export industries ship commodities to markets in other countries, in tourism the consumers (markets) travel to the product. In 1999, $4.0 billion of BC's tourism revenue was earned in foreign exchange representing an increase of 8.2% over 1998 and a 35.5% increase since 1995.

For rural BC, the tourism industry's ability to create new and relatively stable long-term jobs for local residents is positive at a time when primary resource industries are experiencing economic downturns. The tourism sector also assists in promoting economic diversification in rural communities. In fact, because the majority of money spent generation is imported from other geographic regions, research suggests that tourism expenditures can multiply by five to seven times in local communities. Tourism in rural areas also acts as a 'recruiting' and revitalizing device to attract new residents and businesses to an area. Finally, the tourism industry facilitates exceptional lifestyle and entrepreneurial opportunities.

Ecotourism focuses on experiencing natural or indigenous culture in a way that minimizes impacts. Appealing to a global market, BC's high quality and diverse natural scenery offers competitive conditions for the province's expanding eco-adventure tourism sector. On a provincial scale, the value of ecotourism is estimated to be $350 million annually – the fastest growing segment of the BC tourism sector. With strong North American interests in ecotourism products, opportunities for expansion of BC's ecotourism sector are substantial.

In addition to an expanding outdoor adventure/ecotourism market, this niche market is also changing. This involves factors regarding access and opportunities to enjoy these products and technological change in the products offered. Access to a secure land base is crucial to ensure the continued ability to offer quality adventure tourism and ecotourism products. Technological innovations affect the adventure recreation experience in its ability to improve access/transportation, comfort, safety, communications and information. Lesser skilled participants are now more able to partake in activities at the more extreme end of the spectrum. The significance of increasingly sophisticated technology is its ability to continue to stimulate participation and open up new opportunities for business and market development.

Given that future tourism growth in Canada and BC will be driven by interest in outdoor experiences, particularly those in the soft adventure market and ecotourism, a number of implications for tourism development in the study area arise. The Morice region has many of the attributes needed to appeal to these markets, however, development will depend on key responses. Operators must understand the risk-reward relationship and provide the features and amenities that have the strongest appeal for local travel markets. These tend to be in the soft adventure category. They must incorporate technology and innovation so as to broaden market appeal for activities in demand, and improve their own competitiveness. They must seek greater co-operation with land managers and communities to ensure the Crown land base recognizes the demands and needs of tourism as a legitimate resource user. Communities must play a more prominent role by furnishing infrastructure and support services that underpin the industry and the employment and regional income benefits it can bring to local residents.

Morice TOS Plan Area

The Morice Forest District (or Timber Supply Area – TSA) encompasses 1,498,697 hectares and lies in the southeastern portion of the Prince Rupert Forest Region. The Morice Forest District (MFD) is one of nine TSAs in the Prince Rupert Forest Region and is administered from the Morice Forest District office in Houston, BC.

Houston is the major community in the MFD. Smaller communities include Topley and Granisle. The area surrounding Francois Lake the Highway 16 corridor are both well settled with farms and ranches. Ranching and the railway initially sustained the area – but the forest industry now anchors the MFD's economy. Two important lumber mills – among the most efficient and largest in the country – make forestry a very important employer. Major sports fishing in the rivers and lakes and significant wildlife, drive summer tourism, which supplements employment and income for local merchants and guides. The agricultural sector – mainly livestock production – is still an important contributor to the local economy

First Nations in the Morice Forest District

There are six First Nations with traditional territories in the Morice LRMP area and 17 Indian reserves.

There are two tribal councils affiliated First Nations in the plan area. The Office of the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs is based in Smithers and operates based on the hereditary system of governance. The Carrier-Sekani Tribal Council is based out of Prince George and is an elected body under the *Indian Act*.

The following are First Nations with traditional territories and reserves in the Morice area:

- Lake Babine Nation *(Burns Lake)*
- Nee-Tahi-Buhn Nation *(Burns Lake)*
- Skin Tyee Band Nation *(Burns Lake)*
- Moricetown Band *(Moricetown)*
- Burns Lake Band (*Burns Lake*)

All of the above First Nations groups have filed Statements of Intent with the British Columbia Treaty Commission, claiming traditional territories that cover almost all of the Morice LRMP area.

Land Use Planning & Resource Management in the Study Area

Tourism development in BC is expanding at rates well beyond overall economic growth rates. An increasing part of the industry is oriented to outdoor recreation products that rely in large part on access to the Crown land and resource base. The importance of Crown land to tourism industry development is seen in literature produced by the Council of Tourism Associations of British Columbia (COTA)[3]. At the 2002 annual BC Tourism Industry Conference, the industry ranked land use and marketing as the two top issues of concern for tourism in the province. Land use planning that values tourism interests, involvement of tourism interests in land use decisions, the availability of Crown land for purchase and tenure and relations between tourism and the forest industry were key issues.

---

[3] For example: On February 16, 2000 in Vancouver – The Private Forest Landowners Association (PFLA) joined today with the Council of Tourism Associations of BC (COTA) in the signing of a Memorandum of Understanding that addresses the importance of private land forestry and tourism interests.

Some progress has been made in recent years to improve tourism representation in the land use decision-making process. The Land and Resource Management Planning (LRMP) process has at least created a forum for discussing multiple use and sustainability concepts and tourism's possible role. The Tourism Opportunity Strategy (TOS) is a further step to sound land use because they profile the current status of local tourism development, provide detailed information required for sub-regional or community level planning, and can be used to identify develop and promote appropriate, sustainable tourism development opportunities.

The Morice Forest District is presently initiating an LRMP planning process for the Morice TSA. This TOS report is being prepared in order to feed into the LRMP schedule – which will formally begin in the fall of 2002.

A number of Provincial agencies play a role managing tourism values and activities. This includes the following: Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management (MSRM), British Columbia Assets and Land Corporation (LWBC); Ministry of Water, Land & Air Protection (MWLAP – formerly MELP – includes BC Parks), Ministry of Forests (MoF). Other relevant Crown corporations and agencies either directly or indirectly involved in tourism include: BC Fisheries, Tourism BC and the BC Environmental Assessment Office.

Tourism Profile of the Morice Forest District

The Morice TOS Forest District (FD) is in a prime area of BC for tourism development. Featuring magnificent scenic resources with abundant natural and pristine wilderness areas, the region has diverse opportunities for mountain and river recreation, camping, wildlife viewing, and a range of other tourism and recreation activities. A range of attractions, parks, and facilities, cater to tourism and recreational needs, supports these resources. Currently however, outdoor / adventure / cultural / heritage tourism products do not meet market demands. The opportunity to better capture this market through product development, enhanced tourism services and marketing is strong.

The tourism industry in the Morice FD, particularly outdoor/adventure tourism, has become a significant and growing component of the local economy. Although tourism ranks below forestry in terms of employment and employment income, it represents one possible opportunity for economic development in the area. Houston – located halfway between Prince George and Prince Rupert – is an overnight or refreshment stop for highway travelers. Traffic volumes continue to grow due to highway improvements and the growing number of ferry passengers embarking or disembarking at Prince Rupert. Furthermore, Houston benefits from being located along one of two highway routes to Alaska and has direct air access to major urban centres.

Recently, the tourism industry in the Houston and Granisle area has expanded into the outdoor/adventure and cultural tourism markets. The area is well endowed with scenic attractions and abundant wildlife populations, making it extremely well suited to both winter and summer outdoor/adventure tourism activities.

Visitor Trends

Access to up-to-date and pertinent visitor research is fundamental to the successful design, development and operation of a tourism service or product. Over the past number of years, provincial visitor survey initiatives have less than effectively surveyed visitors to this area of the province. The main item of concern is the lack of visitor survey / contact points addressing the Highway #37 "North To Alaska" highway corridor. Survey contact points have been facilitated along the Highway #16 corridor (usually Prince George & Prince Rupert) but visitors entering or exiting the region via the Highway #37 corridor are mostly missed during these provincial visitor surveys. In recognition that a vast number of visitors to the study area utilize this corridor, regional data summations are weak in this respect. Data from the 1995/96 Provincial Visitor Study is used in this study to review visitor information for North West BC (NWBC).

With respect to visitor volume and value, an estimated 2.2 million visitors travelled to NWBC for a day or overnight trip, 73% of who are residents of BC. The total NWBC share of provincial visitation is about 7%. Visitors to NWBC spend about $425 million per season with non-residents accounting for 33% of this spending and residents accounting for 67% of regional revenues. An average of $54 is spent per day during their stay with non-residents spending about $234 per stay compared to residents spending about $178 per stay. The total NWBC share of provincial tourism revenues is about 5%. Length of stay per visit in the area averages at 4.4 days for non-residents and 3.4 days for resident visitors.

The greatest number of visitors to the area originates from other parts of northern BC (55%). This is followed by other Canadians (38%), close-in and long-haul US visitors (23% and 17% respectively). Overseas visitors account for about 13% of the area's visitors. The trip main for tourists was for leisure purposes (81% non-residents and 86% residents). Other Canadians and US visitors were the most likely markets (21%) to have traveled for business purposes. Non-residents averaged 44 years of age and Long Haul/Overseas markets tended to be older with 38% aged 55 years and older. Summer season is by far the busiest tourism season in NWBC, however, high potential to expand winter-based tourism opportunities exists.

While in Northwestern BC, non-resident visitors showed substantial interest in a number of activities including visiting art galleries/museums/exhibits (25%), city/town sightseeing (16%) and freshwater fishing (15%). Virtually all resident visitors (93%) spent time visiting with friends and relatives during their visit to NWBC compared to only 8% of non-resident visitors.

During their trip to BC, non-resident visitors enjoyed a number of outdoor activities including wildlife viewing/bird watching (50%), visiting National or Provincial parks (43%), freshwater or saltwater fishing (16%). In addition, many non-resident tourists visited attractions such as historic sites (43%), art galleries/museums (28%) as well as First Nations cultural sites (26%). BC residents travelling in BC also partook in outdoor activities including sightseeing (41%) and wildlife viewing/bird watching (33%), hiking/backpacking (24%), and visiting attractions such as historic sites (31%).

Visitor spending by non-resident visitors included package tours purchased in BC (28%). Food, beverages and accommodation represent approximately one-half of the total tourism monies spent in BC (46%) by regional visitors, close-in 'other' Canadians and US visitors. A substantial proportion of expenditures also went towards transportation (18%) and package tours purchased in BC (16%) from the two latter groups. Regional visitors spent an additional 15% on accommodations while travelling in the region.

Tourism Product Selection

The BC government has identified over 50 potential tourism activities, which were evaluated by the consulting team to determine which offer the greatest potential for **outdoor, recreation-based & cultural tourism** development in the Morice Forest District and the Wet'suwet'en Area of Interest. A short-list was generated based on the consultants' knowledge of the resource base, market trends and economic factors of the study area, priorities defined by the funding agencies, and experience conducting similar studies in other parts of BC.

The list of relevant tourism activities was discussed with local tourism operators and activities were selected which the consultants and operators felt had the most potential for opportunity development. These activities were grouped or singled out into tourism products. Each tourism product may represent a number of activities that have a common relationship.

The tourism products evaluated are:

Snowmobiling	• Community circuit routes and mountain riding
Historical Winter Adventure	• Includes, ice fishing; dog sledding, snowshoeing, ski touring and trapping. Link to lodge or hut system and cultural experience..
Freshwater - Non-motorized: Canoeing / Rafting/Drifting/River Activities	• Along lakes and rivers including the Bulkley and Morice . Opportunities to link to fly and other fishing instruction, wildlife viewing, cultural interpretation. Link to destination lodges, hut systems.
Summer Trails (non-motorized)	• Link to cultural heritage. Access to significant features and viewscapes, link to lodges and hut systems.
Road Tours	• Link to cultural heritage, scenic and wildlife viewing.
Air Tours	• Link to cultural heritage, scenic and wildlife viewing.
Destination Lodge	• Mid country and Wilderness resorts
Hut system	• Backcountry snowmobile, hiking. Lake shore huts. Link to Backcountry winter, snowmobiling and summer trails..
Lake Tours	• Link to fishing, cultural activities, lodges, hut systems

These final products can be regarded as the best short-term options for outdoor recreation-based tourism products. However none exist in isolation, and opportunities to build on clusters of tourism products or where products could be linked are extremely important and are described in this report.

The "top products" should not be considered an all-inclusive list as there are likely other tourism products or activities not evaluated for in this study, which have enormous short or longer term potential. For example, as the primary focus for tourism development in this study is outdoor recreation products, an activity such as a festival or cultural event, which may have high potential in the short term, was not evaluated.

Each of the selected tourism products was also evaluated to determine the land's suitability to support the product.

It should also be noted that mature, well developed tourism products such as fishing and hunting have not been examined during this study because it was felt that the opportunity for growth was more significant in newer and less developed products.

Wet'suwet'en First Nations Tourism Initiatives

By 1999, several economic, training and development programs had been initiated through the Wet'suwet'en Forestry Department. Throughout this consultation processes, the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs have expressed a great deal of interest in seeking opportunities in one of Canada's fastest growing industries – Aboriginal Tourism

After substantial consultation with Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs and clan members, three (3) significant opportunities were defined to implement a 'tourism strategy'. These projects have been engineered to capture the essence of all Wet'suwet'en interests, and to capitalize on all eight sectors of tourism. Three projects were selected to ensure that tourism development utilizes all Wet'suwet'en resources and will act as models for further tourism development. These include: Wet'suwet'en Tourism Services, Trails and Morice River Rafting.

PROJECT COMPONENT	OVERVIEW
Wet'suwet'en Tourism Services (WTS)	• The WTS will be organized as a destination marketing organization or tourism bureau • The WTS will support industry {tourism} development and will provide the infrastructure necessary to address the concerns of the Wet'suwet'en • The WTS will be employed with a mandate to: o Address cultural and territorial protection with Government and industry; o Ensure authentic product development; o Support Wet'suwet'en community economic development; and o Maintain cultural preservation and enhancement through research and development
Trails	• The Wet'suwet'en territories are linked intricately by a vast network of historical trails • The trails project will provide an infrastructure for development in all sectors of the tourism industry • Two delivery methods are envisioned: o A detailed information booklet about indigenous culture, ecosystems, botanical, medicinal and geographic features o Through a series of experiences organized by the Wet'suwet'en • The 'trails experience' envisioned includes: o A welcoming ceremony & feast o While on trail, visitors will learn about Wet'suwet'en culture from a knowledgeable Hereditary Chief o A variety of options will be provided. From "prepared comfort" to a rudimentary, survival-type experience where visitors learn how to live off the land in an indigenous manner and under the auspices of an experienced Wet'suwet'en outdoor-person • Two trails are presently under construction: o The Maxan Trail (located in the Lakes Forest District), and o The Cronin Trail located north of Moricetown • There are concerns regarding the potential for recreation and tourist use of trails conflicting with traditional use

Morice River Rafting	▪ This rafting product will start at Morice Lake (Morice Forest District) and will journey for 12 days through Wet'suwet'en and Gitxsan territories ▪ Product is targeted to integrate with Anthropology 112 (through Northwest Community College {NWCC}) and will allow the visitors/clients to experience Wet'suwet'en culture, heritage sites, etc. ▪ Resource instructors from NWCC will teach the curriculum of Anthropology while Wet'suwet'en will provide the value-added experience & knowledge ▪ Day trips along historical trails will provide extra activities

Tourism Opportunity Analysis

Snowmobiling

Snowmobiling has been increasing in popularity over the past few years. Advancement in design, weight, reliability and horsepower has enabled sledders or snowmobilers to access difficult terrain and to achieve greater speeds and distances. Logging roads have provided access to remote and spectacular mountain ranges. Avalanches, inclement weather, clouds and resulting loss of visibility are hazards that are increasing in profile as sledders continue to push the limits advanced by technology.

There is good resource attributes and snow conditions for snowmobiling throughout the District. The major limiting factors include distance from major regional markets and the lack of service infrastructure. Also, existing markets are self-guided and do not purchase guiding services. Communities can build on successes by creating more infrastructure and services aimed at attracting more of the regional market.

Historical Winter Adventure

The Historical Winter Adventure Product is a tourism concept that incorporates a number of winter outdoor recreation activities that are founded in traditional use and in winter survival skills. The objective is to be part of the Canadian frontier - to interact with the land under the rigors of winter without undue discomfort.

The product incorporates winter activities with historical economic and survival activities such as trapping and ice fishing. Participants can use a lodge to return to or may follow a trapper cabin (or hut) system. Trapping requires the collaboration of a trapper licensed for the specified area. The latest humane trapping devices are to be used with explanations regarding traditional methods and use. Hunting is not included in the product but can be added with due consideration for licenses and regulations. Photography is a similar activity that requires tracking but is non-consumptive.

A large part of this product is the linkage to history of the First Nations and the early pioneers. It means to emulate some aspects of the lifestyles. Traditional methods of transport and of trapping may be discussed and included unless it results in unnecessary duress to the participant or is inhumane to the animals. Interpretation of tracks on the snow, of techniques for ensuring success in trapping, of fishing methods under ice and in streams, of tracking game, of the history of the land and its people are integral. Songs, ritual, stories and other known winter social activities can be provided through a lodge. Modern conveniences are there to compliment the experience.

The potential for this product is average because at present there is very little product development or market awareness. Except for snowmobiling and skiing, there is not a significant demand for secondary pursuits. The fact that the existing resorts/lodges pursue few if any winter activities is indicative of how difficult it is to develop a viable winter clientele. There are some high quality lodges in very close proximity to high quality winter features such as ice fishing on Babine Lake yet the market has never been cultivated.

Fresh Water Activity: Non-Motorized (Na'kiyhe)

This water activity product includes an array of recreation activities utilizing canoes, kayaks, rafts and smaller skiffs (may be motorized with small engines) as a means to travel along a fast to slow moving river. Complementary features such as scenery, sport fish, wildlife, beaches, waterfalls, rapids, pools, ledges, standing waves, other water features and recreation sites and water access allow for more diverse product development. These activities can be closely linked on one hand to an "activity experience" as in whitewater kayaking or rafting or to an interpretive and instructional product, for example where the proper methods for fly-fishing are imparted. Cultural heritage can be an important part of the "tour" component of freshwater activities.

Water activities are principally divided into two different groups: Flat water and Whitewater.

Flatwater activities include:

- Lake related recreation 1) Pleasure canoeing, often to fish, on smaller lakes where wind is not a major factor or 2) Canoe tripping on lake chains (a string of lakes that may require portages along creeks that cannot be navigated.
- River related flatwater recreation usually involves paddling in open canoes; generally these are day trips but can include multi-day trips.

Whitewater recreation activities

- Focused on rivers, the opportunity is part of an "activity experience" and requires swift running water.

Long-term trends show rising participation rates among North American markets, particularly among soft adventure participants rather than the extreme enthusiast market. All of these markets are seeking a broader outdoor adventure experience and may decide to participate in recreational paddling once in the region. The Morice FD can offer a range of close-in/remote adventures and is very well positioned to attract more visitors.

There is moderate potential in the soft adventure/participant category for domestic, short-haul and German markets. All of these markets are seeking a broader outdoor adventure experience and will decide to participate in recreational paddling once in the region. The Morice has a range of close-in/remote adventures. Native cultural interpretation, nature observation, wildlife viewing and fishing are also attractants for these markets. The German market, especially, is interested in wildlife viewing.

The major constraining factor is a lack of grade 3+ water that would attract enthusiasts and adventure seekers. Also the area does not boast a lakes series with connecting waterways (rivers, streams) and portages that are usually preferred over single, isolated large lakes. Lakes connected in such a manner may provide opportunities for multi-day wilderness paddling trips. This should focus attention more on the casual participant interested in the softer, short duration adventures. Kayaking, rafting and fishing will be of more interest to the existing regional and short-haul travellers (western US and Canada) to the region, more so than canoeing.

The ability to package sport fishing, nature observation, historical interpretation with boating activities can help operators diversify, but avoidance of high use locations will be necessary to minimize conflicts with other users.

Summer Trail Products: Non-Motorized

Trail products include hiking (generally frontcountry, mid-country or from a lodge), backpacking (midcountry/backcountry), animal assisted, such as llama or horse packing (primarily backcountry) or horseback riding (front country to backcountry). The activities take place on trails or off trail, terrain permitting.

Frontcountry and midcountry *hikes* are primarily single day. Backcountry trips are primarily multi-day. Midcountry trips can be either single or multi-day. Day use is usually based from a lodge, resort or guest ranch, ideally in an attractive natural setting where the operation of a ranch is feasible, and where there is easy accessibility to a network of trails. Multi-day trips or *backpacking*, set in the midcountry or backcountry, usually requiring wilderness or near wilderness settings, and cabins or camps to accommodate recreationists. Accessibility to trails is required and alpine or sub-alpine zones are a preferred destination if possible. However, steep, rocky or boggy areas are considered as undesirable for commercial ventures because they are dangerous and can create too much liability for operators.

The *llama/goat packing* product is essentially a hiking product, wherein llamas/goats are used to pack the gear with participants walking or hiking alongside. Horse packing is generally associated with the guest riding alongside on another horse. Llamas and goats are very sure-footed, and can access most areas that a hiker is willing to go. There is also some novelty associated with the animals and this can be an attractant in itself, although the prime motivation for participants is a wilderness experience in scenic remote terrain.

Trails are the key ingredient for the viability of any *horse-packing* operation, and therefore trails (and roads) are the primary screen. Good trails or narrow gravel roads are preferred, as these provide ideal footing for the horses, yet provide the rider with a sense of being part of the surroundings. Wider roads serve mainly as access to narrower ones or trails. Features such as attractive scenery, cabins, waterfalls, lakes etc. can enhance the experience. Alpine areas, if accessible, are a considerable attractant.

Generally, hiking and backpacking are self-guided. Horseback riding is generally associated with a guide. Llama, goat or horse packing typically involve a guide/outfitter who offers overnight (or longer) pack trips into wilderness areas and which naturally include camping, cooking and other guide services. Operators offer both moving trips (move each day) and day trips from a base camp.

The potential for development in the region is average. There are good quality resources but market volumes to the area are quite low and it is not known as either a hiking, biking, riding or trekking destination. Nevertheless, among existing visitors to Northwest BC, hiking/backpacking is the third most important outdoor activity among non-residents. The potential for commercial hiking tours spans a full range of options from multi-day trekking tours to short interpreted tours of the frontcountry.

The key limiting factors is the overall lack of exposure and well-known trail systems. Many hiking participants become repeat clients, so increasing the opportunity for new experiences should increase the potential for repeat customers. Further interpretation of unique features like the lakes and river system and First Nations would significantly enhance the frontcountry hiking product.

The potential for commercial hiking tours spans a full range of options from multi-day trekking tours to short interpreted tours of the frontcountry.

Road Tours (Nyec'adihl'git)

This activity focuses on driving and sightseeing, both on highway and in cities/towns. While primarily self-guided, guided bus and motorcoach tours are also considered. Sightseeing is an activity very closely associated with automobile touring. There are opportunities for touring on gravel secondary roads. Comfortable and safety equipped large Sport Utility Vehicles are a preferred mode of transport.

Road tours require high scenic values and corresponding viewpoints and points of interest. Road tours can be linear or circle, or be part of other tours such as a water cruise and rail tour. They are ideal for those individuals seeking an adventure in safety and comfort and for those who do not choose or are unable to take their own vehicles.

The Morice has a diversity of landforms, with rugged mountains to the southwest and rolling, gentle terrain in the north and east. The lakes and rivers are renowned for their beauty and the quality of the fishing. There is an abundance of large game species for hunting or wildlife viewing. Much of the landbase is readily accessible by two- or four-wheel drive vehicle. Houston has a core of service businesses, which would allow it to serve as a hub for circle tours to surrounding features and communities. These conditions are favourable for a road-touring product linked to a variety of short-duration outdoor activities.

Air Tour (Nyec'adihl'git)

The Air Tour and Access Product is associated with scenic touring as well as providing access to and opportunities for mountain biking, paragliding, hiking, skiing and fishing. It utilizes the diversity of helicopters and the affordability of fixed wing aircraft. It compliments many tourism activity products. It has two components:

- An ***air tour*** allows tourists an opportunity to view surrounding landscapes while experiencing flying. The tours are best limited to an hour. Dramatic landscapes or diverse features are essential.
- The ***air access tour*** contains an air tour component but it is primarily to get recreationists to where they want to be. The turn around time from the base to the delivery area should be done within the shortest time possible. It is most suited for the helicopter. The access tour can deliver fishermen to the best fishing hole and, if need be, to instantly transfer them to another hole.

This is an activity that is best managed by existing guides. Mountain bikers, hikers and ski tours can be delivered to the summit to enjoy the alpine/subalpine ridges and can be picked up or may return by trail. They may take a picnic lunch. Heli-skiing and paragliding activities require drop off at the summit of pristine snowfields, pickup at the base of the hill and then a drop off once again at the summit. The access tour is most profitable where the features are within a 15-minute flight of the base camp or airfield.

The potential for flight-related outdoor activities in the Morice is average because of the area's highly altered terrain due to timber harvesting. There are good opportunities for short-duration tours out of Houston to key recreational features like Nadina and Nanika mountains. The outstanding features of the extreme southwest are too distant to access from Houston but could be a viable product for a lake-based fixed wing operator on Ootsa or Francois Lake. The south lakes have good potential because of their relative remoteness and lack of development.

Lake Touring

The lake cruising product encompasses a range of vessels, from larger vessels carrying dozens of tourists to smaller boats carrying less than a dozen passengers. The focus of this resource evaluation is on vessels with linkages to a large lake such as Babine Lake with lakeside communities, accessible features and high-level scenery. Cruising in large lake settings has several distinct segments:

1. A ***large vessel cruise*** that can provide a sightseeing tour of the lake or provide access to the larger lakeside communities and accessible features. Generally, these operators carry over 50 passengers and may be scheduled runs or associated with bus and other tour packages.

2. A ***small vessel cruise*** allows for the potential of a scheduled or unscheduled link to various lakeside communities as well as providing custom tours to accessible features.

3. The ***mothership-kayaking*** segment, which involves kayak touring based on a live-aboard vessel, which transports the kayaks and passengers from destination to destination. This expands the range visitors can travel and allows for more luxurious amenities while decreasing land-based campsite needs/impacts and vulnerability to declining weather conditions. Associated with large lakes with complex shorelines.

4. The ***houseboat*** segment is a self-guided adventure on a fully furnished small vessel. Typically houseboats have all the modern conveniences and are available in models that sleep from six to sixteen people. Boats may be equipped with swim slides & ladder and all have complete kitchen, sleeping and bathroom facilities.

The potential for motorized boat tours of the region's lakes is modest, with the best opportunities on Babine Lake. Tours that link together outstanding features, quality activities, shore excursion possibilities and historical cultural viewing would create the most market interest. To target the largest possible market the tours should be linked to other activities on water or land. For example lake cruises could be included among activities offered at lodges, hotels, etc., and be linked to road or bicycle tours. Vessels could also be used for charter tours -- e.g., dinner cruises, barbeque and luncheon cruises, weddings, etc. If accompanied by good waterfront development, lake cruises could be instrumental in drawing tourism interest to communities such as Granisle.

Destination Lodge ('it tziwit ii)

Destinations lodges offers private accommodations through separate rooms or cabins. Destination lodges or resorts perform the function of a regional anchor that can support a variety of outdoor adventure tourism products. Traditionally these activities have centred on fishing and hunting, but resorts are now focusing on non-consumptive activities such as Nordic skiing, hiking, wildlife viewing and cultural interpretation (components of ecotourism). Activities associated with the lodge can be self-guided or guided with the lodge providing the guides or drawing on the services of local tourism entrepreneurs. Lodges can be accessed from the fly-in backcountry or the paved road frontcountry. The facility can be rustic with only the most basic features or offer full service amenities.

There are two different types of resort locations:

- A mid-country resort, which is off the main travel corridors but road accessible and generally fairly close to area communities.
- A wilderness resort, which is generally off the highway system and requires access either by boat or air.

The backcountry lodge potential in the Southwestern Lakes is particularly good. There are some outstanding lake and mountain features in the unit which could be built around fishing, river/lake activities, wildlife viewing, nature observation and air tours. However, this potential may be limited by beetle-kill harvesting that will likely take place over the next 10 years. The potential in the front and mid-country areas relates more to raising the occupancies of existing lodges and resorts. Currently, this inventory is under-utilized and could be more involved in packaging outdoor adventures as a way of developing their own markets.

New and existing facilities should be taking a closer look at themed resorts. Major resorts in BC in Tofino (storm watching), 100 Mile House (dude ranching) and the Rockies (parks, wildlife viewing) are built around themes and similar strategies could generate a more attractive product in the Morice.

Hut System (Tahadak yikh khozlii)

Wilderness huts are generally built to support outdoor activities in a given area as opposed to being a tourist destination unto themselves. Originally, these huts were used to provide safe refuge for climbers in high alpine areas, who needed a base to climb from or in the case of inclement weather, emergency shelter. More recently, huts are being designed and built to provide greater access to the backcountry, particularly to the soft adventure market. The key advantage of huts is eliminating the need to carry equipment such as tents and cooking supplies. Within the spectrum of accommodation in the outdoors, huts fall within the "rustic" category.[4] Huts can be a single destination hut or a hut-to-hut system. The activities supported by the hut product can include hiking, climbing/mountaineering, mountain biking, backcountry skiing, cross-country skiing, snowshoeing, snowboarding, canoeing and boating,

---

[4] "Greening of Remote Tourism Lodges", Pam Wight & Associates, 1993.

The hut product can be either an individual destination hut or a system of huts. They can be big accommodating large groups or small. Generally they are single room structures that may be high end or rustic. There are a number of single or system hut product types each with a particular set of unique attributes. These are the *Lake, Trail* and *River Huts*. These hut product types have both different and common criteria.

There is some potential for hut development in the Morice Forest District, but the lack of development in other outdoor products and uncertainties about ownership and management will exert limitations. On the other hand, hut development would significantly enhance product development in backcountry areas, particularly the Southwestern Lakes. The best hut systems are usually associated with access to some outstanding outdoor recreation feature or activity for which there is untapped market potential.

In the Morice, huts could improve a high-potential lake/river product in the Southwestern Lakes. All three of the above-mentioned hut systems were developed with public capital, in part because they occurred on Crown/public land. The involvement of multiple stakeholders and associated communities will be critical to hut development because of its multi-use character and potential to benefit a spectrum of products.

Tourism Action Plans

Tourism Action Plans focus on broader tourism and community development issues that have implications for product development. The focus here is on correcting weaknesses and gaps that may impede development. Without the basic building blocks of economic development, communities will find it difficult to attract and grow the investment, entrepreneurship, labour and infrastructure needed to create high value tourism.

Key development challenges include the following: developing local commitment, preparing highly suitable tourism products for the market, developing quality and competitive tourism products, and attracting the required financing and investment capital for tourism development. Through extensive community consultation, two main community challenges also arise. These include developing appropriate and inclusive adventure products and expanding the economic benefits derived from tourism development locally.

Based on these challenges, a number of regional and community recommendations have been developed. This report summary concludes with the following recommendations:

- **Cooperating on Implementation**: distribute the TOS and other information/education material to increase knowledge and interest in implementation; consider a regional coordination approach to implement strategic tasks; establish a one-year action plan to identify and conduct high priority tasks; encourage the development of a Morice TSA Tourism Organization; work with senior government agencies to implement tourism development.
- **Cooperating on Tourism Planning**: communication with local politicians to convey fiscal significance of tourism; compare/share tourism strategies between communities; prepare annual tourism development progress report card; consider developing stay-at-home tourism products; identify opportunities for corporate collaboration on tourism products.

- **First Nations Tourism Development**: encourage linkages between aboriginal tourism organizations; investigate existing programs/funding sources for potential development guidance; encourage the implementation of a visitor services program to raise cultural awareness and mitigate potential problems.
- **Tourism Business and Product Development**: investigate the feasibility of local operator accreditation; create tourism opportunity lists using this report as a baseline; promote rental and transportation opportunities in support of product development; prepare listing of cultural experiences to add to a primary eco-tourism adventure; compile and maintain planning resource materials at economic development and band offices for use by local entrepreneurs; support business development through establishment of group of business mentors and local financial experts.
- **Marketing**: establish clear market vision and position for the community; more cooperative marketing within the Morice region; encourage targeted product development; provide packaging assistance to smaller operators.
- **Training and Education**: distribute adventure tourism certification program information; recruit leaders and key partners to promote tourism career opportunities; gather and distribute training materials/resources for interested local entrepreneurs; examine delivery of viable entrepreneurship and skill development programs to encourage more First Nations businesses.
- **Infrastructure**: raise awareness of the importance of the local road infrastructure in the region for tourism purposes; work to ensure public air and bus linkages are complimentary and supportive of the region's tourism industry; investigate the further development of rail passenger service to the region; undertake a community recreation plan dedicated to trail system development with particular attention on integrated multi-use trail system.

Chapter 1

1 Introduction

The tourism industry is one of the fastest growing economic sectors in the world economy. In BC, tourism is already the province's second largest industry – generating $9.5 billion in revenues in 2000 (a 4.1% increase over 1999[5]) – with some 17,343 tourism-related businesses (up 1.6% from 1999) employing about 111,890 BC workers[6]. British Columbia's tourism industry is expected to grow steadily over the next three years with the influence of the maturing baby boomer generation. With an increase in disposable income and leisure time, travel has become a priority for this segment of the population. There are also changes in the type of travel experiences being sought, with an increasing demand for specialty tours that cater to interests such as outdoor adventure, culture, education and wellness. Indeed, recent research would indicate that 'ecotourism' and 'adventure travel' is now the fastest growing segment of the tourism industry.

Many visitors to BC are already attracted to the province for its diverse natural beauty and outdoor recreational opportunities. Therefore, the province is perfectly poised to capitalize on the new opportunities for economic and employment growth possible from expansion in the ecotourism area. Rural BC communities, in particular, have a tremendous opportunity to expand and diversify their economic and employment base through land-based tourism development. Importantly, these opportunities for expansion in tourism are arriving at the same time that many rural BC communities are struggling with significant structural change in their traditional resource economies.

The Office of the Wet'suwet'en – in partnership with Meredith & Associates of Smithers – was commissioned by the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management to undertake this Tourism Opportunity Study to identify opportunities for sustainable community-based outdoor recreation and backcountry eco/adventure tourism development in the Morice Forest District.

1.1 Study Purpose

The provincial government has been contracting the preparation of tourism resource inventories (TRIs) – including tourism capability/suitability modeling – for over eight years. During that time, major strides have been made in the digital information available in the province, and planning efforts have been supported by ever-improving information. The entire province has been covered by tourism resource inventories at 1:250,000 and most of these have been updated within the past few years. Since the BC government changes of May 2001, the Ministry of Sustainable Resource

---

[5] All BC provincial tourism statistics are sourced from: *The Value of Tourism*, February 2002, Tourism British Columbia, www.tourismbc.ca

[6] It should be noted that this figure does not include British Columbians who were self-employed in the tourism industry.

Management (MSRM) have taken over the task of undertaking Tourism Opportunity Studies within BC[7].

The TRIs are useful for land use planning of large regions, but more detailed information is required to assist with local area planning, both community and tourism business development. Information is needed to specifically lay a foundation for future economically, socially and environmentally suitable tourism opportunities. This will provide support for community-led tourism development within forest recreation areas and on other Crown and private land.

The information obtained through this project will improve on existing Tourism Resource Inventory (TRI) and Forest Recreation Resource Inventory (FRRI) data and will enable government to support the efforts of individuals, municipal governments, First Nations and tourism & recreation associations to:

- Diversify local economies;
- Maintain access to recreational resources for local residents; and
- Minimize conflicts among resource users.

The purpose of this project is to:

- Update and enhance existing FRRI and TRI data;
- Conduct research and analysis that will identify land and resource issues that have a bearing on tourism and recreation development;
- Based on the above-two steps, identify the best opportunities for ecotourism and adventure travel development and make recommendations for their support and development; and
- Prepare an Action Plan that communities and government agencies can undertake to develop tourism opportunities in the region.

As the provincial tourism industry grows, demand for the *Super, Natural* experiences that have become the signature tourism product for the province will continue to increase. This study should contribute to integrated resource and community planning targeted towards economic, social and environmental sustainability. In addition to identifying key opportunities for tourism development, this report identifies important issues and constraints that threaten the potential for tourism growth in the study area.

The analysis is not meant to be either exclusive or exhaustive. The study's objective is to identify those products with the best development capability based on a combination of natural resource, market potential and local suitability. The ultimate value of this project is in identifying key opportunities and actions required to assist in the priority-setting of key players in tourism planning, and in providing further direction to communities, business people and organizations involved in tourism development in the region.

---

[7] The Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture no longer exists. Land-use planning staff have been transferred to MSRM.

1.2 Scope and Methodology

The primary focus of this study's analysis is on commercial outdoor recreation in the Morice Forest District and the surrounding lands, which are of interest to the Wet'suwet'en First Nations.

There were four major objectives for this project:

1. **Prepare an inventory of tourism operators, facilities, features, areas of use and infrastructure**
   - Build on existing Forest Recreation and Tourism Resource Inventory (TRI) data
   - Use existing data and previous studies where available
   - Use first hand interviews and surveys of area tourism operators
   - Identify land and resource issues with a bearing on tourism development
   - Provide summary statistics on existing tourism activities
2. **Create maps outlining the potential of the natural resource base to support defined tourism activities**
   - Identify up to 10 products/activities deemed to have the best suitability for development
   - Review the 1996 Northwest TRI product capability modelling
   - Prepare an initial set of maps by adjusting the baseline using a feature-based methodology
   - Modify product maps with input from industry and local community experts
   - Incorporate constraints where applicable and available
3. **Undertake an economics-based analysis of Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats (SWOT)**
   - Use latest market research plus information gathered through surveys and interviews
   - Incorporate results of inventory compilation
   - Describe tourism opportunities in 10 tourism product areas
4. **Prepare a local ecotourism development Action Plan**
   - Consult with local stakeholders including elected officials, planning agencies, community groups, First Nations, tourism operators and recreational organizations
   - Incorporate local concerns, constraints and issues about tourism planning
   - Prepare action plans which communities could follow in developing their tourism economies

The **work steps** for this project included the following:

- **Review of previous studies** and summary of tourism opportunities.
- **Survey** of tourism operators, recreation groups, and agencies to identify information on existing operations and tourism opportunities. A total of 100 tourism contacts were identified

as based in or operating in the study area. The response rate through survey and telephone interviews was 10%.

- **Data compilation** collect, update, refine and organize information from government agencies and tourism operators.
- **Preliminary product and community analysis report** to identify key tourism opportunities.
- **Status report and maps** summarizing process and preliminary results.
- **Detailed tourism analysis** identifying opportunities and related information in more detail, with specific implementation recommendations submitted as Draft Report.
- **Final report and data** incorporating all reports, analysis, and map folios. Digital mapping format to provincial standards.

1.3 Report Structure

This report is organized into eight (8) overall Sections along with five (5) Annexes. The 'flow' of the document is as follows:

- ***Chapter 1*** – provides an *introduction* to the overall project;
- ***Chapter 2*** – provides an introduction and review of the *British Columbia tourism industry*, including a discussion of ecotourism trends;
- ***Chapter 3*** – provides a review and analysis of the *Morice Forest District*, its tourism resources as well as statistics regarding visitors to Northwestern BC;
- ***Chapter 4*** – provides a review of the *Wet'suwet'en First Nation* including a SWOT analysis of the thirteen (13) Wet'suwet'en house territories;
- ***Chapter 5*** – provides a review and analysis of *land use planning and resource management* in the study area;
- ***Chapter 6*** – provides a review and analysis of *tourism resources in the Morice Forest District;*
- ***Chapter 7*** – entails a detailed analysis of the most viable *tourism opportunities* within the study area; and
- ***Chapter 8*** – reviews *tourism issues* in the study area and goes on to provide *regional and community tourism development recommendations.*

- ***Annex A*** – provides a detailed descriptions of map polygons;
- ***Annex B*** – contains the results of the tourism stakeholder survey and corresponding analysis of existing tourism operations;
- ***Annex C*** – contains tourism product pre-feasibility profiles for seven potential tourism products;
- ***Annex D*** – provides a list of acronyms used in this report; and
- ***Annex E*** – is a bibliography of resources used.

Chapter

2

2 The BC Tourism Industry

The tourism industry is among the most valuable and fastest growing sectors of the British Columbia economy. In 2000, British Columbia hosted 22.5 million overnight visitors who spent almost $9.5 billion in the province.

The following statistics set the stage and assist in highlighting the need for effective tourism planning throughout the province[8].

2.1 Expenditures

Tourism revenue totalled $9.5 billion in 2000, a 4.1% increase over 1999. A major component of this growth came from the US market (up 4.9%), whose tourism expenditures injected a total of $2.4 billion into the provincial economy. Positive revenue growth in 2000 was also seen from the Asia Pacific and European markets, up 8.0% and 4.1% respectively. Visitor spending among key markets varied with the length of stay and per day expenditures. For example, British Columbia residents represented 47.8% of total visitor volume last year but only 26.1% of the revenue as they spend less on average per visit than the longer haul visitor[9]. Conversely, overseas visitors contributed 18.5% of the total revenue while representing only 7.6% of the volume.

2.2 Target Market Volumes

In 2000, British Columbia hosted 22.5 million overnight visitors, an increase of 2.0% from 1999. Nearly half (47.8%) of these visitors were British Columbia residents. Travelers from other parts of Canada accounted for 4.9 million visits (21.8%) a 1.8% increase over the previous year. A strong US economy, a growing awareness of British Columbia as a preferred travel destination and a very favourable exchange rate combined to lure Americans to British Columbia in record numbers in 2000. BC hosted over 5.0 million US overnight visitors in 2000, 22.5% of the province's total visitor volume. The number of US overnight visitors increased 3.3% over 1999 and 25.1% since 1996.

Led by growth in visitors from the Asia/Pacific region, the number of overseas visitors – which account for 7.6% of total visitor volume – increased by 4.9% in 2000. With nearly 300,000 overnight visitors, Japan remained one of BC's largest overseas markets. South Korea (38.7%), China (30.4%)

---

[8] Statistics in this section are sourced from The Value of Tourism Research Services Branch of Tourism British Columbia, February 2002.

[9] This does not account for any 'outfitting' expenditures BC residents spend in pursuing their various recreational activities (i.e.: equipment, clothing, education, skill development, etc.)

and Australia (11.8%) showed strong growth – while Taiwan (3.1%) showed moderate growth in visitor volume compared to 1999.

More Europeans visited British Columbia in 2000 (up 2.5% over 1999), driven mainly by an 11.5% growth from the UK market. The number of visitors from the UK topped 298,000; more than twice the 125,000 visitors from Germany – BC's second largest European market.

2.3 Employment in 2000

In the past, employment in the tourism industry was estimated through employment levels in tourism-related industries. More recently, direct employment data has become available, providing a more accurate count of the number of British Columbians employed directly as a result of tourism activity.

In 2000, this figure is estimated at 111,890 people[10], accounting for approximately 7.4% of the provincial labour force and ranking fifth in provincial employment among industry sectors. Tourism employment in British Columbia accounts for approximately 1-in-13 jobs in the province.

The Accommodation and Food & Beverage sectors accounted for approximately 21.4% and 28.6%, respectively, of tourism jobs in 2000. Other key sectors, in terms of tourism employment, were Retail & Wholesale Trade, which accounted for 20.1% of tourism jobs, and Transportation & Communication at 15.4%.

2.3.1 Growth in Tourism Employment

Tourism employment rose 20.2% in the 10-year period from 1991 to 2000. The Food & Beverage sector led the growth in tourism employment, up 48.5% over 1991, while employment in the Travel Services sector increased by $34.7% during the same period.

2.3.2 Wages and Salaries

In 2000, wages and salaries in the tourism industry totalled $2.6 billion. Of this total (which does not include tips or gratuities), 24.9% ($640 million) was earned in the Transportation sector, followed by the Retail & Wholesale ($561 million) and Accommodation ($554 million) sectors.

The average weekly earnings within the tourism industry in 2000 was $604, up 2.2% from 1999. Of all sectors, Other Services workers averaged the highest weekly earnings ($735), followed by Transportation ($730), Travel Arrangement & Reservations ($597) and Retail & Wholesale ($490).

2.3.3 Tourism-Related Business Establishments

Another indicator of the level of tourism activity is the number of business establishments in tourism-related industries.

---

[10] It should be noted that this figure does not include British Columbians who were self-employed in the tourism industry.

In 2000 there were 17,343 tourism-related business establishments operating in BC[11], up about 1.6% from 1999. Tourism-related business establishments accounted for approximately 1 in 9 of the province's 157,371 business establishments.

Nearly 9,500 (54.9%) of the tourism-related businesses were in the Food & Beverage sector, which was up 2.0% from 1999. There were nearly 1,900 accommodation properties, accounting for 10.8% of all tourism-related businesses.

2.4 Tourism GDP

Tourism Gross Domestic Product (GDP) provides a direct measure of the industry's economic impact on the provincial economy and permits comparisons with other industries. In essence, Tourism GDP measures the value added to the provincial economy by the tourism industry. This value added is equal to the revenue earned by the tourism industry less the cost of inputs either imported or purchased from other BC industries.

The Value of Tourism[12] reports GDP in both constant (1992) dollars and current dollars. Using constant dollars removes the impact of inflation and provides a clearer indication of real changes in economic activity over time. However, using GDP measured in constant dollars to make comparisons across industries understates the growth rate of industries whose prices have risen more rapidly than average as one gets further away from the base year (1992). Thus, current dollar GDP is more appropriate when making comparisons across industries.

Based on a 1992 constant dollar, Tourism GDP rose 3.9% in 2000 over 1999, to a total of $4.5 billion. Growth in Tourism GDP outpaced growth in provincial GDP, which was up 3.5% over 1999. In 2000, tourism accounted for 4.8% of the total provincial GDP of $95.2 billion.

Tourism grew significantly in the ten-year period from 1991 to 2000. Using 1992 constant dollars, Tourism GDP grew 33.7% during this period to just over $4.5 billion.

In terms of current dollars, Tourism GDP rose 6.9% in 2000 over 1999 – to a total of nearly $5.4 billion. The Accommodation sector of the tourism industry accounted for 27.3% of Tourism GDP. Following the Accommodation sector were the Transportation & Communication, Retail & Wholesale Trade, and Food & Beverage sectors representing 21.2%, 17.8% and 14.0% of the Tourism GDP respectively.

Compared to other resource-based industries, Tourism GDP was greater than that of Mining, Agriculture, and Fishing – but less than that of Forestry.

2.5 Tourism: The Importer of the Export Sector

Tourism is – in part – an export industry. Whereas traditional export industries ship commodities to markets in other countries, in tourism the consumers (markets) travel to British Columbia to purchase the product – *Super Natural* British Columbia.

---

[11] This does not include the 7,936 tourism establishments of indeterminate size, of which most are believed to e owner-operated businesses with no other employees.

[12] Research Services, Tourism British Columbia, February 2002.

In 2000, Tourism was the third-largest earner of export income in the provincial economy after Wood Products and Energy Products. Tourism earned more export income than Machinery & Equipment, Metallic Minerals, Agriculture& Food and Fish products.

In 2000, $4.1 billion of BC's tourism revenue was earned in foreign exchange. This was an increase of 2.6% over 1999, and a 21.5% increase since 1996.

2.6 BC Tourism – Post 9/11 & Forecast for 2002

The tragic events of September 11, 2001 have had a significant impact on British Columbia's tourism industry, evidenced by a drop in visitation and revenue for the first time in a decade. During the first eleven months of 2001, the total number of international visitors to British Columbia fell 1.0% compared to the same period of 2000. Visitation from Asia/Pacific decreased 3.4% while visitation from Europe declined 6.6%. Due to a strong performance between January and August, the US market has shown a slight improvement from the same period in 2000 with 0.2% growth.

Given this, overall visitation to BC during 2002 is forecast to decrease 0.8% to a total of 22.2 million overnight visitors, generating $9.0 billion in revenue. Short haul markets are expected to perform better than long haul markets as travelers will have a tendency to stay closer to home, while business travel will be more affected by the economic environment and security concerns than leisure travel.

2002 presents a challenging forecast environment and Tourism BC will closely monitor several key factors that will influence industry performance during the year. These include, but are not limited to, the rates of economic growth in key markets, fluctuations in the value of the Canadian dollar relative to key international currencies, the impact of border security measures, changes in air seat capacity and airfares and, of course, concerns about terrorism[13].

2.6.1 North America

Visitation from North America is forecast to decrease 0.7% in 2002 to 20.6 million overnight visitors, who will spend an estimated $7.4 billion in the province. With the exception of Alberta, North American markets are expected to show no growth or modest declines during 2002, reflecting the impact of safety concerns and a slow economy.

2.6.1.1 BRITISH COLUMBIA

The provincial economy is expected to experience slow growth during 2002, which will limit the potential of the British Columbia resident market this year. Economic recovery in key markets and an improving business environment in British Columbia will be positive factors but their influence on resident travel will probably not be felt until 2003. The shift to short haul travel following September 11th and continued weakness of the Canadian dollar will partially offset the negative impact of the economy and trade disputes, resulting in the forecast that visitation levels will be maintained in 2002.

---

[13] For the most current measures of the impacts, refer to Tourism British Columbia's Tourism Indicators available on the web at www.tourism.bc.ca. The economic impact, as measured by Tourism GDP and employment, of September 11th will not be known until final 2001 data are available.

2.6.1.2 CANADA

Visitation from Alberta, British Columbia's largest Canadian market, is forecast to grow by 1.0% in 2002 as it is anticipated that oil prices will firm up and the Alberta economy will perform relatively well. The shift to shorter haul trips, continued development of the BC Rockies as a getaway destination and improved access to the Okanagan and Vancouver Island through WestJet will all contribute to a modest increase in visitation to British Columbia.

Visitation from Ontario is predicted to fall 5.0% as economic growth is expected to be weak, air capacity to British Columbia has decreased significantly and airfares have risen. The shift to short haul travel will keep Ontarians closer to home, thus negatively impacting travel to British Columbia. The Ontario economy is very dependent on exports to the United States, thus its recovery will follow that of the United States, with a lag. The potential entrance of WestJet into the Toronto market and the expansion of Tango may ease air access issues later in the year.

The forecast for Canadian markets assumes that: 1) the Canadian economy will expand by 1.5% to 2.5% in 2002, 2) fuel prices will remain stable over the coming year, 3) air access to and within British Columbia will gradually improve through the year, and 4) the Canadian dollar will not strengthen significantly during 2002, encouraging Canadians to travel within Canada.

2.6.1.3 UNITED STATES

Visitation from the US is forecast to fall 2.0% during 2002. Visitation from the United States rose 3.1% during January to August of 2001 but fell 7.0% during September to December, resulting in growth of 0.4% for the year. The forecast for 2002 is based on the view that the residual impacts of September 11th, a relatively weak economy, and significant decreases in air seat capacity from long haul US markets will result in decreases in visitation through the first half of 2002 with positive growth resuming late in 2002. Household surveys have found that Americans still plan to travel in 2002 but closer to home and are more likely to drive. This bodes well for the regional US market, although concerns about delays at border crossings may have a negative effect. Surveys have also found that business travel has suffered more due to September 11th than leisure travel.

This forecast assumes that the American economy will gradually recover through 2002, the Canada-US exchange rate will remain in its current range, there will be no further terrorist attacks and that delays at border crossings will be manageable through the summer. If either is not true, US visitation will be significantly affected. Tourism BC will track events closely through the year and revise the forecast as necessary.

2.6.2 Asia/Pacific

Tourism BC forecasts that overnight visitation from the Asia/Pacific region will decline 2.1%, to 834,000 visitors, generating $894 million in revenue during 2002. This follows an estimated decrease of 3.0% in visitation for 2001, as September 11th and the global economic slowdown had significant impacts on travel. Visitation in 2002 will decline through the first half of the year, but will, as travelers recover from the psychological impacts of September 11th and key economies gradually improve, start to rebound later in the year.

2.6.2.1 JAPAN

Visitation from Japan is forecast to fall 8.0% in 2002, following a 7.9% decline in 2001. Japanese travelers have been particularly affected by safety concerns about air travel to North America in the wake of September 11th.

In addition, the Japanese economy fell back into recession during 2001 and the economic outlook for 2002 is not promising. If the economy continues to perform poorly the recent weakening of the Yen against the Canadian dollar may worsen, thus increasing the cost of visiting British Columbia. Air access also continues to be a problem area. The 2002 World Cup, which Japan is co-hosting with South Korea, may also decrease summer travel.

2.6.2.2 AUSTRALIA

Visitation from Australia is expected to show no growth during 2002. Growing interest in British Columbia, particularly winter products, and, to a lesser extent, cruises, and relatively positive economic conditions will be offset in 2002 by reduced air access and the impact of a weak dollar. The demise of Canada 3000 eliminated over 16,000 seats from Australia to Vancouver in the first half of 2002, while the weak exchange rate between the Australian and Canadian dollar has increased the cost of visiting British Columbia. Tourism BC is optimistic about the long-term prospects for the Australian market, but short-term issues will inhibit growth in 2002.

2.6.2.3 TAIWAN & SOUTH KOREA

Visitation from Taiwan fell 27.9% during 2001 and is forecast to decrease a further 2.0% in 2002. The Taiwanese economy suffered a severe contraction in 2001 as dependence on the export of high tech products left it very exposed to the global downturn in that sector. It is likely that recovery of the tech sector will lag that of the overall global economy. The entry of China into the World Trade Organization and the potential depreciation of the Japanese Yen this year could cause further problems for the Taiwanese economy. Furthermore, decreases in air seat capacity during 2001 and the first quarter of 2002 will limit the potential for recovery during 2002. While the Taiwanese market has good potential, recovery will probably not occur until 2003.

The South Korean market continued a strong recovery from the impact of the Southeast Asian financial crisis of 1997/98 with visitation up 15.1% in 2001. Visitation is now above levels achieved before the financial crisis and growth rates can be expected to moderate. Tourism BC forecasts a pause in growth during 2002, as economic growth slows and the 2002 World Cup impacts outbound travel, with a return positive growth in 2003.

2.6.2.4 CHINA

Visitation from China grew by an estimated 26.1% in 2001 following growth of 30.4% in 2000. Factors that provide the basis for a forecast 10.0% increase in visitation from China during 2002 include: 1) continued economic growth, 2) pent up demand for travel, 3) ongoing efforts to reduce barriers to Chinese citizens traveling to Canada and, 4) the positive impact of the Canadian Tourism Commission office in Beijing, partnered by Tourism BC, which opened in 2001.

2.6.3 Europe

Overnight visitation from Europe is forecast to dip 1.8% during 2002, with a total of 608,000 visitors generating $622 million in revenue in BC. This follows an estimated decrease of 6.0% in visitation during 2001. Visitation from continental Europe was well off before September 11th as economic performance was below expectations, which translated to reduced spending on travel. The lagged effect of the over 20% depreciation of the Euro (in real and nominal terms) since 1999, which has increased the cost of visiting British Columbia, also had a negative effect.

Most European markets are expected to perform weakly during 2002, as economies, other than that of the United Kingdom, grow slowly. Air capacity will also be a constraint this year unless other charters replace the summer air seat capacity from the United Kingdom, Germany and the Netherlands lost as a result of the demise of Canada 3000. Early indications are that some of the seats from the United Kingdom are being replaced but capacity from Germany and the Netherlands is still down.

Primary risks to this forecast are renewed terrorism or safety concerns, air seat capacity constraints, slower than anticipated economic growth during 2002, which would dampen growth in disposable income and consumer confidence, and a further depreciation of the pound and Euro.

2.6.3.1 UNITED KINGDOM

After strong growth in visitation in 1999 (12.0%) and 2000 (11.5%), visitation from the United Kingdom fell 3.8% in 2001, due to a weak summer and decreased travel following September 11th. While British travelers seem to have quickly recovered from the psychological impact of September 11th and visitation increased in both November and December, air seat capacity could be a significant constraint in 2002. The British economy, after showing signs of slowing in 2001, is expected to perform quite well in 2002, which will increase consumer confidence and encourage travel. However, British Columbia will face stiffer competition in this market as some destinations have benefited from a depreciating currency (Australia and New Zealand) and most have increased their United Kingdom marketing budgets significantly.

2.6.3.2 GERMANY

Visitation from Germany has declined every year since 1997, with the exception of 1999, as the depreciation of the DM and now the Euro increased the cost of visiting British Columbia. Compounded by September 11th, visitation fell 8.6% during 2001. Continued sluggish economic performance and reductions in direct air capacity from Germany to Vancouver will limit the potential of this market in 2002. However, this will be partially offset by the positive impact of Vancouver hosting the DERTOUR Academy convention in November 2001,-which should lead to increased marketing of British Columbia by DERTOUR travel agents in 2002.

2.6.3.3 OTHER EUROPE

Generally the economies of other European countries are expected to perform sluggishly in 2002. This, combined with a weak Euro and safety concerns, will lead to decreases in visitation in the range of 5.0%. Air capacity will also be an issue, as many visitors from other European countries travel through the United Kingdom, Germany or the Netherlands.

2.7 Tourism and Rural Job Creation

Clearly, tourism is a prime growth engine for rural British Columbia because it can create new and relatively stable long-term jobs for local residents[14]. This is significant considering that most North American tourism destinations have enjoyed stable or expanding markets for several decades, at a time when primary resource industries have experienced cyclical, and too often permanent, downturns in jobs. Tourism jobs are readily accessible to local residents, as they often require a familiarity with the region. Many tourism jobs are seasonal, which can be a disadvantage for those seeking full-time work. (Although as BC's tourism industry matures and diversifies its products, many locations and businesses are becoming multi-seasonal.) On the other hand, seasonal and part-time work can be well suited to people who do not want full-time work, such as students and working parents. Tourism is particularly important as a generator of youth, entry-level jobs. As well, the expanding tourism market offers opportunities for career advancement into supervisory and managerial positions for many young people.

In addition, it is worth noting that the vast majority of tourism businesses in British Columbia are managed and operated by independent owner-operators. Approximately 90% of all tourism businesses consist of one or two owners and less than five staff. Therefore, the opportunity to develop and run your own business is one of the great benefits of the industry. Along with this owner-operator structure comes the added bonus of determining one's own unique lifestyle – a benefit that owner-operators are very quick to state as their main incentive in getting into the business.

2.8 Tourism and Regional Economic Development

Tourism is important to the economic diversification and health of many rural BC communities. Unlike other land-based industries, tourism imports the market to the product, rather than export the product out of region to distant markets. As such tourism serves as a vital element in the trade within local and regional economies. Tourism is the only industry with a positive net flow of funds from wealthier to poorer regions, and from urban to rural communities. Because of the nature of the tourism sector, the majority of the money spent is imported from other geographic regions, and is new to the host community. As a result studies show that tourism revenue can result in a five to seven times multiplier effect in local communities[15].

Tourism in rural areas also acts as a 'recruiting' device, attracting new permanent residents and businesses to an area. Hence, tourism can be an important element in revitalizing the local economy by putting the spotlight on the community and emphasizing its attractive features. Tourism expenditures also support construction, public administration, professional, and medical and educational services; none of which are low paying. Tourism also provides exceptional lifestyle and entrepreneurial opportunities. In fact, tourism has the highest owner/operator ratio of any sector in British Columbia. The number of tourism-related businesses in BC grew over 50% in 6 years, from less than 10,000 in 1990, to more than 15,700 in 1996. In places like Tofino, Whistler, the Okanagan Valley, Invermere and Nelson, tourism is the leading sector of the economy.

---

[14] Cited in: Jobs and Environment – Moving British Columbia into the 21st Century, BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, 1999.

[15] Shoaf, W. "Sundance". Article for Business Coalition for Sustainable Cities, at www.earthpledge.org/progress/wpapers/wpsundan.html

2.9 Ecotourism and Activity Trends

Ecotourism is that component of the tourism industry that focuses on the experiencing of natural or indigenous culture in a way that minimizes impacts. Ecotourism appeals to a global market, particularly well educated, affluent, urban residents from developed countries. BC's high quality and diverse natural scenery offer the competitive conditions for the province's expanding eco-adventure tourism sector.

Tourism BC estimates the value of ecotourism to be $350 million annually[16]. Significant as this is, as important is the fact that BC rates as a top adventure tourism destination in North America[17]. Ecotourism is the fastest growing segment of the BC tourism sector. Furthermore, the opportunities for expansion of BC's ecotourism sector are substantial. This is important given that one-half of U.S. adults – or 98 million persons – took an adventure vacation within the past five years. A recent national survey of the ecotourism and adventure tourism sector in Canada concluded that "Canada's natural environment, encompassing vast unspoiled wilderness areas and spectacular scenery is ideally suited to the development of adventure travel and ecotourism and is already the basis of an internationally competitive product base."

2.9.1 The Evolving Adventure/Ecotourism Experience

The outdoor adventure/ecotourism market is expanding, but it is also changing in substantive ways. The outdoor adventure experience encompasses four major characteristics: (a) involvement with a natural environment, (b) elements of risk and danger, (c) uncertain outcome, and (d) influenced by the participant or circumstance (Exhibit 1). These components serve to separate adventure recreation from other forms of recreational activities. The adventure experience can also vary along a number of dimensions including type of travel, group membership, and/or amount and spectrum of risk. This variance is illustrated in the preceding figure. The adventure travel industry uses potential risk as a parameter in categorizing adventure activities into hard or soft activities. Most operators are now familiar with this terminology but have to be increasingly aware of further fracturing and the implications this will have for both product and market development.

2.9.2 Access and Opportunities

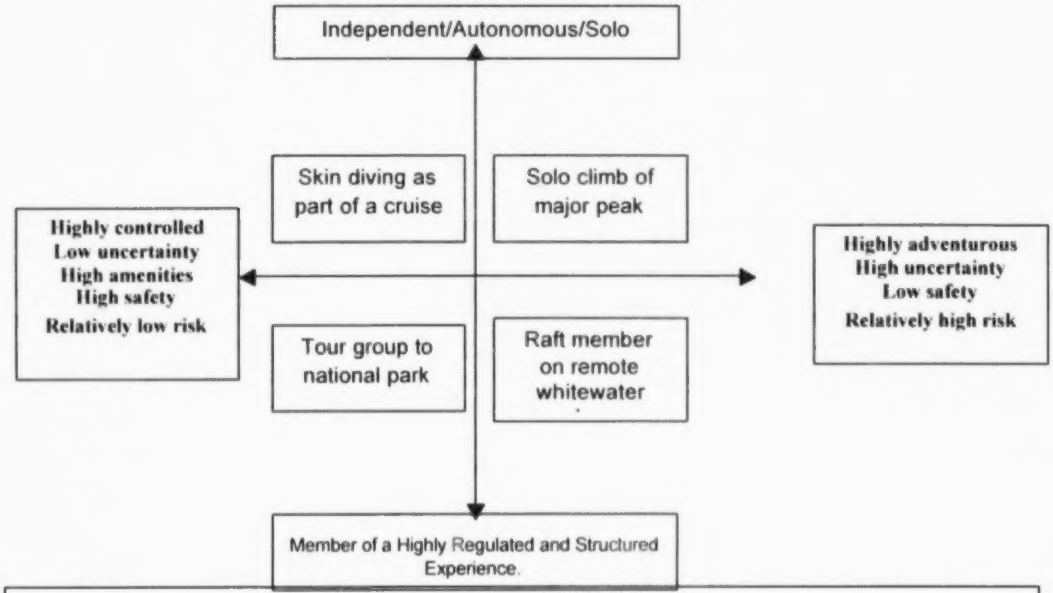
Access and opportunity is paramount to adventure recreation and since the bulk of the land base is Crown land, provincial land managers usually determine these. Allowable activities, acceptable practices and facilities are the three main parameters determining what activity occurs and where. Adventure activities are increasingly seen as a legitimate use of Crown lands but it has only been in the very recent past that multiple-use concepts have even been mentioned in the policy framework. The industry, and communities which rely on the related economic benefits, have to ensure that adventure tourism interests have a rightful place within the land and resource management regime.

---

[16] Tourism BC.

[17] Travel Industry Association of America. January 1998. The Adventure Travel Report, 1997.

Exhibit 1: The Adventure Tourism Experience


Independent/Autonomous/Solo
Skin diving as part of a cruise
Solo climb of major peak
Highly controlled
Low uncertainty
High amenities
High safety
Relatively low risk
Highly adventurous
High uncertainty
Low safety
Relatively high risk
Tour group to national park
Raft member on remote whitewater
Member of a Highly Regulated and Structured Experience.

Source: Trends in Outdoor Recreation: Programs, Experiences and Issues, Alan W. Ewert, Indiana University, 2000

2.9.3 Technology

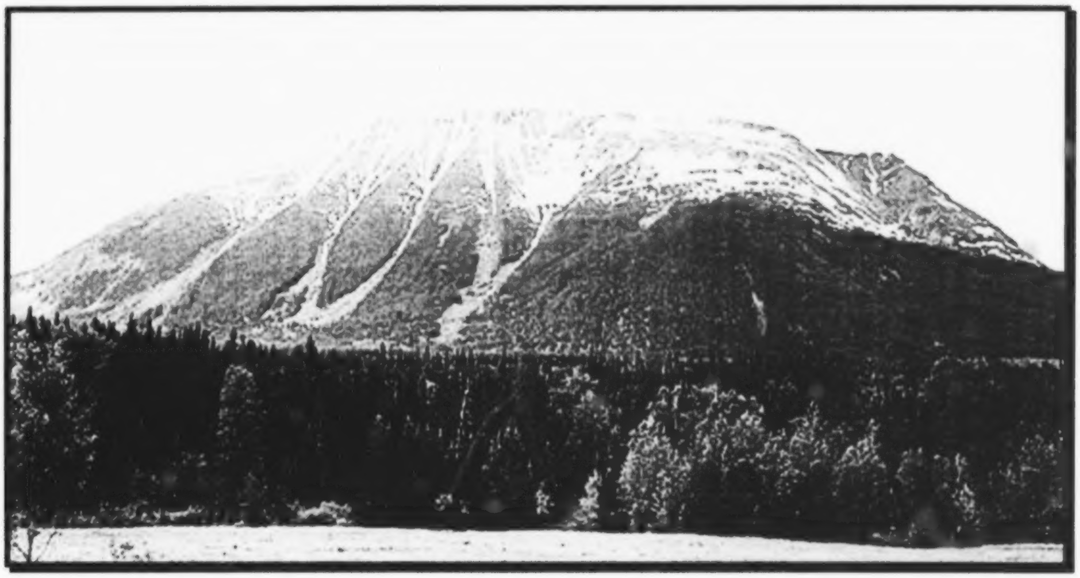
In general, technological innovations, whether equipment or clothing-oriented, impact the adventure recreation experience in five ways: access/transportation, comfort, safety, communication, and information. This has enabled lesser skilled participants to participate in activities at the more extreme end of the spectrum. In the end, this will continue to increase participation and open up new opportunities for business and market development.

2.9.4 Societal Acceptance

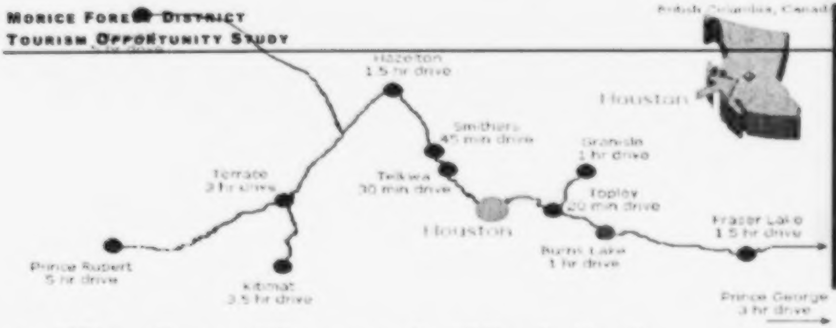
A number of emerging trends suggest that outdoor adventure recreation is becoming much more accepted by the public than has previously been the case. Coverage by the mass media, the growth of adventure programs for therapeutic intent and the growth of training programs that incorporate adventure activities are some examples of how pervasive outdoor activities have become. This will not only increase participation, demand and business opportunities, but place tremendous pressure on land managers to actively manage for tourism values when this has not occurred in the past.

2.9.5 Implications for Tourism Development in the Study Area

Future tourism growth in Canada and British Columbia will be driven by interest in outdoor experiences, particularly those in the soft adventure market and ecotourism. The Morice region has many of the attributes needed to appeal to these markets but development will depend on key responses. Operators must understand the risk-reward relationship and provide the features and amenities, which have the strongest appeal for local travel markets, which tend to be in the soft adventure category. They must incorporate technology and innovation so as to broaden market appeal for activities in demand, and improve their own competitiveness. They must seek greater cooperation with land managers and communities to ensure the Crown land base recognizes the demands and needs of tourism as a legitimate resource user. Communities must play a more prominent role by furnishing infrastructure and support services that underpin the industry and the employment and regional income benefits it can bring to local residents.



Nadina Mountain



Chapter 3

3 Morice Forest District

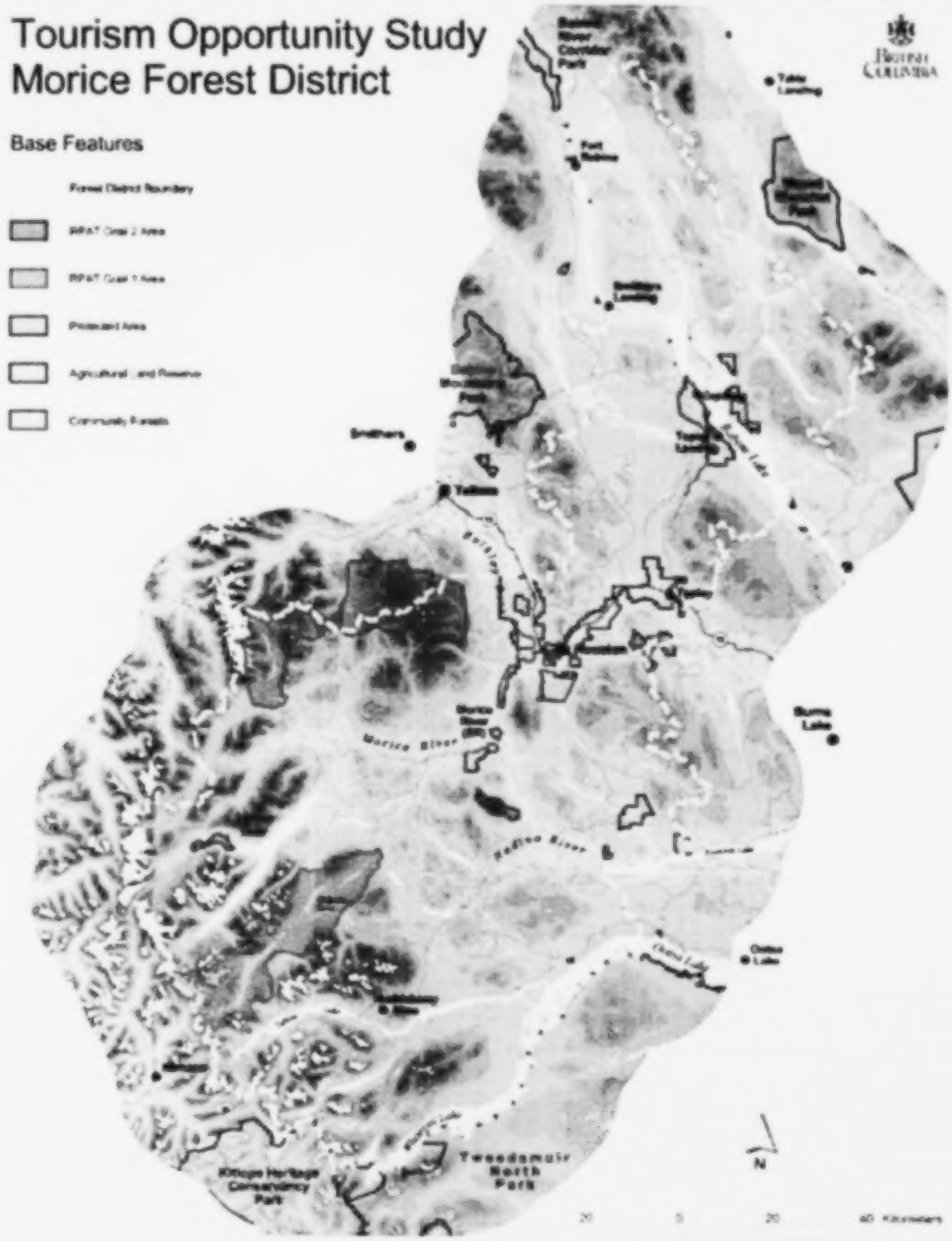
3.1 Introduction

The Morice Forest District (Exhibit 2) – which is a very accessible tourism destination – is in a prime area of BC for tourism development. The area has magnificent scenic resources with abundant natural and pristine wilderness areas. The region has diverse opportunities for mountain and river recreation, camping, wildlife viewing, and a range of other tourism and recreation activities. A range of attractions, parks, and facilities, which can cater to tourism and recreational needs, supports these resources. However, tourism products targeted at the outdoor, adventure, culture and heritage tourism markets do not at present meet market demands. The opportunity to better capture this market through product development, enhanced tourism services and marketing is strong.

Enhanced tourism development offers regions such as the Morice area – where traditional resource dependant industries are experiencing a decline due to automation, soft markets and/or decreasing resource supply – yet one more opportunity to further diversify its economy. Tourism is a resource based industry which is experiencing substantial growth. The 1995/96 BC visitor survey conducted by the Ministry of Small Business Tourism and Culture indicates that travelers are staying longer and spending more money when they travel within BC. Another key finding of the survey is that travelers are visiting more regions within BC. For the study area this means that more visitors are coming to the area. This increased tourism activity within the region translates into economic opportunities for the region. However, in order to fully benefit from this increase in tourism activity, tourism development must occur to provide the visitor with things to do while visiting the region. This in turn will encourage the visitor to stay longer within the region, resulting in an increase in tourism revenue. The benefits of enhanced tourism development in the Study area will be realized through increased employment opportunities in the region, and a higher level of entrepreneurial and income-generating opportunities.

The study area, with its attractive natural features, is in a prime position to benefit from this market surge. However, this will require well-designed and executed product development.

Exhibit 2: Morice TOS Plan Area


Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District
Base Features
Forest District Boundary
RPAT Goal 2 Area
RPAT Goal 1 Area
Protected Area
Agricultural Land Reserve
Community Forests
British Columbia
Smithers
Telkwa
Houston
Burns Lake
Morice River
Nadina River
Ootsa Lake
Babine Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
20
0
20
40 Kilometers

3.2 Morice Forest District – Overview[19]

The Morice Forest District (or Timber Supply Area – TSA) encompasses 1,498,697 hectares and lies in the southeastern portion of the Prince Rupert Forest Region. The Morice Forest District (MFD) is one of nine TSAs in the Prince Rupert Forest Region and is administered from the Morice Forest District office in Houston, BC.

Houston is the major community in the MFD. Smaller communities include Topley and Granisle. The area surrounding Francois Lake the Highway 16 corridor are both well settled with farms and ranches. Ranching and the railway initially sustained the area – but the forest industry now anchors the MFD's economy. Two important lumber mills – among the most efficient and largest in the country – make forestry a very important employer. Major sports fishing in the rivers and lakes and significant wildlife, drive summer tourism which supplements employment and income for local merchants and guides. The agricultural sector – mainly livestock production – is still an important contributor to the local economy.

The majority of the Wet'suwet'en First Nation's area of interest is located in the Morice Forest District. The reader is referred to Chapter 4 for an in-depth discussion of the Wet'suwet'en First Nation as well as recent tourism development initiatives.

3.2.1 The Biophysical Setting

The Morice LRMP area lies along the western edge of the Interior Plateau. The topography is rolling and gentle to the north and east, becoming more mountainous in the southwest. There are three major rivers, Bulkley, Morice and Nadina, and two very large lakes: Babine in the north, the longest and largest natural fresh-water lake in British Columbia, and Ootsa Lake in the south. Ootsa Lake is part of the Nechako Reservoir.

Reflective of its geography, the climate of this area is transitional between coast and interior, having a continental climate that is moderated by a coastal marine influence. This combination results in short, warm summers and winters that are milder than more eastern locations in British Columbia. The average July temperature in the main centre of Houston is 21.4 C and the average January temperature is –7.4 C. The annual rainfall is 305 mm (12 inches) and total snowfall is 1640 mm (65 in).

The Morice LRMP area has a wide variety of ecosystems due to its range in geography and climate. One way of describing the ecosystems is the Biogeoclimatic Ecosystem Classification (BEC) system. This system delineates areas into biogeoclimatic zones by climate, topography, elevation and their potential climax vegetation(1). The Morice LRMP area has five biogeoclimatic zones. These include Sub-Boreal Spruce (SBS: 59%), Engelmann Spruce–Subalpine Fir (ESSF: 26%), Alpine Tundra (AT: 11%), Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH: 3%) and Mountain Hemlock (MH: 1%) (Map 3). A more detailed description of the BEC zones in the plan area is provided in Section 3.2: Vegetation.

---

[19] Much of the data in this section is sourced from: *Morice Planning Area Background Report: An Overview of Natural, Cultural and Socio-Economic Features, Land Uses & Resources Management*, Hannah Horn & Greg Tamblyn, for the Prince Rupert Interagency Management Committee. Final Draft, May 2000.

A broader method of describing ecosystems is the ecoregion classification system. This system is designed to "bring into focus the extent of critical habitats and their relationship with adjacent areas" (Demarchi et al., 1990). The ecoregion classification system is hierarchical, meaning that each level of zoning deals with a progressively smaller land area. The five levels from largest to smallest are as follows: ecodomains, ecodivisions, ecoprovinces, ecoregions and ecosections. Ecodomains and ecodivisions are very broad (e.g. 4 ecodomains are found in BC) and place the province in a global context based on broad geographical relationships. The remaining three levels place the province in context with the rest of the continent or relate areas within the province to each other. These lower levels divide the province based on areas of similar climate, physical landscapes and wildlife potential (Meidinger and Pojar, 1991).

The ecoregion classification system differs from the BEC system in that ecoregion classification is inclusive of all elevations and uses relatively permanent landform features, such as parent materials, slope and aspect, as the basis for a unit's description. The two zoning systems are compatible and are often integrated for land use planning purposes.

The LRMP area overlaps four ecoprovinces, six ecoregions and seven ecosections (Exhibit 3). The detailed ecosection descriptions that follow have been modified from RPAT (1996) to provide details specific to the Morice LRMP area.

Exhibit 3: Ecoprovinces, Ecoregions, and Ecosections within the Morice LRMP area.

Ecoprovince	Ecoregion	Ecosection
Central Interior	Bulkley Ranges Fraser River Plateau	BUR (Bulkley Ranges) BUB (Bulkley Basin) NEU (Nechako Uplands)
Sub-Boreal Interior	Fraser Basin Omenica Mountains	BAU (Babine Upland) MAP (Manson Plateau)
Coast and Mountains	Coastal Gap Nass Ranges	KIR (Kitimat Ranges) NAR (Nass Ranges

- **The Bulkley Ranges Ecosection (BUR):** This ecosection comprises the leeward portion of the Bulkley Ranges, within the Hazelton Mountains. It is characterized by rugged mountains, with serrate peaks above 2000 metres, and wide, flaring valleys with floors at 1000 metres elevation. Between the steep alpine and the U-shaped valleys are upland plateaux of alpine tundra.

- **The Bulkley Basin Ecosection (BUB):** This ecosection consists of broad, gently rolling lowland that has a continental climate with rain shadow effects from the coastal mountains.

- **The Nechako Upland Ecosection (NEU):** The flat to gently rolling terrain in this ecosection is associated with extensive sub-boreal forest, shield volcanoes and a limited number of isolated peaks of intrusive granitic origin. The climate is predominantly continental, with cold winters with a moderate snow depth and warm, relatively moist summers.

- **The Babine Upland Ecosection (BAU):** This ecosection is an area of rolling upland with low ridges and numerous large lakes bounded by the Hazelton Mountains, the Skeena and Omineca Mountains, and the Fraser Plateau. The community of Granisle is located in this ecosection.

- **Manson Plateau Ecosection (MAP):** The Manson Plateau ecosection is a rolling upland, that lies south of the Omineca Mountains. Moist, warm air often flows into the area from the southwest. A sliver of this ecosection is found along the extreme northwest boundary of the planning area.

- **The Kitimat Ranges Ecosection (KIR):** The Kitimat Ranges is the mountainous portion of the Coastal Gap Ecoregion. This ecosection includes both the windward and the leeward slopes of the Kitimat Ranges. While this portion of the coast receives the greatest frequency of frontal weather systems, the lower Coast Mountain barrier and the long fjords allow some of the moist coastal air to flow eastward to the interior, thereby reducing the overall precipitation.

- **Nass Ranges Ecosection (NAR):** The Nass Ranges ecosection is the sole ecosection within the Nass Ranges Ecoregion. It is the north-west portion of the Hazelton Mountains, which are located west of the Kitimat Ranges. The climate is transitional between the coast and interior regimes. A tiny fragment of this ecosection extends into western portion of the LRMP area.

3.2.2 History of the Area

The Morice has been home to the First Nations since time immemorial. Morice River was known as "Wednzenkwa" (river on a slant) by the Wet'suwet'en, who gathered on its shores when the fish were running. The Wet'suwet'en, whose territories cover much of the plan area, moved seasonally to house territories in an overall area that runs from Babine Lake south to Tweedsmuir Park and west to the Coast Mountains. Other First Nations groups with traditional territories in the Morice include Nee-Tahi-Buhn, Skin Tyee, Lake Babine, and Cheslatta. Prior to European settlement, the First Nations sustained themselves by fishing and hunting wild game. Most settlements were along waterways and lakes. As European settlers started to arrive in the 1800s, the native population treated them as guests of honour, providing them with food and shelter.

Non-native development in the Bulkley Valley first began with the building of the Overland Telegraph line in the 1860s. Settlement began in earnest in the early 1900s, stimulated by the construction of the Grand Trunk Pacific Railway. The first settlers made a living by farming and making railroad ties from the pine trees that grew abundantly in the area. Hand-cutting of ties was the main forest industry until the late 1940s, when the post WWII construction boom created a high demand for lumber.

The first planer and gang mill were brought into operation in the 1940s. By 1958 there were 84 small sawmills operating in the area. As the trade in lumber grew, increasing areas of forest were opened up for timber harvesting. In the late 1960s, Bulkley Valley Forest Industries was formed to produce an integrated forests products complex that would include a lumber mill, plywood plant, a stud mill, and a pulp mill. After the project failed, the complex was purchased by Noranda (Northwood – now Canfor). Recognizing the long term and stable wood supply in the area, Northwood discarded plans for the pulp mill and concentrated on developing the sawmill aspect of the business. A second sawmill, Houston Forest Products, was opened in 1978. Both mills are still in operation. Ownership of the Northwood mill has recently been transferred to Canadian Forest Products Ltd.

The first mineral prospectors in the Morice were Chinese immigrants who worked a number of streams for gold in the early 1800s. The area has experienced a high level of mineral exploration over the decades and is recognized as having high to very high potential for mineral development. Over the past 20 years several important mines, including Bell Copper, Granisle, Equity Silver, Dome Mountain, Nadina Silver, and Huckleberry Copper have extracted ore for copper, molybdenum, silver, gold and zinc. With the exception of Huckleberry Copper, which began open pit mining in 1997, all of these mines have now closed. However, the prospects for future mining in the area are good.

3.2.3 Communities

The population of the Morice LRMP area is approximately 5200. The largest centre is Houston, located on Highway 16 between Smithers and Burns Lake (Table 2). The other serviced communities in the area are Granisle and Topley. There are also rural settlements at Owen Lake, Barrett Lake, Francois Lake, and Ootsa Lake.

3.2.3.1 HOUSTON

The community of Houston developed as a rail-tie cutting centre in the early 1900s. The community grew as farming, forestry and mining expanded in the area. Today the population stands at just over 4200 (Table 3). The predominant age group in the town is 29-44 years (36%), and 82% of the income in 1996 was from employment (rather than pensions, investments or other forms of income). The most significant industries in terms of employment in the area are wood manufacturing, logging and forestry, mining, and retail trade. The largest private sector employers are the two major sawmills, CanFor Corp and Houston Forest Products, and the Huckleberry copper/molybdenum mine. Many service and trade jobs in the community are dependent on these companies due to the "spin-offs" of their employment. The unemployment rate for the town in 1996 was 14.1% (compared to 9.6% for B.C.). The current unemployment rate may be lower, since the 1996 statistic does not include employment created by the opening of the Huckleberry Mine in 1997.

The trends for population (Exhibit 4) reflect the changes in employment over time, particularly in the Granisle area. For example between 1982 and 1985 both the Bell and Granisle mines closed. Bell reopened in the fall of 1985 with a reduced workforce. In 1992, the Bell Mine closed again.

Exhibit 4: Population Trends for Houston & Granisle

Year	Houston	Granisle
1981	3921	1430
1986	3905	646
1991	3628	803
1996	3934	446
1999	4232	456
Percent change 1981 - 1999	7.9%	-68.1%
Percent change 1996 - 1999	7.5%	2.2%

Source: BC Stats, 1999a; 1999b.

In recent years, Houston has promoted itself as the "Steelhead Capital of B.C." and there is a growing tourism market in fishing and other forms of outdoor recreation. A number of tourism operations (resorts, campsites, certified hunting and fishing guides and related businesses) provide employment and income. Many of the tourists to the area are travellers en route to and from Alaska and the North Coast of B.C. The town slogan is "Where the welcome is warm and the wilderness beckons!"

Houston is located within the fertile Bulkley Valley. Some of the earliest settlers to the area were farmers and ranchers. Agriculture in the area is mainly forage and livestock production.

Its location almost midway between Prince Rupert and Prince George, and a forty-five minute drive from Smithers, makes Houston a key supply and service centre for the region. The town has seven schools, a satellite campus of Northwest Community College, a Canada Human Resources Development office, drug and alcohol counselling, provincial government social services offices, a municipal airport, a health centre, and a library. The Morice Forest District office is located in Houston.

3.2.3.2 GRANISLE

Granisle, located north of Houston on the western shores of Babine Lake, was built to support the Granisle Mine when it first came into operation in 1966. During the 1970s and 80s, Granisle was a bustling mining town with a population of 2200. This changed with the closure of Granisle Mines in the 1980s and the Bell Copper Mine in 1992. When Bell Copper closed, almost all of the existing businesses closed and the population of the town fell to 300 within three months. Today Granisle has 450 residents who make a livelihood mainly from tourism, logging and government services. A small number of people are also employed in mine reclamation and seasonally in mineral exploration.

Tourism and retirement income are currently the main drivers of the area's economy. The largest age group in the town is 45 – 64 years and 21% of the total income is received from pensions (BC Stats, 1999a). The Babine Lake area provides a variety of opportunities for recreational activity, including fishing and boating, hiking, hunting, camping, and wildlife viewing. Several new service-oriented businesses have been established as the community gears itself to support tourism activity. The mayor of Granisle is committed to promoting tourism, appealing to bus tours in particular. The town eventually hopes to open a destination casino (Hols, 1998).

3.2.3.3 TOPLEY

Topley is located along Highway 16, 31 km east of Houston. There are approximately 500 people living in Topley Village and the surrounding area (Synergy Management Group, 1999). Topley is a rural community composed of ranches, retail businesses and services. The community has a value-added forest product processor, a seafood processing operation, a truss manufacturing plant and a quilting business.

3.2.4 First Nations in the Morice Forest District

There are six First Nations with traditional territories in the Morice LRMP area and 17 Indian reserves.

There are two tribal councils affiliated First Nations in the plan area. The Office of the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs is based in Smithers and operates based on the hereditary system of governance. The Carrier-Sekani Tribal Council is based out of Prince George and is an elected body under the *Indian Act*.

The following are First Nations with traditional territories and reserves in the Morice area:

- *Lake Babine Nation (Burns Lake):* Of all the First Nations with territories and reserves in the Morice, Lake Babine is the only one to have communities located within the area that are inhabited year-round (at Fort Babine and the Tachet reserve in Topley Landing) . Lake Babine has a total of 24 reserves, not all of which are in the LRMP area. Most of the members of the Lake Babine Nation reside on the Woyenne Reserve in Burns Lake. Many members of the Nation are employed by Babine Forest Products, fishing guide operations, Fort Babine Fish Hatchery, and a band-owned construction company. The Lake Babine Nation is an independent entity under the *Indian Act*.
- *Nee-Tahi-Buhn Nation (Burns Lake):* The Nee-Tahi-Buhn Nation has traditional territories and reserve land in the Morice LRMP. The main community is a small reserve south of Burns Lake, outside of the LRMP area. Private or band-owned businesses include forestry, fishing and tourism. On-reserve development includes a wood shop and a fisheries research station. Nee-Tahi-Buhn is an independent entity under the *Indian Act*.
- *Skin Tyee Band Nation (Burns Lake):* Like Nee-Tahi-Buhn, the Skin Tyee Nation was once a member of the Cheslatta Carrier Nation and is now independent under the *Indian Act*.
- *Moricetown Band (Moricetown):* The Moricetown Band has traditional territories and reserve land in the LRMP area. The main settlement, however, is in Moricetown, approximately 35 km north of Smithers, where the band co-owns a sawmill (Kyahwood). Additional private/ band-owned businesses include fishing, a contracting company, and a campground. The Moricetown Band is affiliated with the Office of the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs.
- *Burns Lake Band* (*Burns Lake*): The Burns Lake Band is part of the hereditary system of Wet'suwet'en Nation but has filed a statement of intent for treaty negotiations under the auspices of the Carrier-Sekani Tribal Council.

All of the above First Nations groups have filed Statements of Intent with the British Columbia Treaty Commission, claiming traditional territories that cover almost all of the Morice LRMP area.

There are several economic development programs among the various tribal councils and bands:

- The *Burns Lake Native Development Corporation* (BLNDC) represents the Lake Babine, Cheslatta, Nee-Tahi-Buhn and Broman Lake Bands. The BLNDC is mainly involved in forestry, although most of the activity occurs outside of the Morice.

- The *Office of the Wet'suwet'en* (OW) has an Economic Development Officer and a Land and Resources section that are both involved in securing contracts for forestry work in the Wet'suwet'en territories. The OW has recently formed Wet'suwet'en Enterprises to act as a business incubator, providing the backing to promote and assist Wet'suwet'en businesses to compete successfully for contracts.

There are number of joint projects underway between First Nations and local forest companies:

- Kyahwood, a company owned by the Moricetown Band, and CanFor Corp, have a joint venture to log and process wood awarded through a Section 21 Bid Proposal.
- The Wet'suwet'en First Nation is involved with Houston Forest Products in a "fall and burn" program of beetle control and are participants in the Morice and Lakes TSAs Innovative Forest Practices Agreement.
- Some of the First Nations groups have also been awarded contracts for forestry work including silviculture and beetle control.

8.5% of the work force at Huckleberry Mine is First Nations. In 1999, the mine funded First Nations students in a mine training program conducted through Northwest Community College. Several mineral exploration companies seasonally employ First Nations people on projects conducted within and proximal to the plan area.

Trapping, hunting and fishing are traditional activities that are of significant importance to the economic and social structure of First Nations communities in the area.

3.2.5 Employment and Income

The following tables summarize aggregate economic and income statistics for the Morice LRMP area. Most of these figures are derived from the Forest District Tables developed by BC Stats based on 1996 Statistics Canada figures. The numbers, therefore, do not provide an up-to-date reflection of employment and income in the district, although they do provide a general indication of employment dependencies.

One sector that is under-represented in the above tables is mining. The statistics used to derive the Tables 5 and 6 were gathered during 1996, between the closure of the Equity Mine and the opening of the Huckleberry Mine. If one adds the 175 people directly employed by the Huckleberry Mine after 1997 to the figures in Table 4, the relative contribution of mining to local employment comes closer to 9%. The mineral potential for the district remains very high and, as such, there is a reasonable probability of future mining in addition to the current mine at Huckleberry.

Exhibit 5: Economic statistics for the Morice LRMP, 1996

	Houston	Granisle	LRMP area	B.C.
Population	3934	446	5200 approx.	4,029,253
Labour force	2195	160	3264	1,960,660
Unemployment Rate	14.1%	15.6%	Not available	9.6%
Average income	$39,020	$30,995	Not available	$36,961

(BC Stats, 1999a, 1999b)

Exhibit 6: Basic sector employment estimates (including Indian Reserves), 1996

	Number of jobs	% basic employment
Forestry	1312	50%
Mining (a)	84	3%
Public sector	587	22%
Tourism	248	9%
Agriculture	152	6%
Construction	197	7%
Other (b)	56	2.1%
Total basic employment	2637	
Non-basic employment (c)	627	
Total	3264	

a. Note, the percentages shown above reflect each sector's share of an area's total employment, including direct and indirect employment.

b. The "other" category includes several sectors, including transportation, fishing, trapping, and high technology

c. Basic income flows into the community from outside of the area. Non-basic employment refers to local income that occurs due to the spending of basic income in the local area (e.g., local goods and services)

Exhibit 7: After tax income estimates (including Indian Reserves), 1996

	Income ($000,000's)	% income from basic employment
Forestry	39.8	51%
Mining	1.9	2%
Public sector	12.9	17%
Tourism	2.6	3%
Agriculture	2.3	3%
Construction	3.8	5%
Transportation	10.0	13%
Other	0.2	0%
Non-employment income	14.3	5%
Total basic employment	77.9	
Non-basic employment (b)	9.0	
Total	86.9	

a. Note, the percentages shown above reflect each sector's share of an area's total employment, including direct and indirect employment.
b Non-employment income refers to income associated with investment, pension, unemployment insurance, and social assistance.

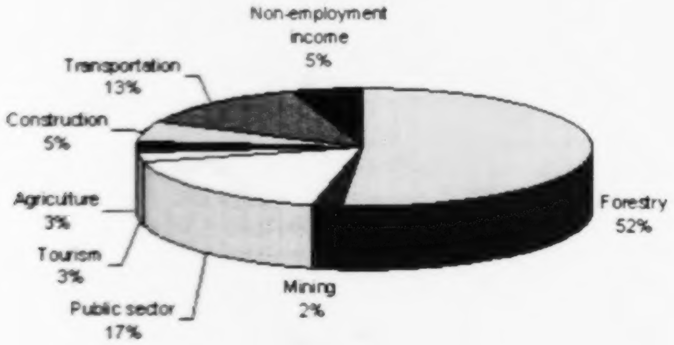


Figure 2 After tax income by sector, Morice LRMP area, 1996

(Horne, 1999)

3.2.6 Entrepreneurship and Training

The Houston and District Chamber of Commerce acts as a voice for local business and provides a local economic development function on behalf of the District of Houston. The Chamber has a tourism officer and economic development officer. The Chamber and the District of Houston council have recognized that a diversified economic base can provide more stability and both have included economic diversity among their primary objectives (District of Houston, 1994).

The Nadina Community Futures Development Corporation (NCFDC) offers business assistance (planning and funding) and training to help start new businesses. This non-profit organization, funded by the Western Economic Development Diversification Canada and Human Resources Development Canada, is committed to fostering economic growth and employment in the region. Serving an area from Burns Lake to Terrace, NCFDC has helped 600 businesses and created approximately 850 jobs over the past 5 years (Synergy Management Group, 1999).

The Morice Community Skills Centre and the Houston Centre of Northwest Community College provide skills training and career and college preparation.

3.2.7 Archaeological Sites and Trails

Morice has numerous known sites and areas of cultural significance for First Nations, including large numbers of culturally modified trees (CMTs). Locating cultural sites prior to development has been facilitated by the development of Archaeological Overview Assessments (AOAs). This model uses field confirmed data, input from First Nations and other inventories to provide mapped areas of high, moderate, or low risk of finding an unknown archaeological site. The AOA map (Map 8) is used by major licensees, woodlot licensee's and the Small Business Program when proposing harvesting blocks.

Cultural sites dated prior to 1846 are protected under the *Heritage Conservation Act*. The Morice Forest District has developed a CMT policy for managing pre- and post-1846 CMTs.

Traditional use studies (TUS) have been formally completed to Resource Inventory Committee (RIC) standards for the Wet'suwet'en First Nation. Informal TUS information has been received from the Broman Lake Band, Cheslatta and Lake Babine First Nations. Typically these studies indicate areas of importance for traditional activities such as hunting, fishing and berry-picking as well as indicating important wildlife habitat areas, trails, camping areas and cabins. Traditional use information is confidential and can only be accessed with written permission of the relevant First Nation. Areas of particular significance to the Wet'suwet'en First Nations include Owen Lake, Shea Lake and the Thautil/Gosnell drainages.

Local First Nations have identified a number of traditionally used trails that are of significance to them. One such trail in the Morice is the historic Grease Trail. Eulachon (fish) was carried for trade with other interior nations. The Grease Trail is currently being restored by Houston Forest Products (HFP) and the Fort Babine Band. The trail will run from Fort Babine to Takla Lake and will be open for non-motorized recreational use. The forest district has plans to locate other traditional trails by global positioning system (GPS) with the approval and assistance of First Nations and to co-operatively develop a strategy to maintain the integrity of mapped trails during forestry operations.

Morice, Bulkley-Cassiar, and Lakes Forest Districts have worked with the Office of the Wet'suwet'en over the past four years on a Landscape Unit/House Territory Planning Project. The project is designed to co-operatively gather First Nation's land-based information and guiding principles for consideration in land use and resource management within Landscape Units and Wet'suwet'en traditional territories. The Wet'suwet'en have also provided input concerning resource development activity and impacts on non-timber resources. This input has been formulated into a set of guiding principles for forest management that may be considered in strategic planning and in forest development planning. At this time, the Morice district has mapped information of cultural/heritage sites and traditional ecological knowledge for a number of traditional house territories and 7 Landscape units. A number of house territories and Landscape Units remain to be completed.

Details concerning the presentation and use of First Nations cultural and heritage information at the LRMP Table will need to be negotiated with the individual First Nation groups.

3.2.7.1 PIONEER HERITAGE SITES AND TRAILS

There is not much known at this time about non-aboriginal heritage sites and trails in the Morice District. There is the well-known Union Telegraph Trail and a local book (Marks of a Century by G. Hols) about the history of the Houston area that provides information about the native and non-native settlers in the Bulkley Valley. At this time there are no identified heritage sites existing on the management chart atlas for the Morice Forest District.

3.3 Visitor Statistics

The development of, and access to, up-to-date and pertinent visitor research is fundamental to the successful design, development and operation of a tourism service or product. The importance of visitor research as been well stated by Tourism British Columbia[19]:

> *The future success of BC's tourism industry requires detailed market information on visitors (both resident and non-resident) who travel within the Province. This information will enable the industry to better understand who these visitors are, the type of trips they take, their travel motivations and trip satisfaction, as well as trip planning processes. This in turn will help the industry to better market its products, and to meet the needs of the travelling public.*[20]

Unfortunately, data sources do not exist which comprehensively account for visitors to Northwestern BC. Presently there are three main sources of visitor data: community-based Visitor InfoCentres; provincially-based visitor surveys which occur from time to time (the last BC visitor survey was completed for the 1995/96 visitor season); and an eleven year old regional rubber-tire visitor survey undertaken by the North By Northwest Tourism Association of BC (1991).

While regional Visitor InfoCentres diligently record statistics of visitors availing themselves of their services – more often than not the statistics generated within the centres are very general in nature and only account for those visitors actually contacting the InfoCentre directly (walking in and/or contacting for information). They do not and cannot provide a comprehensive picture of the myriad of visitors entering the region each tourism season.

---

[19] British Columbia Visitor Study: Report on Travel in British Columbia – Destination Report: The Report on Visitors to Northern British Colombia Tourism Region: Northwest, Tourism BC, 1998.

[20] Ibid. No.: 19, page 3.

Over the past number of years, provincial visitor survey initiatives have less than effectively surveyed visitors to this area of the province. The main item of concern is the lack of visitor survey / contact points addressing the Highway #37 "North To Alaska" highway corridor. Survey contact points have been facilitated along the Highway #16 corridor (usually Prince George & Prince Rupert) but visitors entering or exiting the region via the Highway #37 corridor are mostly missed during these provincial visitor surveys. In recognition that a vast number of visitors to the study area utilize this corridor, regional data summations are weak in this respect.

Nevertheless, the 1995/96 Provincial Visitor Study remains the only real source of regional visitor statistics for the study area[21]. To follow is a brief review of the results for Northwestern BC (NWBC) as generated in this study. It is wise to regard the following as "indicators" only and not definitive visitor statistics.

3.3.1 Visitor Volume and Value

It has been estimated that about 2.2 million visitors travelled to NWBC for a day or overnight trip, 73% of who are residents of BC. The total NWBC share of provincial visitation is about 7%.

Visitors to NWBC spend about $425 million per season with non-residents accounting for 33% of this spending and BC residents providing 67% of regional revenues. Both non-resident and resident visitors spend on average $54 per day during their stay. However, non-residents spend about $234 per stay in the region as compared to resident spending of about $178 per stay. The total NWBC share of provincial tourism revenues is about 5%.

Non-resident visitors spend an average of 4.4 days in the region and resident visitors stay in the region about 3.4 days per visit.

3.3.2 Visitor Origin

"Other" Canadians accounted for the greatest proportion (38%) of non-resident visitors to NWBC. Close-in regional US and Long Haul US visitors made up a further 23% and 17% respectively of travellers to the region. Overseas visitors accounted for about 13% of non-resident guests.

Resident visitors from northern BC accounted for the largest proportion (55%) of travellers to the region. Visitors from southern BC accounted for 34% of resident visitors to NWBC.

3.3.3 Trip Purpose

The main purpose of the visitors to NWBC who were on an overnight trip in BC and visited the region was for leisure purposes (81% non-residents and 86% residents). Other Canadians and US visitors were the most likely markets (21%) to have traveled for business purposes.

Nearly one-half of non-resident regional leisure travellers journeyed to BC to visit friends or relatives (44%). Long Haul/Overseas leisure travellers cited general sightseeing (39%) as their main reason for travel, followed closely by visiting friends and relatives (30%). Outdoor/wilderness activities were given as the main reason for travel by 20% of regional visitors (other Canada & close-in US) and 16% of Long-Haul/Overseas visitors.

---

[21] With some historical data found in the: 1991 North By Northwest Regional Visitor Survey, North By Northwest Tourism Association, 1991

Nearly one-half of resident leisure visitors (47%) traveled in BC to visit friends or relatives (VFR). About 17% cited outdoor activities as their main reason for travel.

3.3.4 Visitor Demographics

Non-residents averaged 44 years of age. Those from Long Haul/Overseas markets tended to be older with 38% aged 55 years and older. Nearly one-half of close-in 'other' Canadians and US visitors (47%) were between the ages of 35 and 54.

Resident visitors averaged 42 years of age and were more likely to be between 18 and 34 years of age than their non-resident counterparts (35% versus 30% respectively).

3.3.5 Seasonal Variations

As expected, the summer season is by far the busiest tourism season in NWBC with 73% of the non-resident Long Haul/Overseas market visiting during this season. Over half of close-in 'other' Canadians and US visitors (55%) travelled to BC during the summer.

Almost half of the resident market (49%) visited NWBC during the summer season. This market also makes up about 31% of all visitors to NWBC during the winter months.

3.3.6 Overall Visitor Activities

While in Northwestern BC, non-resident visitors showed substantial interest in a number of activities including visiting art galleries/museums/exhibits (25%), city/town sightseeing (16%) and freshwater fishing (15%). Only 8% of non-resident visitors reported visiting friends and relatives while in the region.

Virtually all resident visitors (93%) spent time visiting with friends and relatives during their visit to NWBC. Other activity details are shown in Exhibit 8.

Exhibit 8: Overall Visitor Activities in Northwest BC

ACTIVITIES UNDERTAKEN IN THE NORTHWEST REGION	VISITORS TO NORTHWEST BC		
	NON-RESIDENT	BC RESIDENT	
	TOTAL %	TOTAL %	NORTH %
Art galleries/museums/exhibits	25	*	*
Sightseeing in the city/town	16	—	—
Freshwater fishing	15	*	*
Sightseeing in the country	9	—	—
Visiting friends or relatives	8	93	94
Zoos/natural displays/gardens	8	*	*
Hiking/backpacking	7	*	*
Nightlife	4	87	
Resting/relaxing	5	—	—

Data on the activities of BC residents in the region was based on an 'aided' question and therefore is not as extensive as the non-resident resident data. (— denotes "not asked/no answer) (* denotes insufficient sample size to report findings)

3.3.7 Outdoor Activities

During their trip to BC, non-resident visitors partook in a number of outdoor activities with one-half taking part in wildlife viewing/bird watching and 43% visiting National or Provincial parks. Sixteen percent went freshwater or saltwater fishing. In addition, many non-resident tourists visited attractions such as historic sites (43%), a rt galleries/museums (28%) as well as First Nations cultural sites (26%).

BC residents travelling in BC also partake in outdoor activities with 41% participating in sightseeing and 33% participating in wildlife viewing/bird watching. About 24% partook in hiking/backpacking and nearly one-third (31%) visiting attractions such as historic sites. Results are shown in Exhibit 9.

Exhibit 9: Outdoor Activities Undertaken in Northwest BC

OUTDOOR ACTIVITIES UNDERTAKEN	OVERNIGHT VISITORS		
	NON-RESIDENT	BC RESIDENT	
	TOTAL %	TOTAL %	NORTH %
(Net) Land-based activities	59	47	40
Visiting National/Provincial Park	43	19	17
Wildlife viewing/bird watching	50	33	30
Hiking/Backpacking	14	24	19
(Net) Winter Activities	1	3	6
Downhill skiing/snowboarding	1	3	5
*(Net) Fishing***	16	19	17
Saltwater fishing	5	—	—
Freshwater fishing	15	—	—
(Net) Boating (BC Residents)	—	14	13
Photography	46	38	27
Sightseeing	—	41	34
Golfing	3	12	12

** Note: Among non-resident visitors, this includes both fresh and saltwater fishing. For BC resident visitors this represents all fishing and it is not possible to break this out on a freshwater and saltwater basis (— denotes 'not asked/no answer')

3.3.8 Visitor Spending Profile

The single largest proportion of expenditures by non-resident visitors went towards package tours purchased in BC (28%). Long Haul/Overseas visitors, 35% of whom purchased packages, drove this predominantly. These visitors spent comparatively less on food and beverage expenses (14%) and accommodations (11%) – most likely because these items were included in the package tours they purchased.

Food, beverages and accommodation represent nearly one-half of the total tourism monies spent in BC (46%) by close-in 'other' Canadians and US visitors. A substantial proportion of expenditures for this market also went towards transportation (18%) and package tours purchased in BC (16%).

Food, beverages and accommodation represent one-half of the total monies spent in the Northwest region by resident visitors. These visitors spent an additional 15% on accommodations while travelling in the region (Exhibit 10).

Exhibit 10: Visitor Spending Profile in Northwest BC

% DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL EXPENDITURES	OVERNIGHT VISITORS				
	NON-RESIDENT			BC RESIDENT	
	NON-RESIDENT TOTAL %	REGIONAL CAN & US %	LONG HAUL & OVERSEAS %	TOTAL %	NORTH %
Food & beverage	19	27	14	30	27
Accommodations	14	19	11	18	15
Transportation	16	18	14	21	23
Souvenirs & gifts	6	7	5	7	7
Package tours purchased in BC	28	16	35	*	*
Outdoor activities	3	3	3	6	7
Attractions & cultural events	1	1	—	5	4
Other expenses	15	9	17	12	16

Non-resident expenditures represent all expenditures while in the province. BC resident expenditures represent only expenditures in the region. (— denotes less than 1%) (* denotes package expenses for BC resident visitors were considered pre-trip expenditures and were not included in the visitors' expenditures while travelling in BC).

SOFT
SHOULDER

Chapter 4

4 Wet'suwet'en First Nation

4.1 Chapter Summary

For centuries, the local Aboriginal tourism sector, along with other businesses had evolved based on a unique set of cultural values and traditions. In fact many small businesses across all industries and sectors, including tourism, flourished as the country developed.

Over the past century, however, the abundance of local Aboriginal firms shrunk to almost a minute few today. There are several influences that contribute to this demise, mainly restrictive legislations and its social and economic outcomes. High unemployment rates, the lack of ability to invest in capital and build equity are few examples of the erosion of social and economic conditions of Aboriginal communities. Very few opportunities existed for First Nations people to capitalize and prosper. This provided an opportunity for non-aboriginal firms to capitalize and appropriate the culture and heritage. From a commercial perspective, Aboriginal tourism became associated with the viewing of customs, artefacts, and lifestyles of Indigenous people, and often occurs in promotional literature with very little benefit reflected back to native communities.

In recent years, however, tourism development has become more prominent in developing businesses and regional strategies along with Aboriginal people. There are several examples of Aboriginal tourism development throughout British Columbia that enhance local communities, municipal and regional tourism strategies. The core businesses range from products and services that compete in local economies through to Aboriginal cultural experiences that provide community and regional strategies with differential advantage in the global market place. Examples of product lines range from five star hotels, casinos and golf courses, Olympic metal winning haute-cuisine, through to backcountry wilderness guiding, each accurately representing First Nations interests. It is evident that tourism now serves as an empowering social and economic platform that benefits both Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal communities.

The development of successful products, however, has been contingent on social, legal and political paradigms shifts. In particular the history, authenticity, and diversity of Aboriginal cultures and their struggles to survive in the global economy have become realized. Federal and provincial governments have responded by introducing social and economic development programs like the federal strategy Gathering Strength, and the BC provincial strategy on post-secondary education. These strategies are becoming recognized locally. Both governments and the forest industry recently committed to an economic development strategy, along with First Nation, to design and advance economic initiatives by means of capacity building.

Recognizing and respecting the history and their respective differences in worldviews is a key to cross-cultural literacy. In essence, reconciling these differences provides a bridge to building a local, diverse, economy that includes the values of all stakeholders. The example set by government and forest industry provides an opportunity for local tourism lifestyle businesses and operators to work together in developing a product that is consistent with global demands for best practices in tourism development.

The Wet'suwet'en, along with partnering First Nations organizations, provides the local tourism sector with an array of eco-tourism product development potential. Using the cultural knowledge and history of the traditional territory, for example, as its core competency, can be used to build infrastructure with cultural architecture.

Many opportunities have been identified for each house and clan. Areas that provide maximum potential destinations to integrate cultural/heritage and eco-tourism include: C'iniggit Nenkikeh, Wesel Bin, Nelgi'at, Misdzi Kwah, Ggusgi Be Wini, Tlhdzi Wiyez Bin, lhudis Bin, and Biwini.

It is important to keep in mind that while many have been identified – heritage sites are protected under the Heritage Act. The primary difference, however, is that Aboriginal culture is rich and vibrant and continues to thrive through traditional means. This includes traditional territory use. Therefore, it is critical to consult with the relevant groups to ensure that infringement, encroachment, and appropriation does not occur.

4.1.1 Methodology

The first part of this chapter is a compendium of both primary and secondary research. Using academic and technical literature, this section provides a brief, focused description of the social and economic conditions of Aboriginal people in Canada. Gaining an understanding of the historical implications provides the reader with greater understanding of the needs, desires and goals to advance both social and economic conditions of Aboriginal people and Canada through tourism development.

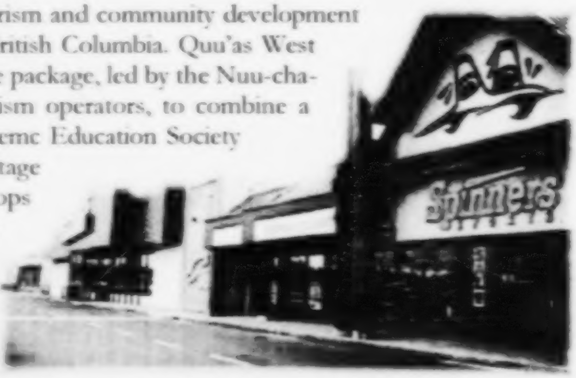
Sources include academic papers, texts, technical reviews, individual interviews, court proceeding documents, and digital technology, focus groups and individual interviews. Sources of information had been gathered from the province of British Columbia's mapping system; legal proceedings of the Delgamuukw court case; meetings and individual interviews with Wet'suwet'en hereditary chiefs; clan membership; bands; band members; and cumulative research and knowledge management programs of The Office of the Wet'suwet'en.

Using digital technology, base maps, cultural and heritage information, forest development plans and overlays, a preliminary assessment of cultural/heritage and eco-tourism opportunities had been identified. The findings have been reported in the following sections.

4.2 Part I: Aboriginal Tourism

Aboriginal tourism is frequently associated with visiting unique and often less developed destinations, where opportunities to experience the customs, artefacts, and lifestyles where Aboriginal people exist. It is not difficult to find promotional tourism literature that focuses on the unique attributes of native or other indigenous peoples in exotic destinations around the globe. This is particularly the case in North America, where Aboriginal people and their cultures have long been used to promote travel. In recent years, however, momentum for the creation of distinct Aboriginal tourism products and enterprises in Canada has grown dramatically. This is illustrated by several strategic initiatives including: The formation of the Canadian National Aboriginal Tourism Association in 1992 and the Aboriginal Tourism Association of British Columbia in 1996. Many provinces are strategically incorporating Aboriginal culture into their tourism development and market strategies, while others are creating cultural tourism education programs.

From a more commercial perspective, there has been a virtual explosion in the production of native cultural forms created for and marketed to tourists. Frequently, these native products are marketed in museum and /or cultural centres, powwows, and various other native sites. However, many other native products continue to be created, displayed and sold by both Aboriginal and non-aboriginal people in commercially focused artisan centres, trade shows and exhibitions, and retail outlets –not always to the betterment of indigenous peoples. Other more adventuresome products have involved tours to Aboriginal destinations to observe traditional cultural activities (e.g. carving, games, festivals, construction); to visit archaeological sites of pre-modern native cultures (e.g. villages; fishing stations); or to acquire artefacts (e.g. native art and craft productions).[22]



Numerous examples of best practices in tourism and community development can be found throughout the province of British Columbia. Quu'as West Coast Trail Society presents a comprehensive package, led by the Nuu-cha-Nulth First Nation, with several local tourism operators, to combine a unique First Nations Product. The Secwepemc Education Society operates a museum and a cultural and heritage park, a major special event—the Kamloops Pow-wow, and participates in marketing the High Country Tourism region with Aboriginal tourism products. Quaout Lodge, a three star hotel is among their regional Aboriginal product. The city of Campbell River boasts their contribution of a strip mall that houses major retail chains, and specialty shops, owned and operated by the Kwaguitl Band. In North Vancouver and Grouse Mountain, Hiwuss Feast House presents the visitor with an experience in west coast native cuisine, song and dance in venue designed using traditional west coast architecture. In the Kootney's a range of accommodations from camping and RV parks to a five star hotel and golf course showcase the pride of their local Aboriginal culture. In neighbouring communities of the Hazeltons, Ksan provides the model for cultural centres in western Canada.

The local First Nations are working to build on the existing Aboriginal tourism products by enhancing existing infrastructures in their traditional territories. Historically, the Wet'suwet'en have a natural fit in the tourism sector. The Potlatch is a fine example that engages all tourism sectors—A Special event, meetings & conferences, food & beverage, accommodation, travel trade, culture, and hospitality etc. As guides, the Wet'suwet'en introduced the newcomer and the missionaries to a vast territory rich and abundant with lands and resources. Since than, as the area became developed, First Nations continued to work in building the Canadian economy in several sectors that encompass transportation, forestry, mining and ultimately building the local tourism infrastructure. Regardless, the infrastructure capital investment, community impression and urban expression fall-short of accurately representing First Nations communities.

---

[22] Shaping Aboriginal Tourism Product Response to the International Marketplace Prepared by Peter W. Williams and Greg George. August 2000

STARBUCKS COFFEE

In recent years, tourism development has become increasingly important to the Aboriginal people. Tourism is known to touch virtually all aspects of the economy with access to both local and imported markets. Aboriginal tourism, through access to latent markets[23], can further provide benefits the local economy accounting for 8.3 million Aboriginal culture travelers over the next five years[24] thus providing both social and economic development opportunities for both Aboriginal and non-aboriginal communities. Further, the northwest is presented with an opportunity to create a unique, regional tourism product that provides a value added sector, builds partnerships, community development, and a sustainable, diverse local economy[25].

4.2.1 First Nations people: A common worldview

To proceed in building this exciting product, an overview of First Nations is necessary to encapsulate the social and economic development opportunities for the surrounding communities.

Expansion, market development, and the introduction of new product entries could not be possible, however, without a fundamental paradigm shift in old ways of conducting business with Aboriginal people. This is an apt phrase insofar as it points to possibilities—not yet seized—of doing things differently and successfully[26].

In British Columbia, the population of Aboriginal people is less than 150,000 people. The unemployment rate is 21%, 12 percentage points greater than the provincial average. 64,000 are registered with the Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. 28, 000 live on reserve, while 36, 000 live off-reserve. Reserve lands are held by Her Majesty for the use and benefit of the respective bands for which they were set apart[27]. The organization of reservations vary from remote communities like Takla Landing through to neighbourhood communities in the outskirts of metropolitan cities like Squamish, Tsawassen and Musqueam reserve in Vancouver. In this spectrum, some reserves have a range of fine infrastructure with condominiums, like Tsawassen, while others have unbearable living conditions without adequate plumbing and heating. The reserve lands are often small tracts of land sporadically located throughout the province.

---

[23] Aboriginal Tourism Markets: Analysis of Germany, Japan and Canada 1999, by Dr. Peter Williams and Karim B. Dossa

[24] Demand for Aboriginal Culture Products in Key European Markets 2000, p. 55 Price Waterhouse Coopers

[25] Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy, 1999, Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting

[26] When there's a Way, there's a Will By Michael M'Gonigle, Brian Egan Lisa Ambus, July 2001, p21

[27] Indian Act Section 18 (1)

Other social indicators like a high mortality rates, health problems, and economic circumstances, perpetuate the beliefs that Aboriginal people remain at the lower side of the social strata. This portrayal of Aboriginal circumstances is a mirror reflection resulting from public policy[28] created as early as the Royal Proclamation 1763. Throughout the history of Canada's developing economy it had become evident that Aboriginal people gained very little wealth as a result of the values of this era.

It was not until the latter part of the 20th century that Governments and industry became cognizant of the lasting effects of the vision of 'the fathers of confederation'. The change in Canadian values did not come without the relentless pursuit by Aboriginal people, during the past three centuries, and more assertively in the past century, to address their issues, concerns and interests in the developing economy. As a result, key hallmarks like *The Government's assimilation strategy, The 1969 White Paper Policy, The 1971 Calder Case, 1982 Charter of Rights and Freedoms, The 1985 Canadian Constitutional amendments, The 1996 Report on the Royal Commission of Aboriginal People, Delgamuukw/Gisdaywa v. Her Majesty the Queen* and the recent Federal Government Strategy: *Gathering Strength*[29] reflects the changes in values toward Aboriginal people.

Overall, Powerful macroeconomic forces are at work here, and these forces may grow even stronger over the next few decades. Major change efforts have helped some organizations adapt significantly to shifting conditions, have improved the competitive standing of others, and have positioned a few for a far better future. But in too many situations the improvements have been disappointing.[30] Canada has the potential to do much better than what it is doing at present, but this will take an enormous commitment, a willingness by all groups in society to accept major changes and to make important compromises.[31]

4.2.2 The Changing Economy—on route to globalization

The tacit experience of the masses and their educational experience with Aboriginal people fall short of fully understanding the culture. Throughout the centuries, academics of various faculties, through extensive research, formed many theories about Aboriginal people. The theories, commonly from the non-aboriginal worldview, and not adequately capturing the true worldview of the Aboriginal culture, had been packaged and presented through a supply chain that touches virtually all stakeholders and constituents of the nation. Communicated through many forms--textbooks, film, curriculum, mass media etc. the information empowers education, political, economic, social, legal and religious systems, and in large, the market, with the ability to instil values, beliefs, and perceptions[32] of Aboriginal people.

This stereotype is a tough image to shutter when the perception had been created over generations, and social, legal, and political change is only beginning to occur.

---

[28] Public Policy in Canada, 1998, p. 185, Stephen Brooks

[29] For greater insight into this program visit: http://www.ainc-inac.gc.ca

[30] Leading Change, John P. Kotter, 1996, page 3

[31] The Next Canadian Century, Building a Competitive Economy, David Crane, 1992, page 268

[32] Critical Skills for communicating in Conflict, Justice Institute of British Columbia

It is evident that Aboriginal people in British Columbia are culturally diverse. Understanding the diversity, recognizing the differences and gaining respect will lead to a successful reconciliation with the new developing economy. "Success requires cross-cultural literacy. This means an understanding of how cultural differences across and within nations can affect the way in which business is practiced. Westerners in general, are quick to conclude that because people from other parts of the world also wear blue jeans, listen to western popular music, eat at McDonalds, and drink Coca-Cola, they also accept the basic tenets of Western culture. But this is not true"[33]. The present day Aboriginal population is young and growing. The demographics indicate a generation with higher level of post-secondary education and professional status. Together, along with a strong cultural revitalization, the next generation can make a strong contribution to society.

Aboriginal communities have adapted well to changes in circumstances over the past few centuries. Stakeholders in Aboriginal communities must adapt to macro-conditions as well, since past strategies[34] and a changing global environment presents greater opportunities. To succeed, government and industry must recognize the effects of past decisions and seek understanding to overcome the continued business and ethical dilemma[35] should they choose not to include Aboriginal people in the development of their traditional territories.

4.2.3 Historic Organizations

4.2.3.1 THE INDIAN ACT

In the Morice Forest District area, there are several small reserve lands as represented by Lake Babine, Wet'suwet'en First Nation, Burns Lake Band, Cheslatta Band, Nee-tai-buhn Band and Skin Tyee Band.

First Nations groups in the area are organized and influenced either through the traditional hereditary system, or through means of the Indian Act.

The Indian Act provides a means for administrating social programs and to service the development and maintenance of community infrastructures. The Indian Act is the jurisdiction of the Federal government's Department of Indian and Northern Affairs Development (DIAND). DIAND initially created large organizations as a means for communication between 'indians' and the Department Indian Affairs. However, over time, the large organization went from controlling interests to the goal of devolution and self-governing communities. Over the course of the Indian act, a political and corporate culture was created[36].

---

[33] International Business, Charles W.L. Hill 2001, page 78

[34] To gain better understanding of outlier, deceitful strategies include those identified in the following readings: The Prince, Nicocolo Machiavelli, 1972 p.11

[35] Greater understanding on this topic can be attained in: The Ethics of Management, LaRue Tone Hosmar, 1996, p.1

[36] Aboriginal People and Politics, The Indian Land Question in British Columbia, 1849-1989, UBC Press, 1990, Paul Tennant

Band communities mainly consist of Aboriginal people registered under the provisions of the Indian Act. However, in 1985, legislation empowered Aboriginal people who had previously lost their right and have since been able to become reinstated into the Indian act. Therefore, the band membership has a population that extends beyond the reserve boundaries.

The organizational structure is functional with powers of authority mainly resting with chief and council. Each band has an elected council and a chief. Under the direction of the band membership the chief and council are elected to represent the interests of the band. The Indian Act mainly drives the policies.

4.2.4 The Traditional System

It should be understood, that while the Babine and Gitxsan people are a nation of their own, however, both systems have acculturated traits and are similar in nature. The Main differences exist in linguistic dialect and the clan structure: The Wet'suwet'en have five clans; where as the Babine have four clans: Likhc'ibu (bear), Jilhtsehyu (frog), Gilantin (caribou), and Likhtsemisyu (beaver)[37]. Greater detail on the traditional system is discussed in the following sections.

4.2.4.1 THE TRADITIONAL HOUSE TERRITORY

The Wet'suwet'en house territories are located in North-Central British Columbia. The area is approximately 22,000 square km. Boundaries extend from Endako River in the East at Mosquito flats near Hagwilget in the West and the vicinity south of Babine Lake in the North to the Coast mountain ranges in the south beyond Morice Lake and Ootsa Lake. The Wet'suwet'en "live in a territory which is favourable for human settlement. The territory is a sufficient land base to support extensive organized activity. In this territory, the people have access to the diverse resources of three different ecological zones. Resources surplus to the immediate needs of the people are harvested....as evidenced by the trade and commerce carried on before European contact and thereafter....[38]

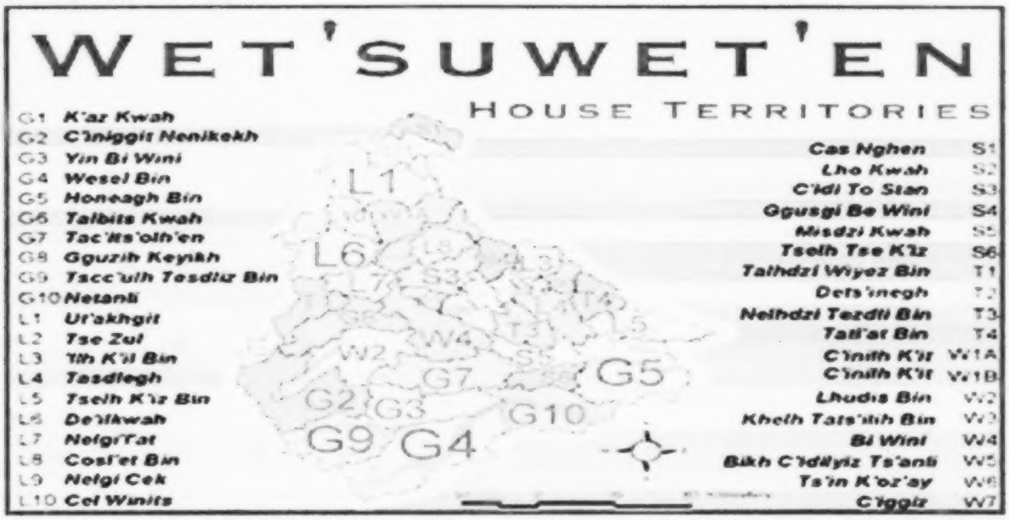
Within the confines of the Wet'suwet'en territory are many geographical features that are attractive to the Eco-tourist. Lake systems are a natural attraction with thousands of miles of water-frontage. The territory is home of the Nechako and Fraser plateau and has the headwaters of the Skeena and Fraser River systems. The majestic Coast Mountains and the Babine Mountain Ranges, and Telkwa Ranges tower over pristine wilderness and unique wildlife habitat.

The land is integral to Wet'suwet'en culture. It provides the basis for cultural activities, hunting and gathering, historical values and spiritual means. Wet'suwet'en territorial boundaries, in the Wet'suwet'en language, are often landmarks that describe the geographic attributes, ecosystem profile, and/or cultural/traditional significance. The Wet'suwet'en territory is divided for clan stewardship. Clan members respect their territorial boundaries and all activities and cultural practices that occur within their traditional territories. The territories and management of resources are based on respect and knowledge of the land.

---

[37] Cis Dideen Kat, When the Plumes Rise, Jo-Anne Fiske and Betty Patrick, 2000 p.48

[38] Statement of Facts, Appellants Factum, Court of Appeal transcripts, Delgamuukw v Her Majesty the Queen and the Attorney General of Canada March 8, 1991. Page 6


WET'SUWET'EN
HOUSE TERRITORIES
G1 K'az Kwah
G2 C'iniggit Nenikekh
G3 Yin Bi Wini
G4 Wesel Bin
G5 Honeagh Bin
G6 Talbits Kwah
G7 Tac'its'olh'en
G8 Gguzih Keyikh
G9 Tscc'ulh Tesdliz Bin
G10 Netanli
L1 Ut'akhgit
L2 Tse Zul
L3 Yih K'il Bin
L4 Tasdlegh
L5 Tselh K'iz Bin
L6 De'ilkwah
L7 Nelgi'Tat
L8 Cosl'et Bin
L9 Nelgi Cek
L10 Cel Wanits
Cas Nghen S1
Lho Kwah S2
C'idi To Stan S3
Ggusgi Be Wini S4
Misdzi Kwah S5
Tsolh Tse K'iz S6
Talhdzi Wiyez Bin T1
Dets'inegh T2
Neihdzi Tezdli Bin T3
Tall'at Bin T4
C'inilh K'it W1A
C'inilh K'it W1B
Lhudis Bin W2
Khelh Tats'ilih Bin W3
Bi Wini W4
Bikh C'iddiyiz Ts'anli W5
Ts'in K'oz'ay W6
C'iggiz W7
L1
L6
L7
S3
T3
T4
W2
W4
S5
G7
G5
G2
G3
G10
G9
G4

For well over 5000 years[39], The Wet'suwet'en people have used, and continue to use, these traditional use areas for a wide range of purposes. The Wet'suwet'en have lived and use the territories for sustenance and to support the Wet'suwet'en social and economic activities through examples of gathering activities for food such as berries, tubers, and shoots. Saplings, roots, and bark are used for medicinal purposes and specific flora was used for spiritual means. Hunting and trapping for moose, deer, elk, goat, bear, are Wet'suwet'en staples and other small fur-bearers provide sustenance, clothing and economic means of survival. Fishing for salmon and other game fish such trout, char, ling cod etc, is abundant in the lakes, rivers and tributaries. The wildlife is a natural attraction. The wildlife and territories can be enhanced through the teachings of the Wet'suwet'en worldview thus adding value to an already existing, high demand product.

The territories are veined with an intricate trail system. These trails serve as access to pristine wilderness and infrastructure for recreation. While public access is inevitable, the trails network can be used as interpretive trails and camps to 'educate' tourists on the heritage and cultural relevance of the Wet'suwet'en territories. The trails were used not only to access the territories, but also served as a link to trade centres and served as corridors for destinations such as hunting/fishing camps and the missionaries. The land was a vital to Wet'suwet'en lifestyles. It served as economic, social, political, technological, and spiritual means to survival.[40]

4.2.4.2 THE HEREDITARY SYSTEM

The Wet'suwet'en people are organized by a matrilineal system. The matrilineal system is based on extended families. These families represent a "yex"; commonly known as 'house'. These houses, as a collective, comprise a 'clan'. In the Wet'suwet'en hereditary system, there are five clans: Gitdumden, Laksamishu, Gilsehyu, Tsayu, and Laksilyu. Within the clan structure, there are thirteen 'houses'. Each 'house' has a house chief—"denizeh", 'wing' chiefs--extended family, future chiefs--skizeh and clan members.

---

[39] The Spirit in the Land, 1989, p.11, Gitxsan and Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs

[40] Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy, 1999, Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting

A chief is born into their house and it is decided by the clan chiefs to determine their hereditary status. Chiefs are usually groomed from birth throughout their life to represent the best interest of their clan. Hereditary chiefs are recognized for their knowledge, wisdom, and spiritual abilities. A chief is given a hereditary name. A chief's name is a name of an ancestor who is highly regarded for their contribution to their family, clan, and nation, and has a profound spiritual element. The House Chief represents the interests of their houses, the sub-chiefs and the wing chiefs are assistants to the house chief and serve as spokespeople. There is no one chief bigger than the other—they all work together prior to making a decision. [41]

The house chief is recognized by their presentation of regalia--drums, totem poles, leggings, apron, and headdress. The regalia represent the clan and house group and their spiritual connection to the land and their ancestors known as kungas[42]. The regalia, along with chief names, are transferred from one generation to the next in the bahlahts.

4.2.4.3 THE BAHLAHTS (POTLATCH)

The Bahlahts is a complex institution to describe and is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, a brief introduction to the bahlahts is necessary for readers to understand how the hereditary system functions and the importance and relevance for development purposes.

The traditional system is governed by the Bahlahts, commonly known as the feast, or potlatch. The Bahlahts is an event that formalizes the Yinta. It is a forum where one clan would host a 'feast' and will invite all chiefs of other clans and sometimes from other nations. The role of the guests is to witness all transactions of the event. Transactions will include, for example, the payment of debts, recognition, acknowledgement, spirituality, and traditional rituals. There are 13 different Bahlahts, each with strict protocol. A feast can be as large as 500 people and, traditionally last for days, but more recently, typically last up to 18 hours.

It is during the feast where most of the culture is apparent. There is strict protocol, kungax, and a place where transactions become law. It is venue where food and resources gathered from the territory is distributed throughout the duration of the feast.

All guests are acknowledged and paid with money, gifts, and food for witnessing the event. It is a kind gesture where all people are equally respected. The Wet'suwet'en have used their traditional territories, along with the feast system, for well over 5000 years[43]. The system had adapted, but remained consistent through several social, political, economic, cultural, changes and will continue to thrive.

---

[41] Gallaghun, interview February 17 2002

[42] The Spirit in the Land, 1989, Gitxsan and Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs

[43] The Spirit in the Land, 1989, Gitxsan and Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs

4.3 Part II: Building the Aboriginal Tourism Sector

4.3.1 Legal, Political, & Economic Influences on Development

Much concern had been expressed by the Aboriginal communities with respect to cultural and heritage preservation and social and economic development. The following sub-headings addresses core issues that affect both social and economic development for Aboriginal people.

4.3.1.1 CONSULTATION

Prior to development of lands and resources, it is critical to consult with local First Nations stakeholders. It is a moral and fiduciary responsibility and is supported across all legal, political, social, and economic institutions. There are several interests to consider when planning a consultation process. Over and above the obvious interest groups, consultation must include the areas governing agency, Band members, clan members, and trapline holders.

For further information on protocol, contact the respective agencies of which the traditional territories/ area of interest exist. Contacts may include one or all of: The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lake Babine Nation, The Gitxsan Treaty Office, and respective individual band offices.

While a legal discussion of Aboriginal title is beyond the scope of a tourism opportunity study, it is important to keep these requirements in mind when planning a lifestyle business destination resort. It is a legal and moral obligation to consult with First Nations. Approaching planning in this manner will reduce the likelihood of unnecessary conflict, and the increased risks of costs.

This is particularly important resulting from several legal decisions. On December 11, 1997, the Supreme Court of Canada released its legal decision in Delgamuukw/Gisdaywa v. Her Majesty the Queen. The decision marked the first time that the Supreme Court had ruled that the concept of Aboriginal title existed.[44] The evidence provided in this court case can be best summarized as read in sections traditional system of the Wet'suwet'en as discussed in this document.

Supporting the Delgamuukw court decision, and advancing Aboriginal interests in the decision making processes of lands & resource development are recent court decisions.

In the Court of Appeal between The Council of the Haida Nation and Guujaaw AND The Minister of Forests, The Attorney General of British Columbia, Weyerhaeuser Co. Ltd[45]. Of equal importance is the legal decision between The Taku River Tlingit First Nation and Redfern Resources Ltd, the Minister of Environment, lands and Parks, the minister of Energy and mines, and The Minister Responsible for Northern Development. In summary these decisions require governments and industries to consult with First Nations prior to developing lands and resources. Consulting with First Nations groups ensure that the culture and traditions are respected as well as ensuring the development of sustainable social and economic benefits for all interests.

---

[44] For a detailed compendium visit: www.delgamuukw.org

[45] For a detailed citation visit: http://www.courts.gov.bc.ca

4.3.1.2 THE CANADIAN CONSTITUTION

Throughout the traditional territories, several locations provide evidence of occupation i.e. Wet'suwet'en traditional use. Examples of traditional use and occupation include burial sites, archaeological sites, culturally modified trees, fishing sites, camp and village sites located throughout their traditional territories. These areas are validated through oral histories of the territory stewards, and kungas. Together, the knowledge of the culture and evidence of the cultural and heritage sites provide a critical link between the cultural protection/revitalization, the land, the history, and most importantly, future generations. The culture is protected under section 25 and 35 of the Canadian Constitution. A critical link to the culture is the rich heritage of the Aboriginal communities. Heritage sites are located throughout the traditional territories and addressed within both the Canadian Constitution and the Heritage Act.

4.3.1.3 COPYRIGHT AND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

While opportunities for Aboriginal people in tourism development extend across many sectors, a unique niche exists for Aboriginal people in eco-tourism. The previous sections outlined the unique relationship between the land and culture. The common knowledge, oral histories and nature of the culture and its integral attributes to the land require special attention. To avoid misuse and cultural appropriation, The Office of the Wet'suwet'en is working to "use existing legal tools….and a web of strategies to help Aboriginal communities better protect and control their traditional knowledge"[46]. For further information, contact the Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Land & Resources.

4.3.2 Globalization factors worth considering:

4.3.2.1 FISCAL INDICATORS, EXCHANGE RATES, AND TRADE

Many of the local Aboriginal communities express the concern that their traditional territories are being encroached upon, expropriated, developed, and left 'barren'. As a result, very little resources are left for Aboriginal people to continue in practicing their rich and vibrant culture.

Investments by multi-national corporations have both a direct and indirect affect on the social, economic, historical and cultural conditions of Aboriginal communities.

The tax environment created by the Canadian and provincial governments encourage capital investments. In addition, the 'northern peso' provides an appealing investment in the development of resources. While this serves the social and economic development well-being of all communities, the investing firms have one concern—the bottom line. This negates the values of both First Nations, and the surrounding community.

4.3.2.2 THE KYOTO ACCORD

While this accord does not affect tourism development directly – increased global demand for renewable resources will indirectly affect tourism development through resource-use economics. The traditional territories outlined above have cultural and heritage interests in one of BC's largest watershed. This watershed presents opportunities for those interests in supplying global markets with alternative energy substitutes.

---

[46] Intellectual Property and Aboriginal People: A Working Paper, Fall 1999, Research and Analysis Directorate, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development

4.3.2.3 THE SOFTWOOD LUMBER AGREEMENT

Approximately 20% of the Morice Forest District's greatest tourism development potential exists within a non-productive bio-geoclimatic zone. However, there are numerous regions that have cultural and heritage zones, along with other natural features that present a reasonable opportunity for development within productive forestry zones. The softwood lumber agreement will determine production rates, inventories, and export ready products. The Morice Forest District has one of the largest AAC's in the province.

The potential for resource use conflicts will either increase or decrease depending on the outcomes of the softwood lumber agreement.

4.4 Contemporary Organizations

4.4.1 Keys to building strategic alliances

While the traditional hereditary system continues to thrive, modern organizations had been created to work with government institutions, and recently, corporate entities. In the Morice Forest District, there is one main aboriginal organization whose interest is in Aboriginal tourism development. The Office of the Wet'suwet'en is a representative organization for the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs (the hereditary system). In addition, there are Band organizations whose jurisdictions fall within the Indian Act and represent reserve lands. These organizations provide programs and services to support social, political, and economic development.

4.4.2 Office of Wet'suwet'en

The Office of the Wet'suwet'en (OW) is an organization created in 1977. The mandate is to represent the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs. The core competency of the OW includes research & development and knowledge management for the Wet'suwet'en hereditary chiefs. Success in knowledge management is reflected in the landmark court case Delgamuukw/Gisdaywa vs. Her Majesty the Queen, and several protocol agreements, Memoranda of Understanding, and political accords with Federal and Provincial governments and Industries. The office is charged with creating programs in: economic development; treaty negotiation; lands & resource management; social services; Aboriginal justice; consultation and recently, tourism development.

The following are examples of programs that complement tourism development:

4.4.2.1 WET'SUWET'EN ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

The mandate of the Office of the Wet'suwet'en's Economic Development Department is to research, identify, develop and implement opportunities for sustainable economic development, which will benefit all Wet'suwet'en. This can be achieved through improved communications, relations and partnerships with all levels of governments, the private sector, non-government organizations, clans and communities.

At present, Wet'suwet'en are actively engaged with the forest sector through harvesting, forest health and silviculture activities with licensees. Other economic development priorities include the non-timber values of the forest, mining, agriculture, tourism and commercial recreation, horticulture, wildlife, fisheries, and human resource development.

Tourism initiatives include the development of a comprehensive regional Aboriginal tourism product marketing strategy; a regional tourism marketing strategy in partnership with the municipalities; investigation and implementation of eco-cultural tourism opportunities; the integration of Wet'suwet'en Tourism Services; and the development of Wet'suwet'en tourism infrastructure through marketing targeted at the investment sector.

4.4.2.2 LANDS & RESOURCES

The purpose of the Lands & Resources department is to protect all lands and resources of the Wet'suwet'en territory for the benefit of the Wet'suwet'en, to develop capacity for the economic development of communities and to preserve these resources for generations to come. Several initiatives have been developed including:

The Wet'suwet'en Territorial Stewardship Plan

The Wet'suwet'en Territorial Stewardship Plan is similar to a Lands and Resources Management Plan. The core competencies of this plan is the value of the Wet'suwet'en and encompasses social, cultural and economic values. This will ensure a balance and sustainable approach to planning social and economic development and will ensure the protection of the Wet'suwet'en culture by employing contemporary planning methods.

Cultural/Heritage policy

The Office of the Wet'suwet'en worked with the Province of British Columbia to identify cultural and heritage resources. These definitions have identified the following archaeological standards:

Wet'suwet'en Shelters:

- Large Dwellings: Pit House, Smoke house/Long House sites
- Small Dwellings: Lean-too shelter, Khiyt Bin Yikh (lake house)

Adjoining Traditional Use Areas:

- Baking Pit, cache pits, food caches, sweat lodge, gravesites

Wet'suwet'en Trails:

- Trapping Trails, common trails

4.4.2.3 TREATY NEGOTIATIONS

The treaty negotiations team works with all levels of governments and strategic alliances in all industries to advance the goals and best interests of the communities in the Wet'suwet'en territories. The following are examples of initiatives that directly, or indirectly, support tourism development.

The Political Accord concerning Lands & Resources

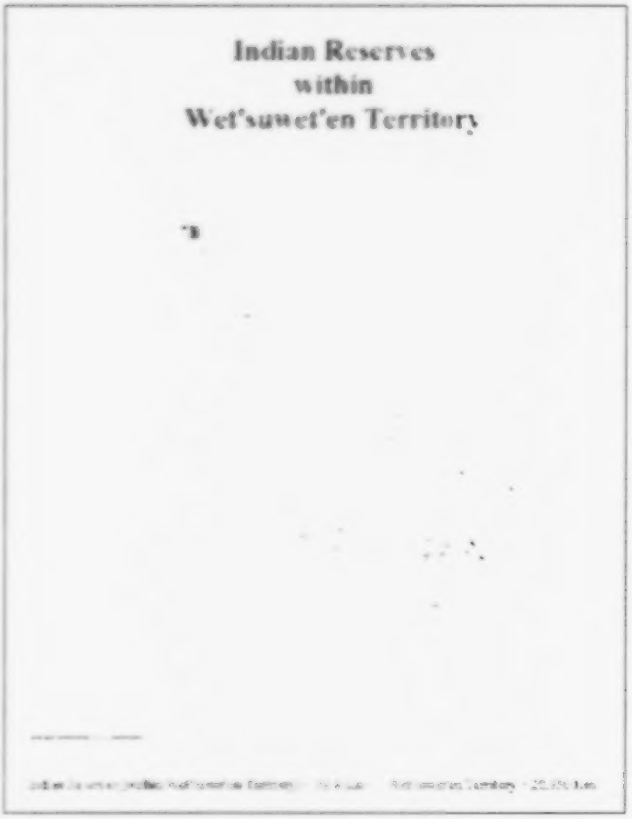
An agreement made on April 27, 2000 between the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs, The Province of British Columbia, Canada, and Industry. The goals of the agreement involves the identification of economic opportunities, Wet'suwet'en involvement in lands and resources planning and management, exploration of a means for protection of key areas of environmental, cultural, spiritual, historical and other values, capacity building, and partnership building.

Memorandum of Understanding regarding Recognition, Respect, and Reconciliation

In 1995, the Province of British Columbia entered into an accord with the Wet'suwet'en recognizing that the Wet'suwet'en have Aboriginal rights and the inherent right to self government….mutual respect for the histories, laws, customs, institutions of the Wet'suwet'en and laws of British Columbia. This agreement focuses on social and economic development programs and services.

4.5 Bands

The following information for the bands has been gathered from the Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. Detailed information can be accessed on the Aboriginal Portal Website at: www.aboriginalcanada.gc.ca. Digital mapping was not available at the time of publishing from either the Lake Babine Nation or the Office of the Wet'suwet'en.



4.5.1 Burns Lake Band

The Burns Lake Band Office is located adjacent to the Village of Burns Lake. The band has a small population, but is quite active in local economic development initiatives. The band membership also includes Wet'suwet'en, Gitxsan, and Stella'ten, among others, and therefore, have interests within the Wet'suwet'en traditional territory. Existing tourism businesses with which band members are involved with include the Rainbow Motel and Gas Bar, boating tours, and snowmobiling tours. The band is involved in extensive planning with the surrounding communities.

4.5.2 Nee tahi buhn

Nee Tahi Buhn band is located on the Southside of Francois Lake. There are 5 tracts of land, in the lands registry, allocated for the band membership of Nee tahi buhn. Nee tahi buhn are claiming traditional territories, along with the Wet'suwet'en in the southern portion of Morice Forest District. The following reserve lands have been identified:

- Isaac (gale lake) 8, Francois Lake 7, Omineca 1, Uncha Lake 13a, Eastern Island no. 13

The band membership is interested in tourism development with interests in advancing their interests in both social and economic development.

4.5.3 Wet'suwet'en First Nation (formerly Broman Lake Band)

The Wet'suwet'en First Nation community and head Office is located 20 km. west of the Village of Burns Lake. There are eleven tracts of land allocated for this band. However, the majority of the band membership continues to practice the hereditary system, and therefore, have access to the traditional territories. The following reserve lands are under the band Wet'suwet'en First Nation. Statistics and detailed information is not available.

- Klagookchew no. 9, Maxan Creek no. 5, Maxan Lake no. 3, Tsichgass 10, Duncan Lake 2, Maxan lake 4, Palling 1, Tatla West 11, Felix George no. 7, Foxy Creek no. 6, Gaichbin no. 8

Wet'suwet'en First Nation run a gas bar located on Duncan Lake Reserve. This venture is ideally situated on highway 16 and serves as a gateway to several lakes.

4.5.4 Skin Tyee

While there are no reserve lands within the Morice Forest District, there are band members who participate in the Wet'suwet'en hereditary system and therefore have interests in the development of traditional territories.

4.5.5 Nat'oot'en First Nation

The Lake Babine Nation head office is located on Reserve lands adjacent to the Village of Burns Lake. The nation has a significant population located throughout four main villages: Tachet, Fort Babine, Old Fort and Woyenne. In the INAC Land Registry, there are 25 tracts of reserve lands for the Babine Nation. A majority of the band membership also participates in the hereditary system and therefore has access to traditional territories in the Morice Forest District.

Exhibit 11: INAC Land Registry for Lake Babine Nation

No.	Name	Location	Hectares
07485	CLOTALAIRQUOT NO. 4	CASSAIR DISTRICT, ON EAST SHORE OF NILKITKWA LAKE, BABINE RIVER, 3 MILES NORTH OF BABINE	80.1
07486	NO-CUT NO. 5	CASSIAR DISTRICT ON WEST SHORE OF NILKITKWA LAKE, BABINE RIVER 2 MILES NORTH OF BABINE	79.7
07487	BABINE NO. 6	CASSIAR DISTRICT, AT BABINE, NORTH END OF BAINE LAAKE	279.8
07488	ALPHONSE TOMMY NO. 7	CASSIAR DISTRICT ON WEST SHORE OF BABINE LAKE SOUTH OF BABINE I.R. NO. 16	37.2
07489	CASDEDED NO. 8	FORT FRANCIS DISTRICT, ON EAST SHORE OF BABINE LAKE, 2 MILES SOUTH OF BABINE	43.3
07490	TSAK NO. 9	FORT FRASER DISTRICT, ON WEST SHORE OF BABINE LAKE, 12 MILES SOUTH OF BABINE	615.1
07491	NE-TSAW-GREECE NO. 10	FORT FRASER DISTRICT ON NORTHERLY SHORE OF BABINE LAKE 18 MILES SOUTHEASTERLY FROM BABINE	91.5
07492	NEDOATS NO. 11	FORT FRASER DISTRICT ON NORTHERLY SHORE OF BABINE LAKE AT OLD FORT	395.4
07493	MICHELL PIERRE NO. 12	FORT FRASER DISTRICT ON SOUTHERLY SHORE OF NORTH ARM OF BABINE LAKE 3 MILES SOUTHWEST OF OLD FORT	136
07494	NEDOATS NO. 13	FORT FRASER DISTRICT LOT 1360, ON NORTHERLY SHORE OF BABINE LAKE WEST OF AND ADJOINING I.R. NO. 11	221
07495	CHANOODANDIDALCH NO. 14	FORT FRASER DIST. LOT 1359, ON NORTHERLY SHORE OF NORTH ARM OF BABINE LAKE EAST OF ADJOINING BABINE LAKE I.R. NO. 2	95.1
07496	TADINLAY NO. 15	FORT FRASER DISTRICT, LOT 1358, ON NORTHERLY SHORE OF NORTH ARM OF BABINE LAKE	187
07497	BABINE NO. 16	CASSIAR DISTRICT, LOT 1357, AT NORTH END OF BABINE LAKE, WEST OF I.R. NO. 6	285.3
07498	BABINE LAKE NO. 20	CASSIAR DIST LOT 1366, ON NRTLY SHORE OF NORTH ARM OF BABINE LAKE, BTW NE-TSAW-GREECE IR 10, & CHANOODANDIDALCH IR 14	259
07499	BABINE RIVER NO. 21	CASSIAR DISTRICT, LOT 1600, ON LEFT BANK OF BABINE RIVER AT NORTH END OF NILKITKWA LAKE	21.4
07500	BABINE RIVER NO. 21A	CASSIAR DISTRICT, LOT 1601 ON RIGHT BANK OF BABINE RIVER, EAST OF I.R. 21	21.9
07501	BABINE LAKE NO. 21B	COAST DISTRICT, RG. 5, LOT 6682, ON SOUTHWESTERLY SHORE OF BABINE LAKE, AT DONALD LANDING	2.3
07502	AUGIER LAKE NO. 22	COAST DISTRICT, LOT 2157, RANGE 5 AT NORTH END OF AUGIER LAKE	8.1
07503	PINKUT LAKE NO. 23	COAST DISTRICT, LOT 2178, RANGE 5, AT NORTH END OF PINKUT LAKE	4.6
07504	TAHLO LAKE NO. 24	CASSIAR DISTRICT, LOT 4859, 1 MILE NORTH OF TAHLO LAKE.	129.5
07505	BABINE NO. 25	COAST DISTRICT, LOT 1353, RANGE 5, AT TOPLEY LANDING WEST SHORE OF BABINE LAKE	51.8
07506	BABINE NO. 26	COAST DISTRICT, LOT 2172, RG. 5, ON EAST SHORE OF BABINE LAKE	32.4
07507	WOYENNE NO. 27		12.6
08373	CHAPEL PARK NO. 28	COAST DISTRICT, LOT 1, BLOCK A, DIST. LOT 2502	3.8

Note: The reserve hectarage is currently under review. Please contact the Indian Land Registry at (819) 994-3666 for clarification about a specific reserve.

4.5.5.1 TOURISM PRODUCTS

In terms of tourism, the Nat'oot'en First Nation (Fort Babine Band) recognizes that the wilderness-like quality of the area in which they live has potential for supporting a fishing and hunting lodge. Fort Babine Enterprises Society, a Grouse Clan owned business, has constructed a lodge and eight log cabins on Babine Lake. Four more cabins and serviced RV sites will be built in the future. The company is also interested in developing a "photo hunting" business to complement the lodge and cabin facilities.

Band members have indicated a wide range of interests including use of historic trails, cabins along Babine & Nilkitkwa Lakes, skiing on French Peak, riverboat tours and purchase of a Smithers hotel to serve as a base for their tourism operations.

Members of the Lake Babine Nation have interests in developing areas throughout the Babine Lake region. Examples of development include the Grease Trail, and infrastructure that complements these developments. Other areas of interests include the development of reserve lands in the 'Rainbow Alley' region, Fort Babine, and Old Fort area. The membership also identified other areas throughout their traditional territories. Partnerships had been made between governments and industry. For further information, contact the Lake Babine Band Office in Burns Lake.

4.6 SWOT Analysis of Interests

The following section provides an overview of the house territories within the Morice Forest District. Each house territory is identifies with a Wet'suwet'en map reference, clan name, and house name. A contact is also provided.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Map reference: G2</td><td colspan="2">Clan: Gilseyu
House name: C'iniggit Nenikekh</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4"> </td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Contact:</td><td>Sample features</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630</td><td>Mt. Mortella
Nanika Lake
Tsah Mountain
Mt. Ney
Kidprice Lake
Hanging Glacier Mountain
Atna Lake</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Strengths</td><td colspan="2">Weaknesses</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">• Approx. 80% mountainous and alpine geography
• Limited access
• Trails
• Established product
• Backcountry
• Non-productive forest area
• Wide range of natural features</td><td colspan="2">• Limited access
• Short seasons
• Extreme conditions</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Opportunities</td><td colspan="2">Threats</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">• New product/market entry strategy</td><td colspan="2">• Industrial development around Atna Lake and Nanicka River to Kidprice Lake
• Beetle epidemic
• Destruction of cultural sites</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4"><i>Sample of cultural/heritage features:</i> Common trail, secondary trails, campsites, hunting, fishing, gathering sites, village site, gathering areas</td></tr>
</table>

Map reference: G3	**Clan: Gilseyu** **House name: Yin Biwini**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Sibola Peak Nadina Lake Tahtsa Peak Ootsa lake Mosquito Hills Shelford Hills

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Rich in Cultural and Heritage Sites • Nadina lake to sibola range not industrialized • Backcountry • Good Access—Huckleberry road	• Heavy industrial development • Approx. 80% disturbance last 20 years • High forest productive area • Approx. 20% region planned for harvest in the next 3 years.

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Long term development • Hut to hut • Partnerships with Nadina Lodge, Department of Fisheries and Oceans • Privatization of government sites	• Beetle epidemic • Decentralization of transportation routes (safety concern) • Aggregate blocks • Mining activities • Lack of respect/consultation

Sample Cultural/heritage features: gravesites, common trails, secondary trails village sites, hunting, fishing, gathering, campsites, migration route, campsites, village site, winter camps

Map Reference: G4	**Clan: Gilseyu** **House territory name: Wesel Bin**
House Group	**Sample Features**
Contact The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Troitsa Peak Lindquist Peak Chikamen Mountain Tweedsmuir park Mt. Wells Whitesail lake
Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Alpine • Approximately 20% productive forests • Backcountry values • Mountainous terrain • Diverse eco-system • High cultural value	• Remote Access
Opportunities	**Threats**
• Lodging • Hut to hut • Gateway strategy to Tweedsmuir Park • Trails and infrastructure development	• Dredging of the Tahtsa Reach • Beetle infestation • Mining activities • Hydro development
Sample Cultural/heritage features: migration route, settlement, main trail—route to Bella Coola Trail, secondary trail, gravesites, fishing sites, hunting area	

Map reference: G6	**Clan: Gilseyu** **House Territory Name: Talbits Kwah**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Corona Peak Mt. Loring Morice River Herd Dome Gosnell Creek Thautle River

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Access to through Corona peak • Upper Morice river, Thoatle River, and Gosnell Creek presents unique eco-system • High Wildlife values • High Cultural values • Backcountry	• Approx. 30% productive forests with approx. 5% harvested in the last 20 years, and approx. 40% planned for the next three years. • Industrial access

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Staging area for access points north and west	• Plans for industrial forests • Beetle epidemic • Privatization of roads • Pesticide use • Aggregate blocks

Sample Cultural/Heritage feature: hunting (grizzly), goats fishing, gathering areas, caribou migration corridor, village sites, grease trail from Kitamaat.

Map reference: G7	**Clan: Gilseyu** **House Territory name: Tac'its'olh'en**

Contact:	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Shelford Hills Francois Lake Mount Parrott Tekaiziyiz Ridge Nadina River Poplar Mountain Smoke Mountain

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Mid-country • High traditional use area • Good access via huckleberry mine road and via Francois Lake • High traditional use area	• Heavy industrial development @ 60% disturbance in the past 5-20 years.

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Tagetchothlen untouched • Fishing • Hut to hut • Long-term planning	• Beetle epidemic • Increased land use conflicts across all economic sectors • Lack of respect for heritage sites • Increased development without Wet'suwet'en participation

Sample Cultural/heritage feature: main trails, hunting (bear, moose, deer, caribou), fishing—char, trout, salmon sqaw fish, white fish, settlement, camps, gravesites, secondary trails

Map reference: G8	Clan: Gilseyu House territory name: Gguzih Keyikh

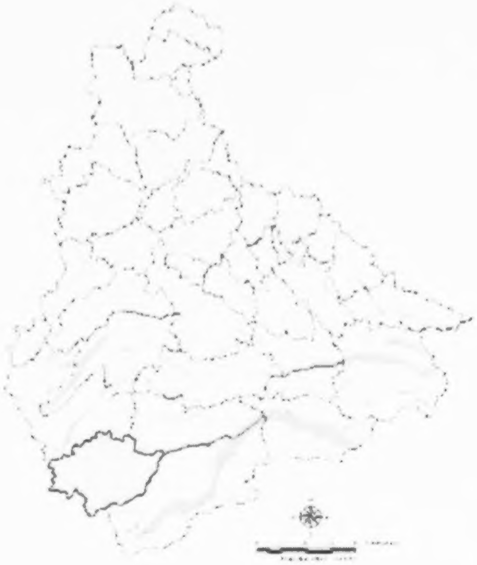
Contact	Sample Features
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	China Nose Mountain Swan Lake Gilmore Lake

Strengths	Weaknesses
• Scenic mountains • Diverse ecosystems provided by volcanic history and lakes • Rich cultural history	• Location

Opportunities	Threats
• The development of attractions	• Increased industrial development with approx. 60% disturbance history in the last 20 years.

Sample cultural/heritage feature: burial grounds, trail, campsites, hunting (grizzly, black bear, deer, moose, goat), fishing-chinook, trout, chub, whitefish, gathering-medicinal plants, berries. trails

Map reference: G9	**Clan: Gilseyu** **House territory name: Tsec'ulh Tesdliz Bin**



Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Rhine Ridge Troitsa lake Kasalka Range Tatsa Peak Penteuch pass Tahtsa Lake

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Backcountry • Rich in cultural and heritage resources	• Limited access
Opportunities	**Threats**
• Develop a tourism product has a greater chance over other areas that have been hit hard by industrial forestry.	• Dredging of the Tahtsa • Increased industrial development from the east along Tahtsa

Sample cultural/heritage feature: main trail, camps, fishing sites, cache pits, trapping area, caribou migration route, grizzly habitat

Map reference: L2	**Clan: Laksilyu** **House territory name: TseZul**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	China Nose Mountain North Bulkley River

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Mid-country • High cultural and heritage sites	• Not many natural attractions

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Wildlife viewing	• Approx. 2% disturbance in industrial forestry planned

Sample cultural/heritage features: hunting areas for grizzly, goats, moose, deer, gathering sites—medicinal plants, berries, campsites

Map reference: L3	**Clan: Laksilyu** **House territory name: 'Ilh K'il Bin**

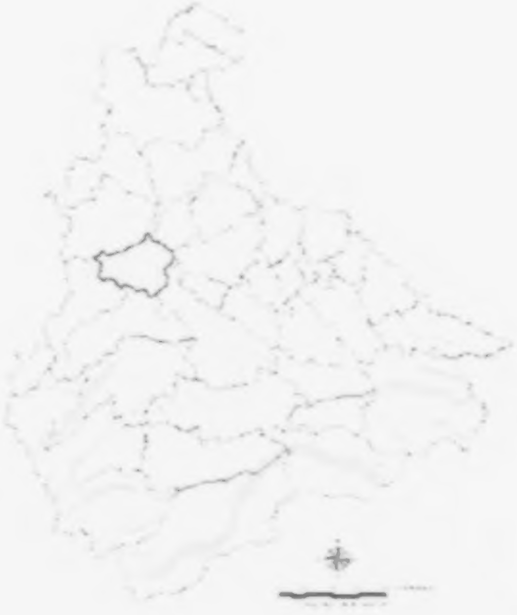
House Group	**Sample Features**
Contact The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Tachek Mountain Nez Lake Sunset Lake

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Approximately 80% undeveloped forestry • Highway access • Diverse eco-system (approx. 30% deciduous) • Highway Access • High cultural and heritage sites • Wildlife viewing • Mid-country • Largest man-made sockeye spawning beds	• Distant from urban centres

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Develop strategy consistent with Perow, Topley, and Babine development plans • Fishing • May serve as an attraction and stop-over for traffic between Prince George and Smithers	

Sample cultural/heritage features: village settlement, campsites, main trail, hunting, fishing, gathering areas.

Map reference: L7	**Clan: Laksilyu** **House territory name: Nelgi'I'at**



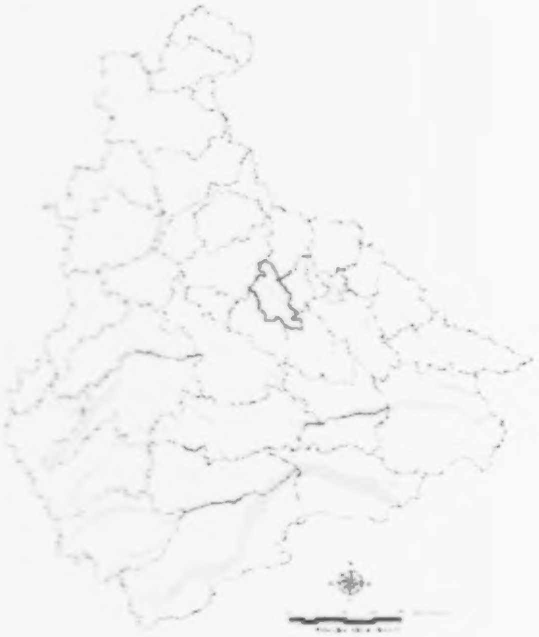
Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Mooseskin Johnny Eagle Peak Telkwa Ranges

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Rich in cultural values • Diverse eco-system • Mountainous terrain	

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Wildlife viewing • Lodging • Hut to hut • Winter activities • Partnerships	• Increased harvesting • Derogating culture as a result of resource development • Intrusion of culture

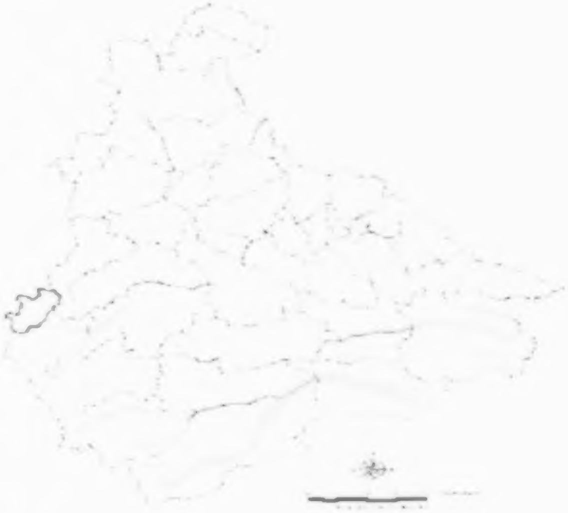
Sample Cultural/heritage features: Grizzly trails, mine sites, fishing camps, village site, gathering areas-medicinal plants, berries, campsites, trails.

Map reference: L9	**Clan: Laksiyu** **House territory name: Nilgi Cek**



Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Village of Houston Mount Harry Davis
Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Full service and amenities • Good access • Strong community support • Gateway to Morice River • Active Aboriginal community in town	• Densely populated areas for eco-tourism related products • Cultural and heritage sites have been developed by either residential, agricultural, or industrial development
Opportunities	**Threats**
• Gateway strategy	• Relocation of Government services offices
Sample cultural/heritage features: Reserve lands in town, cultural and historical sites	

Map reference: S2	Clan: Laksamishu House territory name: Lho Kwah



Contact	Sample Features
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Hope Peak Dogs Ear Peak Icy Pass Pat Peak Corona Peak

Strengths	Weaknesses
• Pristine Backcountry • Alpine • Low quality merchantable timber • Mountainous terrain • Rich cultural values	• Limited access • No infrastructure

Opportunities	Threats
• Lodging • Hut to hut • Wildlife viewing	• Industrial development

Sample cultural/heritage features: trails, strong historical significance to the Wet'suwet'en—war sites, hunting—goats, grizzly, camps.

Map reference: S3	**Clan: Laksamishyu** **Traditional Territory name: C'idi To Stan**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Telkwa mountains Grouse Mountain Farewell Lake Mcquarrie Lake Bulkley River

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Centrally located with reasonable to good access • Diverse eco-system • High cultural values • Part of a protected areas strategy	• Due to its location it is highly susceptible to resource use conflicts with other sectors

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Leverage Telkwa mountains • Bulkley River • Trail system	• Industrial forest development north of highway 16 • Beetle infestation

Sample Cultural/heritage features: village sites, campsites, hunting—goat, black bear, grizzly, deer, gathering—medicinal, berries, Fort St. James war/peace treaty site

Map reference: S4	**Clan: Laksamishyu** **Traditional territory name: Ggusgi Bewini**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Contact the Office of the Wet'suwet'en for details

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• High Cultural values • Pristine wilderness • Limited access	

Opportunities	**Threats**
Backcountry opportunities.	• Industrial development

Sample cultural/heritage features: common trails, hunting—bear, moose, caribou, fishing, winter camps, summer camps, settlements

Map reference: S5	**Clan: Laksamishyu** **Territory name: Misdzi Kwah**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Francois Lake Mount Parrott Colleymount

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Approx. 20% disturbance history • Approx. 10% planned harvest • Good access from Francois lake and through Huckleberry mine road • Active local community	• Increased resource use competition
Opportunities	**Threats**
• Leverage gateway strategy • Create infrastructure along François lake and use as staging area	• approximately 50% productive forests

Sample cultural/heritage features: Fishing-char, trout, Chinook, sockeye, hunting—deer, moose, elk, gathering-medicinal, food, village sites, common trails, secondary trails.

Map reference: T1	**Clan: Tsayu** **Territory name: Tlhdzi Wiyez Bin**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Burnie Lake Herd Dome Corona Peak Pilar Peak Howson Peak Tom George Lakes Shea Lake

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Pristine backcountry • Rich in cultural and heritage use • Diverse ecosystem • Approx. 10% planned harvest • Limited access	• Too far for surface travel—safety can be a concern

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Partnerships with Bear enterprises	• Increased harvesting

Sample of cultural/heritage features: hunting, trapping, fishing, winter camps, trails

Map reference: T2	**Clan: Tsayu** **House territory name: Dets'inegh**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Day Lake Elwin Lake Watson Lake

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Rich cultural values • Mid-country • Reasonably good access • Diverse ecosystem	• Resource use conflicts: Woodlots, agricultural use. • Approx. 50% past disturbance history

Opportunities	**Threats**
• Fishing • Winter activities • Trails • Ministry privatization	• Increased resource use conflicts

Sample of cultural/heritage features: small business, hunting-grizzly, black bear, deer, caribou, trapping, fishing-char, ling-cod, squaw fish, whitefish, chub, Chinook, sockeye, legends

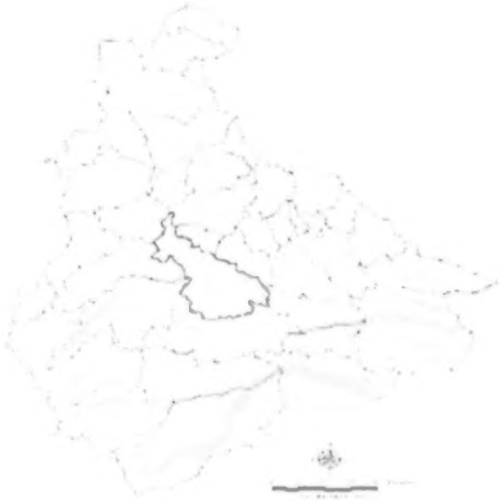
Map reference: W2	**Clan: Gitdumden** **House territory name: Lhudis Bin**

Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Morice Lake Ob Peak Snocap peak Redslide Mountain Table land mountain Stepp Lake Bill Nye Lake Pimpernel Mountain Nanika Mountain Morice River

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Rich in cultural and heritage resources • Diverse ecosystem • Established product	• Approx. 45% disturbance history within the last 20 years
Opportunities	**Threats**
• Build a product integrating Morice river and a new product/market strategy for McBride lake, Stepp lakes.	• Productive forests

Sample cultural/heritage features: village sites, meeting-gathering, food gathering—medicinal, berries, hunting—bear, goat, deer, marmot, trapping, legends, burial sites, main trails, secondary trails.

Map reference: W4	**Clan: Gitdumden** **House territory name: Biwini**



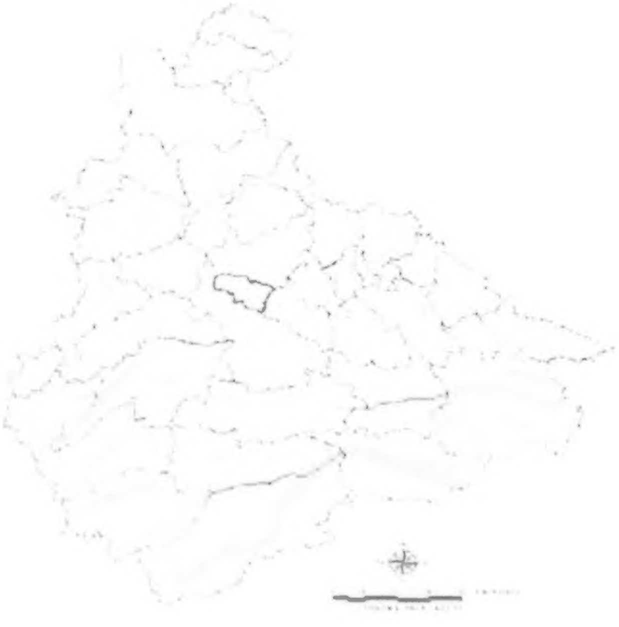
Contact	**Sample Features**
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Nadina Mountain Owen Lake/Creek Tsalit Mountain Houston Tommy Creek Mount Morice Parrot Lakes Pimpernel Mountain

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
• Rich in cultural and heritage sites • Diverse ecosystem • Good access • mid country	• Approx. 30% productive forest • 60% disturbance history

Opportunities	**Threats**
• build on cultural resources • ministry privatization	• increased resource use conflicts

Sample cultural/heritage features: legends, hunting-goat, deer, moose, bear, meeting gathering, food gathering-medicinal, berries, fishing-trout, char, cutthroat, ling-cod, steelhead, sockeye, Chinook, winter camps, village sites, pictographs

Map reference: W5	Clan: Gitdumden House territory: Bikh C'idilyiz Ts'anli



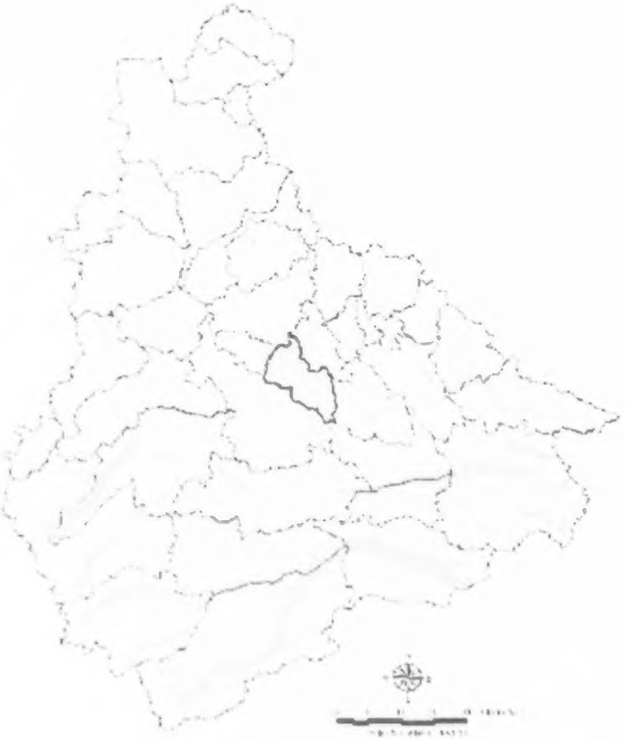
Contact	Sample Features
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Houston Tommy Creek Telkwa Mountain

Strengths	Weaknesses
• Rich cultural and heritage resources • Diverse ecosystem • Approx. 20% disturbance history • Falls	• access

Opportunities	Threats
• Partnership developments to create staging area product	• Resource development • Beetle infestation • Aggregate blocks • Agricultural development

Sample cultural/heritage features: legends-Kweese war, common trails, village site, winter camps, hunting—goat, grizzly, moose, deer, caribou, bear, meeting gathering sites, food gathering—medicinal, berries, fishing-salmon, trout

Map reference: W6	Territory name: **Contact Office of Wet'suwet'en**



Contact	Sample Features
The Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Lands and Resources department for further information: 847-3630	Morice Mountain Buck Flats Bob Creek

Strengths	Weaknesses
• Rich cultural and heritage resources	• Swiss Fire History

Opportunities	Threats
• Long-term planning	• increased resource conflicts

Sample cultural/heritage features: territorial boundaries, winter campsites, fishing-cutthroat trout, hunting—goat, grizzly, trapping, moose, deer, bear.

4.6.1 Wet'suwet'en First Nation Tourism Initiatives

By 1999, several economic, training and development programs had been initiated through the Wet'suwet'en Land and Resources Department. Throughout numerous consultation processes, the Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs have expressed a great deal of interest in seeking opportunities in one of Canada's fastest growing industries – Aboriginal Tourism[47].

In July 1999, the Office of the Wet'suwet'en contracted Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting[48] to conduct an inventory of Wet'suwet'en tourism potential and to review the actions required to establish a Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy.

As a result of this work, three (3) significant opportunities had been defined in order to implement a 'tourism strategy'. The projects have been engineered to capture the essence of all Wet'suwet'en interests, and to capitalize on all eight sectors of tourism[49]. Three selected projects – ***Wet'suwet'en Tourism Services, Trails*** and ***Morice River Rafting*** – have been selected to ensure that tourism development utilizes all Wet'suwet'en resources and will act as models for further tourism development. To follow is a brief discussion of these three selected tourism initiatives (Exhibit 12):

Photo credit: Frank McDonald

---

[47] Discussion in section 4.6.1 is cited from: Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy, Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting on behalf of the Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Smithers BC, November 1999.

[48] *Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting*, Site 26, Comp. 1, RR#1, Burns Lake, BC V0J 1E0

[49] As defined by the *Pacific Rim Institute of Tourism* as: accommodation, food & beverage, transportation, events and conferences, tourism services, attractions, travel trade and adventure tourism & recreation (*unfortunately, PRIT is no longer in service)

Exhibit 12: Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy – Product Development Initiatives

PROJECT COMPONENT	OVERVIEW
Wet'suwet'en Tourism Services (WTS)	▪ The WTS will be organized as a destination marketing organization or tourism bureau ▪ The WTS will support industry {tourism} development and will provide the infrastructure necessary to address the concerns of the Wet'suwet'en ▪ The WTS will be employed with a mandate to: o Address cultural and territorial protection with Government and industry; o Ensure authentic product development; o Support Wet'suwet'en community economic development; and o Maintain cultural preservation and enhancement through research and development
Trails	▪ The Wet'suwet'en territories are linked intricately by a vast network of historical trails ▪ The trails project will provide an infrastructure for development in all sectors of the tourism industry ▪ Two delivery methods are envisioned: o A detailed information booklet about indigenous culture, ecosystems, botanical, medicinal and geographic features o Through a series of experiences organized by the Wet'suwet'en ▪ The 'trails experience' envisioned includes: o A welcoming ceremony & feast o While on trail, visitors will learn about Wet'suwet'en culture from a knowledgeable Hereditary Chief o A variety of options will be provided. From "prepared comfort" to a rudimentary, survival-type experience where visitors learn how to live off the land in an indigenous manner and under the auspices of an experienced Wet'suwet'en outdoor-person ▪ Two trails are presently under construction: o The Maxan Trail (located in the Lakes Forest District), and o The Cronin Trail located north of Moricetown ▪ There are concerns regarding the potential for recreation and tourist use of trails conflicting with traditional use
Morice River Rafting	▪ This rafting product will start at Morice Lake (Morice Forest District) and will journey for 12 days through Wet'suwet'en and Gitxsan territories ▪ Product is targeted to integrate with Anthropology 112 (through Northwest Community College {NWCC}) and will allow the visitors/clients to experience Wet'suwet'en culture, heritage sites, etc. ▪ Resource instructors from NWCC will teach the curriculum of Anthropology while Wet'suwet'en will provide the value-added experience & knowledge ▪ Day trips along historical trails will provide extra activities

4.7 Conclusions

There is tremendous opportunity to continue in developing these rich resources. Working with First Nations will provide an enhanced approach to developing marketable products to global economies. This approach will ensure economies of scale are achieved as well as achieving best practices in tourism development.

There are significant raw and undeveloped natural and cultural resources available to support cultural and heritage tourism initiatives. While heritage sites serve as a means for connecting with the culture, continued cultural practices flourish and provide a means for the local first nations to continue using their traditional territories for cultural purposes. In short, both heritage and culture are protected by means of the Canadian Constitution and the Heritage Act. The fluid nature of the culture requires investors to consult with Aboriginal groups prior to developing traditional territories.

4.8 Recommendations

The identified clusters provide a suitable for eco-tourism development. While most other territories have significant cultural and heritage sites, the identified regions effectively fit an eco-tourism development strategy that integrates eco-tourism and cultural / heritage, education and market opportunities.

The house territory, C'inggit Nenikekh is rich and abundant in resources and provides an opportunity to develop infrastructure for tourism development. Serving both as a social development tool, this area can build suitable opportunities for tourism development. A destination back-country Lodge along with Huts in Lho Kwah and Lhudis Bin, could serve as an ideal eco-tourism product rich with cultural and heritage resources and natural attractions. Infrastructure development is key to this region of the forest district. Partnerships are encouraged with other interest stakeholders.

Biwini and Tac'its'olh'en serves as a gateway to the Morice backcountry. This mid-country region is rich in cultural and heritage values as well. A mid-country lodge with huts in strategic areas could provide a unique mix of both cultural/heritage and eco-tourism adventures.

TseZul: serves as a destination with access from the Lakes. The Maxan trail provides an attraction cluster and requires a staging area/gateway strategy. Together, this area can be packaged with the development of Misdzi kwah, and Dets'inegh.

C'idi To Stan serves as the staging area for the development of Ggusgi Bewani and NelgiT'at. Lodging, common trails and huts could provide the infrastructure to capitalize on the rich and abundance cultural and heritage resources. In addition to the economic potential, social development strategies will serve the needs of all communities.

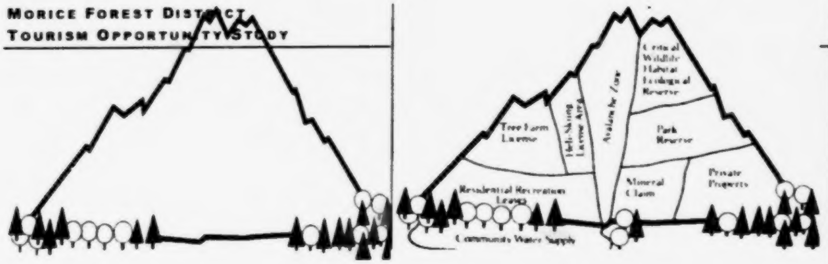
Partnership opportunities exist for the tourism sector, governments, the regional district, and municipalities to work with First Nations in the creation of product development strategies, along with the creation subsequent effective marketing strategies that is representative of the region and their relative communities.

Local First Nations values form a part of developments in the area – with the exception of a totem pole at the Smithers high school, Telkwa Barbeque grounds, and few artworks. To accurately gain representation, planning by government agencies and industry stakeholders should ensure that the values of Aboriginal communities are reflected in the architecture of the region and are core to regional development initiatives. In the long run, a comprehensive product could be created to showcase and promote a region that respects Aboriginal values.

First Nations capacity building will be required for all interests entering and investing in the local area. This will ensure Aboriginal values are respected, and the surrounding community's interests are addressed. In the long-run, this will benefit the local community by keeping interests local and will reduce the effects of loosing the local industry when investors, at times, 'leave town' when their return is maximized.

Consultation is the foundation for building the core values of any business/industry development initiative within the traditional territories of Aboriginal People. Consulting with first nations groups, and promoting and supporting participation throughout the management process, and the life of the corporation, will ensure the needs of all stakeholders are met. Governments and industry must work with Aboriginal groups in creating a process that is effective and ensures long-term growth and development of lands, resources, and a sustainable, diverse economy.

Wet'suwet'en Culture Camp



Chapter
5

5 Land Use Planning and Resource Management in the Study Area

In June 2001, the provincial government announced a significant reorganization of government ministries. The Ministry of Small Business, Tourism & Culture (MSBTC) was eliminated with the ministries' major tourism functions being transferred into two new Ministries – the Ministry of Competition, Science & Enterprise and the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management.

The new **Ministry of Competition, Science and Enterprise** (MCSE) is the primary ministry responsible for tourism development, led by Minister Rick Thorpe and Deputy Minister Donald Leitch. MCSE is responsible for Tourism BC, PavCo, and the Vancouver Trade and Convention Centre. MCSE *"brings together government programs dedicated to building a more competitive business climate, particularly in the key industries of technology, science and tourism."* MCSE will be primarily responsible for the development of government policies regarding general tourism sector development and management.

The new **Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management** (MSRM), led by Minister Stan Hagen and Deputy Minister Jon O'Riordan, is responsible for leading all strategic land, water and resource allocation planning (including tourism land use) as well consolidating all land and water tenures in the province. In creating MSRM, the government consolidated the strategic land and resource planning functions and personnel of the various resource ministries (including former MSBTC tourism land use planners) into one ministry. A key priority of MSRM is to provide faster approvals and greater access to Crown land and resources to protect and create jobs in forestry, tourism, mining, farming, ranging and oil & gas production.

5.1 Land Use Planning and Tourism

Historically, tourism planning in BC has occurred at the senior government and the local government levels. Senior governments have been involved primarily with issues concerning research, marketing, human resources and, to a lesser extent, capital. For the provincial government, marketing has been the primary tool for assisting tourism development in the province. Local governments and communities have worked with the tourism sector mostly through the provision of municipal services and infrastructure, but over the last 10 years there has been increasing use of economic development and tourism development planning to stimulate activity and expand the taxation base. Amongst these efforts to promote tourism, there have been some obvious development gaps which have come to light in recent years – as the tourism industry and the markets it serves mature and become increasingly more sophisticated.

Some of the more significant gaps relate specifically to tourism's role in the Crown land use planning process and Crown land management regime. Historically, that role has been extremely limited, confined mostly to tenure issuance for consumptive activities such as fishing and hunting (i.e. guide outfitting). As the ownership and administration of Crown lands in Canada is mostly controlled by the provinces, provincial land managers effectively decide who uses Crown land and resources and for what purpose.[50] In BC, there is a variety of legislation governing land use, but the *Forest Act*, *Land Act*, *Mineral Tenure Act* and *Range Act* cover the vast majority of activity. Controlling ministries include the Ministry of Forests, Land and Water BC (LWBC) and the Ministry of Water, Land & Air Protection (formerly the Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks). Tourism interests are not represented in any of the above acts and none of the above ministries have tourism mandates. Multiple-use concepts have been articulated within strategic level language but not embodied in actual land management practices. The former Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture had no control over Crown land use and they have not historically maintained any tourism offices outside of Vancouver and Victoria. The result of the above factors is an absence of tourism representation within both the land use planning process and land management practice[51].

Tourism development in BC is expanding at rates well beyond overall economic growth rates. An increasing part of the industry is oriented to outdoor recreation products that rely in large part on access to the Crown land and resource base. The importance of Crown land to tourism industry development is seen in literature produced by the Council of Tourism Associations of British Columbia (COTA). At the annual BC Tourism Industry Conference held in February 2000, the industry ranked land use and marketing as the two top issues of concern for tourism in the province. Land use planning that values tourism interests, involvement of tourism interests in land use decisions, the availability of Crown land for purchase and tenure and relations between tourism and the forest industry were some of the issues considered important in COTA's most recent membership survey.[52]

Some progress has been made in recent years to improve tourism representation in the land use decision-making process. The Land and Resource Management Planning (LRMP) process has at least created a forum for discussing multiple use and sustainability concepts and tourism's possible role. The Tourism Opportunity Strategy (TOS) is a further step to sound land use because they profile the current status of local tourism development, provide detailed information required for sub-regional or community level planning, and can be used to identify, develop and promote appropriate, sustainable tourism development opportunities.

5.2 Ecotourism and Adventure Travel Strategy for British Columbia

Ecotourism and adventure travel (including cultural & heritage tourism) is one of the fastest growing sectors of BC's tourism industry. An expanding market of knowledgeable travellers is looking for spectacular settings and challenging activities. This strategy lays out a role for the Province, in fostering growth in the ecotourism and adventure travel sector while ensuring benefit to communities and resources that the industry depends on. Canada still accounts for only a fraction of the North American ecotourism and adventure travel market. Despite the recent growth in ecotourism and adventure travel in British Columbia, there is considerable room for additional growth.

---

[50] The federal government exercises some control in the areas of environmental impacts, fisheries, migratory species, navigation and shipping, and transboundary movement of resource products. The British North America Act vested the ownership of natural resources with the provinces

[51] Tourism land use planning resources have been moved to the new Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management

[52] TREK International Inc., 2000, COTA Membership Survey Results: Land Use Issues October/November 2000, Council of Tourism Associations of BC.

Entrepreneurs and communities play a leading role in expanding the ecotourism and adventure travel industry. Government, however, has a unique and important role in fostering this growth. This role includes: strategic investments to create new opportunities; promotion of high standards of quality practice; and establishment of regulatory and tax regimes that maintain the vigour of the industry.

Ecotourism and adventure travel can make a positive contribution to community economic development and diversification. But care needs to be taken that growth in this sector does not harm host communities or the resource base.

The ecotourism and adventure travel industry is dynamic and innovative; products evolve continuously in response to a demanding and competitive market. This situation challenges Government to develop regulations that protect sensitive resources without unnecessarily impeding the industry. Wherever possible, regulation and resource protection should be developed and implemented cooperatively by industry, Government, and host communities. Industry-led codes of practice, community involvement, and local recreation planning can help to maximize benefits to each sector.

Ecotourism and adventure travel products are closely linked to other tourism sectors. This sector addresses the core of British Columbia's "Super, Natural" image. Many of the images and stories that promote tourism in British Columbia refer to ecotourism and suggest that visitors who do not participate in ecotourism and adventure travel often vicariously share these experiences.

5.3 Tourism and Crown-Land Management

Several ministries and agencies of the Provincial Government of British Columbia that focus on resource management play a major to minor role in tourism[53]. Understanding of their mandates and the nature and extent of their roles in tourism, particularly as they relate to the pursuit of tourism opportunities in the study area, will assist in assigning responsibilities to the required actions to pursue the short listed opportunities in the tourism action plan at the end of this document. To that end, summarized below are their respective mandates and roles in planning, reviewing, approving and/or regulating backcountry and commercial recreation, including tourism.

5.3.1 Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management

The new Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management (MSRM), is responsible for leading all strategic level land & water planning as well as all resource allocation planning in the province. Therefore MSRM is responsible for the completion of larger-scale strategic land, water and resource plans (e.g. Land & Resource Management Plans); as well as leading the development of smaller-scale strategic landscape level planning to implement completed CORE Plans and LRMPs.

---

[53] This governance structure in BC has recently undergone a complete reorganization due to a new Liberal government succeeding to power. Line agency mandates and responsibilities have changed significantly and the reader is advised to check with their local Government Agent's office for new mandates and responsibilities.

In creating MSRM, the government consolidated the strategic land and resource planning functions and personnel of various resource ministries (including former MSBTC tourism land use planners) into one ministry. A key priority of MSRM is to provide faster approvals and greater access to Crown land and resources to protect and create jobs in forestry, tourism, mining, farming, ranging and oil & gas production.

Therefore it is anticipated that MSRM will play a role in ensuring that strategic level plans recognize the land and resource issues of the tourism sector; and that the tourism sector has access to the crown land and resources necessary for sector expansion. The actual tenuring and management of crown land and resources for tourism and commercial recreation remains with BC Assets and Lands Corporation.

5.3.2 Land and Water British Columbia Inc.

Land and Water BC (LWBC) is a specialized agency of the provincial government that reports to the Minister of Sustainable Resource Management. Its mandate is to make Crown land and assets available for environmentally responsible economic growth and public benefit. It does this through responsible development, marketing and leasing of Crown land for residential, commercial, industrial, agricultural and recreational use. Commercial recreation is recognized by LWBC as important to economic diversification and rural development across British Columbia. With 92% of land in the province held by the Crown, LWBC's responsibility is significant.

Since October 1998, LWBC has been the provincial agency charged with the responsibility of managing commercial recreation on Crown Lands. LWBC's aim is to proactively manage commercial recreation activities and development opportunities. In addition to higher-level policies, LWBC has a *Commercial Recreation on Crown Land Policy* (approved and implemented May 1998) to guide management of commercial recreation activities. The goal of this policy is to maintain "an environment that is naturally diverse and healthy, and enriches peoples lives."

Strategic principles guiding LWBC's Commercial Recreation Policy are as follows:

Relationship with First Nations – Provide economic development opportunities for First Nations, and consult with First Nations on commercial recreation proposals, consistent with provincial and ministry guidelines with respect to aboriginal rights and title.

Environmental Stewardship – Protect and maintain environmental integrity, using land and resources within their capacity to sustain use, and maintain biological diversity.

Public Access and Use – Maintain public access to enter and traverse Crown land as a primary consideration in evaluating proposals for commercial recreation. As a general guide, legitimate reasons to manage public access may include the potential for conflict, environmental, and public safety concerns. An additional principle is to provide a balanced mix of recreational experiences, both commercial and non-commercial in nature.

Business Certainty – Ensure that new commercial recreation applications are compatible with the operational needs of existing commercial recreation businesses.

Economic Diversification – Provide for an environmentally sustainable, responsive and vibrant commercial recreation industry. Ensure that commercial recreation operations are considered as integral parts of diversification strategies for communities and regions in transition.

Public Consultation – Involve other interests through a fair, open and consultative process which takes into account locally-established priorities, and public interests, while not fettering the Minister's ultimate decision-making authority.

Inter-agency Co-ordination – Manage Crown lands in an integrated, co-operative and open manner, with involvement from provincial government agencies, local governments, First Nations and the public. Where they exist, use agreements between agencies to develop government responses to commercial recreation proposals. In addition, consider all government commitments for resource use during the review of commercial recreation proposals.

Land Use Planning – Ensure that land allocation decisions are consistent with approved local, regional and provincial land use plans, including strategic plans such as Land and Resource Management Plans, Local Resource Use Plans and local government plans, with special consideration to commercial recreation values identified in these plans.

The Province's Commercial Recreation Policy applies to all forms of outdoor recreation activities authorized by LWBC to be carried out on provincial Crown land on a fee-for-service basis (some exceptions do apply). Such activities include commercial/mechanized ski guiding, commercial hunting and fishing and other commercial recreation activities requiring physical improvements. The policy does not pertain to incidental commercial use of Crown land; commercial recreation activities undertaken within a provincial park, recreation area or protected area (this requires permits through BC Parks) or commercial alpine developments (subject to the Commercial Alpine Ski Policy). Protocols are in place between LWBC, the Ministry of Forests and the Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks with respect to the approval and adjudication of commercial recreation use proposals for Crown land or activities crossing park or recreation area boundaries into crown land. Public recreation uses of a non-commercial nature proposed for provincial forests are approved by the Ministry of Forests.

The Land Act requires all businesses using Crown Land to be licensed. LWBC must provide commercial recreation operators with permits that give them clearly defined rights to use Crown Land, thereby giving local industry a greater degree of certainty. The licenses, permits and leases granted reflect the classification of the commercial recreation activity: short term investigative uses require investigative use permits, short term low impact uses require temporary permits, long term uses of extensive areas require licenses of occupation, and long term site specific uses require leases. Sets out in the policy document for each of the classified activities are the rights granted, applicability, term, pricing structure, client requirements and responsibilities.

At the same time, tenuring and management of Crown land for commercial recreation must be consistent with approved local, regional and provincial land use plans and recreation management plans.

LWBC's approval process allows time for each application to be reviewed by provincial ministries such as the Ministry of Forests and the Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection. Local interest groups also provide feedback before LWBC makes a decision. LWBC understands that working co-operatively with other agencies and community groups will help to speed up the referral input and overall application procedure.

5.3.3 Ministry of Water, Land & Air Protection

The Ministry of Water, Land & Air Protection (MWLAP – formerly MELP) has responsibility across British Columbia for the management, protection and enhancement of the province's environment, including its wildlife, water, land and air resources, its Crown land and its provincial parks, recreation areas and ecological reserves.

BC Parks is the agency responsible under the Ministry for the management of all matters concerning the park system, including maintenance of the provincial park system's campground and trail infrastructure and determining and overseeing appropriate commercial recreation tourism activities in the parks. The purpose of commercial recreation services within parks is to provide park visitors with an opportunity to appreciate the natural and cultural heritage of BC Parks. Appropriate commercially delivered recreation services widen the range of opportunities available to all park visitors. The preservation of park heritage values takes precedence over the provision of recreational opportunities. All services provided by the private sector within a provincial park must be consistent with the approved objectives of that park.

An appropriate commercial opportunity is one which has traditionally been conducted in the park system and/or is deemed compatible with BC Park's values. It allows a park visitor to appreciate the attributes and features of a park in a manner approved by the park management plan and/or park objectives. The opportunity and how it is provided must not conflict with the stewardship mandate of BC Parks, and should take into consideration potential impacts on the park environment and other park visitors. If an opportunity new to the park area is being considered, management may test the appropriateness, the public perception to, and the environmental impact of a service prior to decision of whether or not to issue a proposal package for the opportunity.

When the private sector is invited to provide services to the public in provincial parks, it must result in the maintenance or enhancement of recreational opportunities. Such invitations will be given appropriate public visibility. Exclusive commercial recreation opportunities will be competed for, usually through a proposal call process.

Park management may respond to unsolicited proposals for the commercial delivery of a recreational opportunity by determining, with solicited input where needed, the appropriateness of the proposed recreation opportunity and the commercial delivery of it. The decision will take into account the type of activity, size of operation, anticipated impacts, the existence of previous requests from other proponents, the existence of competing businesses both within and outside of the park offering similar services, and directions provided through a management plan.

In recognition of the actual and potential impact of park based commercial recreation operations on other agencies and/or interests outside, BC Parks will cooperate with BC Assets and Lands Corporation, National Parks, Provincial Governments, First Nations, various interest groups, corporations, agencies and individuals to achieve park objectives.

Many of the protected areas are available, in principle and where appropriate, for commercial tourism and recreation. These development opportunities will be developed during area-specific management planning, which will also recognize the protection of the special natural values of each area and the provision for public non-commercial recreation.

5.3.4 Ministry of Forests

The mandate of the Ministry of Forests (MoF) is to plan and manage the timber resource to ensure economic and social benefits for the province, immediate to long term. This includes managing, protecting and conserving the forest resources and their recreation values. The recreation program of the Ministry of Forests has a two-fold mission: to provide the opportunity for recreation experiences and benefits by protecting the recreation resource, and to manage the use of the recreation resource. This mission extends to the Crown lands of the province outside parks and settled areas.

This mission is carried out within the context of the Ministry's overall integrated resource management mandate and in cooperation with the recreation programs of other government agencies, public groups and the private sector. The Provincial Forest recreation resource encompasses the full spectrum of recreation values and opportunities, including scenic landscapes, wilderness, cultural and heritage landmarks, and developed recreation facilities.

The Ministry's Recreation Program's goals are threefold. First, to identify, protect and manage the Provincial Forest recreation resource by:

- maintaining an inventory of the recreation resource
- assessing the use, demand and value of forest recreation
- ensuring that recreation (including landscape and wilderness) values are considered in resource management decisions
- Second, to manage the public's use of the Provincial Forest recreation resource by:
- developing and maintaining a network of recreation sites and trails
- educating and informing the public about recreation opportunities and the impact of recreation use on other forest resources
- enforcing recreation management policy and procedures

Third, to retain or enhance forest landscape values in keeping with the concepts and principles of integrated resource management by:

- identifying, classifying and recording visual resources and values
- identifying desirable or acceptable levels of landscape alteration
- establishing visual quality objectives for managing visual resources and values
- developing design solutions for meeting visual quality objectives

In terms of Land Use Planning, Ministry of Forests staff are actively involved in the land use studies and plans being prepared within the Morice Forest District. Regional staff are members of the Inter-Agency Planning Team for the Sub-Regional Planning processes, and district staff are key members.

5.3.5 BC Fisheries

BC Fisheries, in the Ministry of Agriculture, Food and Fisheries, has direct responsibility for the management of the freshwater recreation fisheries, aquaculture activities, marine plant harvesting and for the regulation, sale, inspection and processing of fish. The province also exercises delegated authority under the federal Fisheries Act for the management of the non-salmon freshwater fisheries and wild oyster harvest. The goal of the provincial Fisheries program is to conserve the natural diversity of fish and fish habitat and to sustainably manage freshwater sport fishing in BC.

5.3.6 Tourism British Columbia

The mandate of Tourism BC, an independent Crown corporation, has three dimensions: to promote development and growth of the tourism industry, to increase and distribute revenues and employment across the province and to increase the economic benefits of this industry to all residents of British Columbia. It pursues this mandate along several streams – marketing and sales, visitor information services, accommodation services and standards, education and training, research, and business development. Tourism BC has offices in Victoria and Vancouver. It works in partnership with the Northern British Columbia Tourism Association and the regional Visitor InfoCentres.

5.3.7 British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office

Subject to legislation, the Environmental Assessment Office (EAO) is the provincial agency responsible for coordinating assessment of the impacts of major development proposals in the province. Sectors for which it undertakes such assessments are broad and include tourism. The purpose of the review process is to identify any foreseeable adverse short or long term impacts of a development proposal from environmental, economic, social, cultural, heritage and health perspectives; to then determine ways to eliminate, minimize or mitigate them; and to then make recommendations to grant or refuse a project approval certificate. The Minister of the Environment, Lands and Parks and a second appropriate minister, then makes consideration of and decision on the recommendations.

5.4 Land Use Planning In The Morice Forest District

Since the 1980s, most strategic planning for land and resource use in the Morice area has been for forest management purposes. For instance, the Ministry of Forests has initiated a number of small local multi-stakeholder planning processes (e.g. the Morice River LRUP and Nadina LRUP). Over the last decade, the Ministry of Forests has made numerous efforts to initiate strategic planning at the sub-regional (LRMP) and landscape scales. For various reasons, these planning efforts have not either not proceeded or have not been carried through to completion[54].

In the late 1990's, an Innovative Forest Practices Agreement (IFPA) was signed between the province (MOF) and the local forest licensees. The objective of this program was to attain sustainable forest management planning with significantly high levels of input from the public and non-forest sectors. In 2001 the province agreed to carry out a LRMP based on a partnership with the IFPA, which would result in efficiencies in both time and resources. The LRMP is expected to commence in the fall of 2002 and to be completed in the spring of 2004.

---

[54] Ibid No.8

In the past several years, two non-MOF initiated planning led forums have been launched: the Upper Bulkley River Round Table and the Bulkley River Angling Use Plan.

5.4.1 Strategic Planning

The Morice TSA Report in 1981 summarized timber and other resource values in the timber supply area, leading to an AAC determination of 2,000,000 m3/yr. Internal reviews in 1986 and 1987 maintained that level of harvest. The 1981 AAC determination remained in effect until 1996, when a timber supply review was undertaken, with opportunities for public review and comment.

In 1991, the Morice Forest District initiated a process for greater public input into forest management, producing an Options Report to enlist public feedback on resource issues and management options for the district. The feedback from the public was evenly split between conservation and timber interests, leading to a decision by the district to manage to a middle ground option until such time as an LRMP was completed.

In 1993, the district developed guidelines for an Integrated Resource Management (IRM) Plan for provincial forest lands. The primary purpose of the IRM plan was to guide forest management by establishing resource management objectives that considered all resource values. IRM plans were intended to provide a framework for an eventual LRMP process. The IRM planning process was rolled into the Landscape Unit Planning process, which has been put on hold while provincial policy is clarified.

At the time of the IRM planning, the district was close enough to initiating an LRMP process that brochures were being prepared and a forest district advisory committee established. The process was cancelled due to other provincial priorities for planning. The forest district has been gathering inventories since then in preparation for an LRMP.

5.4.2 Local Level Planning

In 1992, the Morice River Local Resource Use Plan was developed with full participation of interest groups and stakeholders. The LRUP contains management guidelines to address a variety of resource values along the river.

The 1993 Nadina LRUP provides management guidelines for sub-basins that comprise the Nadina watershed. Based on information from the LRUP process, a Nadina River Interior Watershed Assessment Procedure was undertaken in 1998 and a Round Table formed to provide recommendations on the outcome.

Concerns expressed by the Lakes District Friends of the Environment led to public workshops to provide input into forest management in the Whitesail in 1992. Input from these workshops led to the development of the Whitesail Integrated Resource Management Unit Plan in 1994. The Morice Forest District used the information in the Whitesail IRM Unit Plan to develop a landscape unit plan for the area in 1996 as part of a provincial pilot in landscape unit planning. The Whitesail Landscape Unit Plan is not yet completed.

In 1996, the Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks initiated an angling use planning process for the Bulkley River. Twelve people, including anglers, guides, local business people and the Chamber of Commerce comprised the planning committee. The angling use plan was approved in 1998.

The Upper Bulkley River Round Table is a grass-roots planning table initiated in 1997. The basic goal of the round table is to improve the health of the Upper Bulkley watershed through planning, education and action. The round table is administered by the Community Futures Development Corporation of Nadina.

6 Tourism Resources of the Morice Forest District & Wet'suwet'en Area of Interest

6.1 Study Area and Features

The Morice Forest District and the Wet'suwet'en Area of Interest are well suited for water and mountain based activities. The presence of rolling alpine, jagged peaks, rock bluffs, white and flat water rivers, and lakes all benefit the opportunities for summer based activities. In sections of the study area, superior snow quality and depth offer tremendous winter opportunities (primarily associated with snowmobiling). Wildlife and sports fish compliment the features.

It is an abundant land and humans have presided here for over 10,000 years. Over the course of time, a rich culture full of art, stories, knowledge and trade flourished. Wars were fought and alliances made. The historical presence of the First Nations can still be felt and seen among the people who reside here. Over time, the land attracted people from distant countries. The historical presence may be seen in a number of structures although the vast majority being constructed of wood have been reclaimed by the land. Today there are more recent totems and structures as well as remaining vestiges. The visitor is left to imagine human settlement and activity in this land. An overview map showing existing tourism features and facilities is shown in Exhibit 13.

6.2 Resource Area Description

6.2.1 Unit Descriptions

In the Morice and Wet'suwet'en Study Area, the geography and accessibility provides allowed the Study Area to be divided into 4 distinct recreation resource areas or units:

- ***Unit A*** – Forested hills and lakes north of Babine Lake .
- ***Unit B*** – Babine Lake
- ***Unit C*** – Mid-country Hills & Lakes: consisting of rounded mountains and small to very large lakes.
- ***Unit D*** –Front country and rural landscapes
- ***Unit E*** – Southwest Ranges and Lakes: The southern section which straddles the Coastal Mountains and contains lakes framed by steep rock and forested slopes.

6.2.2 Area Polygons of High Tourism and Recreation Potential

The Study Area has been further analysed to determine the features and areas with the greatest recreation significance. Recreation activities generally take place in lakes, rivers and high elevation alpine and sub alpine, and utilize existing trails and routes. Unique, complimentary and specific features include waterfalls, water circuits and lake chains, island archipelagos, rich fishing grounds, wildlife, climbing rocks, road circuits, among others. These recreation features were identified and polygons were drawn on a map around the features, sometimes singly or grouped. A unique identifier, a number, was assigned to each of these *recreation feature polygons*.

The following table (Exhibit 14) provides a description of the identified recreation feature polygons and the corresponding recreation resource units. Each of the descriptions include:

- *Unique Identifier* - a letter and number combination provide a unique identification for each of the polygons. The letter links each polygon to the unit it is located within. The following number provide each polygon with unique identifier (example A1)
- *General Description* - provides a geographic and landscape description of each of the polygons.
- *Outstanding Features* - the high value recreation resources that are found within the polygons are then identified,
- *Associated Products and activities* - lists the type of activities that are most conducive to the area
- *Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints* - identifies the development considerations in undertaking a pursuit of recreation opportunities and addresses the general constraints.

The chapter on *Tourism Opportunity Analysis* provides a more detailed analysis of the polygons as they apply to the products chosen – having the greatest potential in the Study Area.

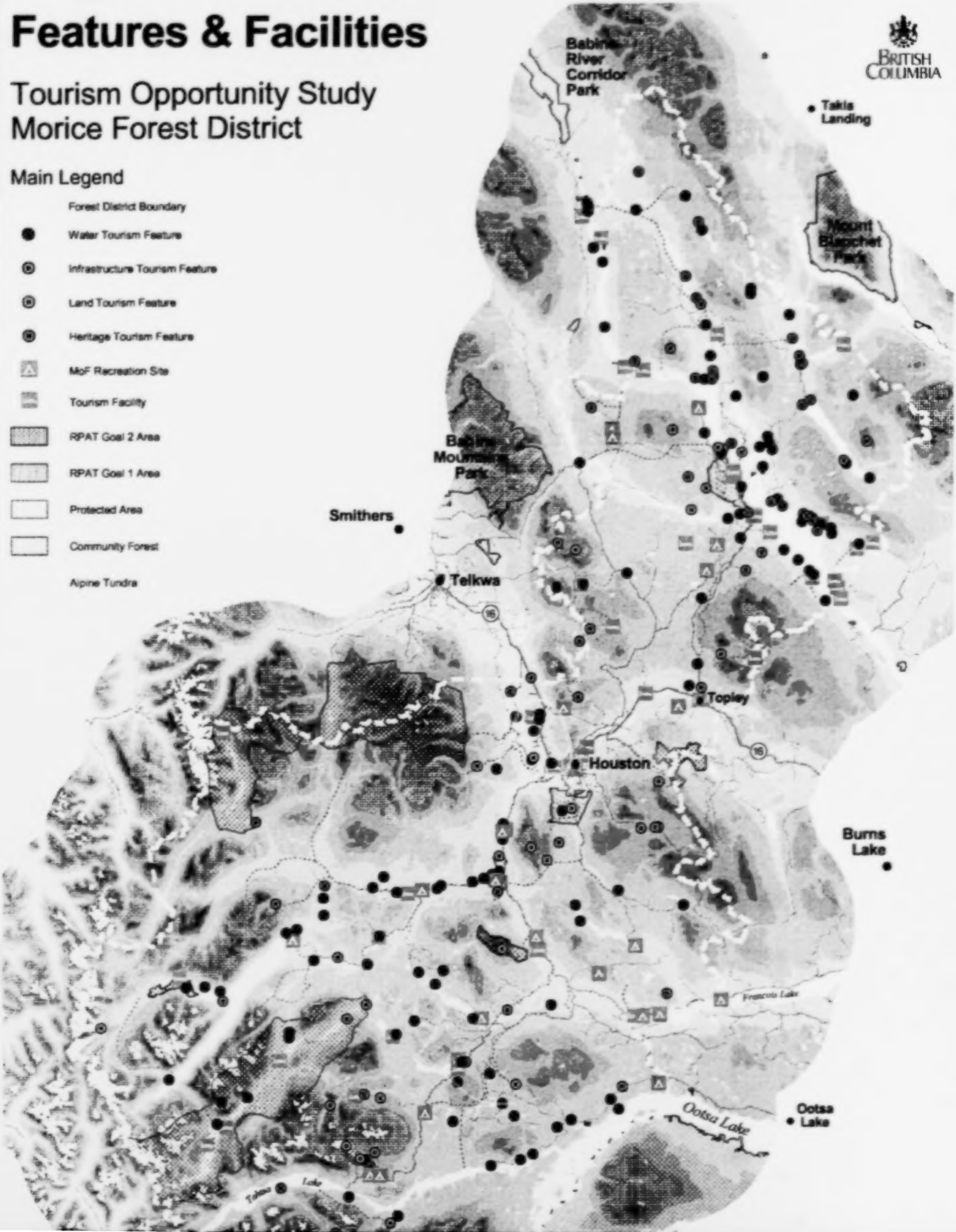
Features & Facilities

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

Main Legend

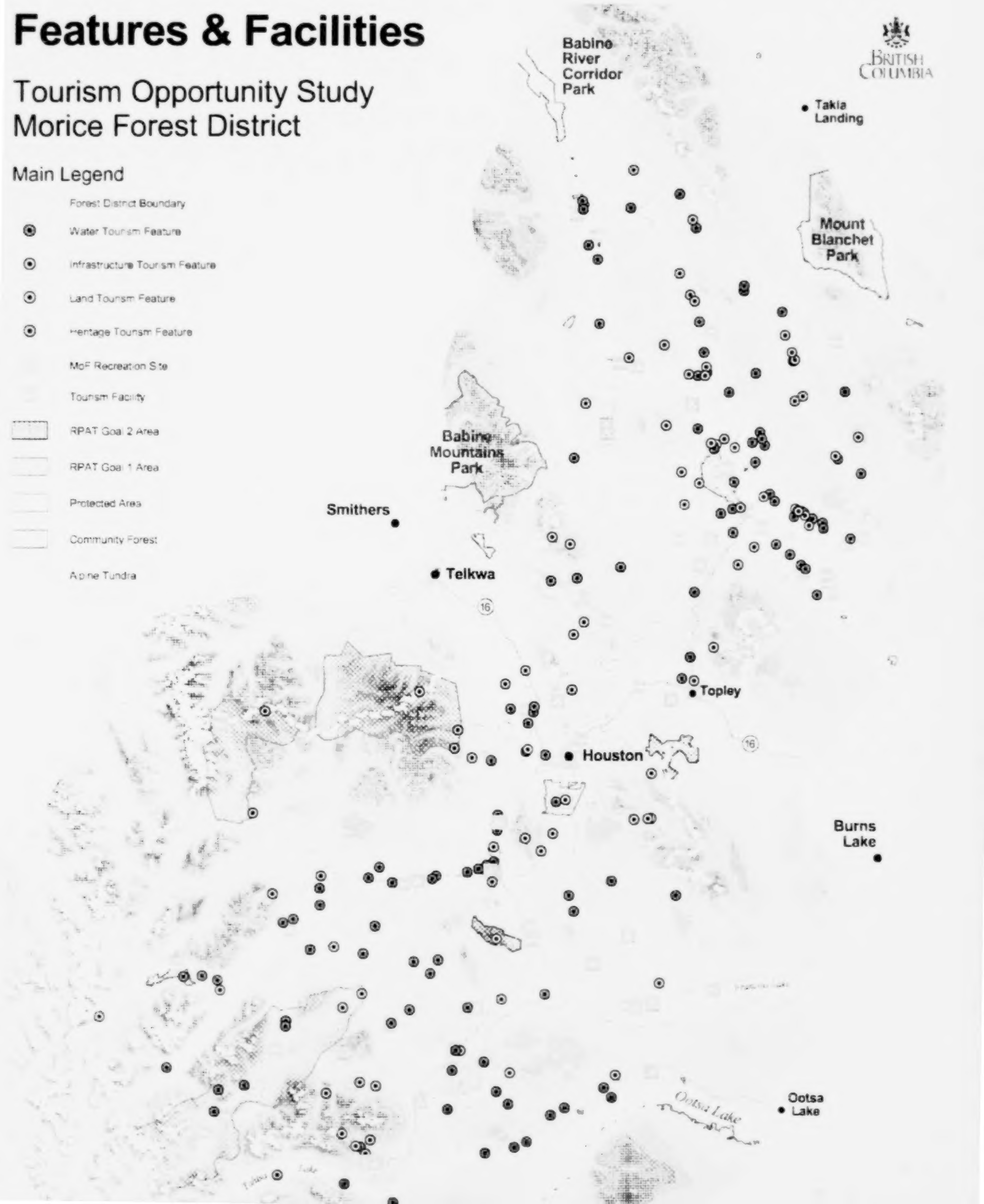
Forest District Boundary
- ● Water Tourism Feature
- ⊙ Infrastructure Tourism Feature
- ⊙ Land Tourism Feature
- ⊙ Heritage Tourism Feature
- △ MoF Recreation Site
- ▭ Tourism Facility
- ▨ RPAT Goal 2 Area
- ▨ RPAT Goal 1 Area
- ☐ Protected Area
- ☐ Community Forest

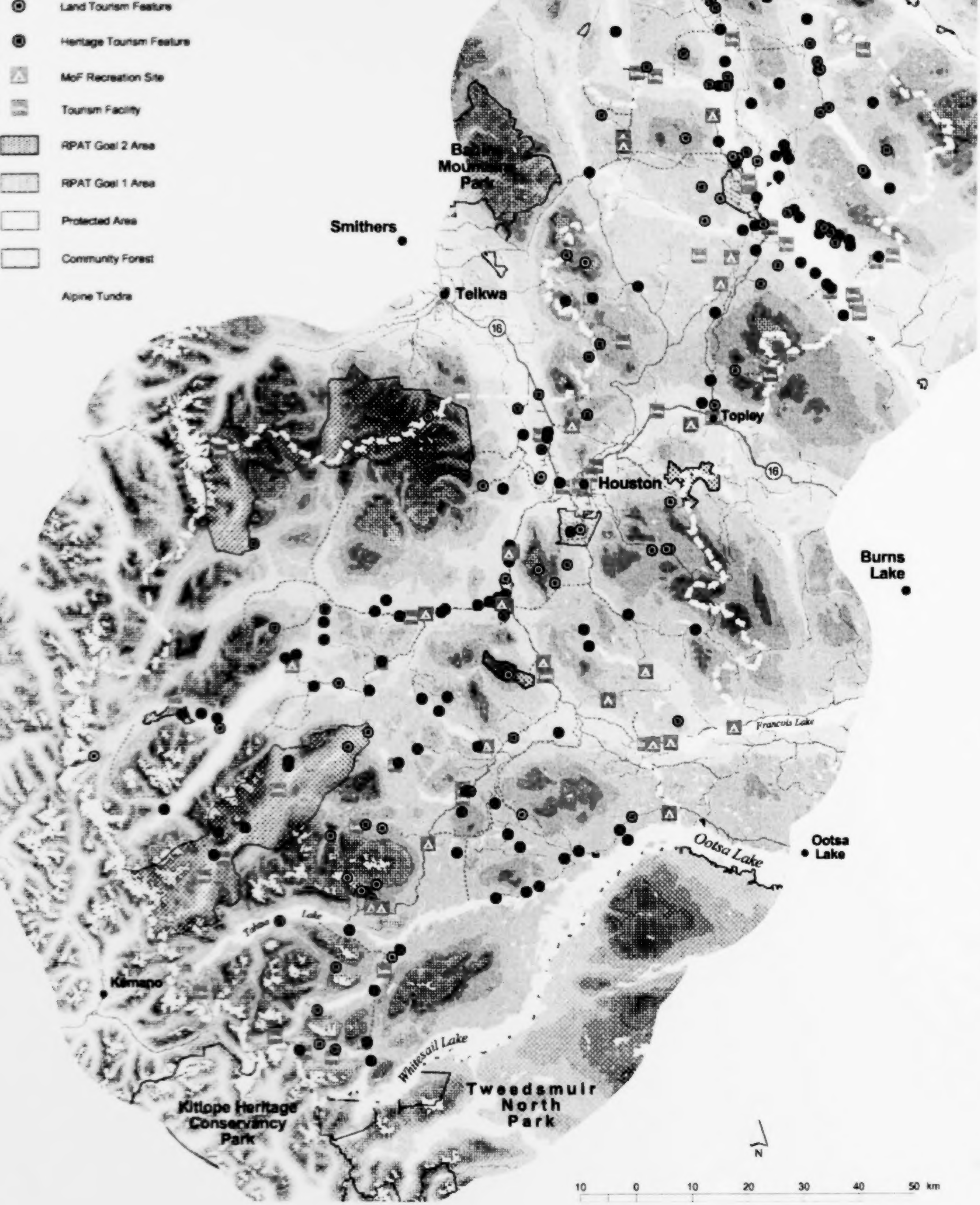
Alpine Tundra


BRITISH COLUMBIA
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Mount Blanchet Park
Babine Mountains Park
Smithers
Telkwa
16
Topley
16
Houston
Burns Lake
Francois Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Tahtsa Lake

Features & Facilities

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District


Main Legend
Forest District Boundary
Water Tourism Feature
Infrastructure Tourism Feature
Land Tourism Feature
Heritage Tourism Feature
MoF Recreation Site
Tourism Facility
RPAT Goal 2 Area
RPAT Goal 1 Area
Protected Area
Community Forest
Alpine Tundra
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Mount Blanchet Park
Babine Mountains Park
Smithers
Telkwa
16
Topley
Houston
16
Burns Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake


Land Tourism Feature
Heritage Tourism Feature
MoF Recreation Site
Tourism Facility
RPAT Goal 2 Area
RPAT Goal 1 Area
Protected Area
Community Forest
Alpine Tundra
Ba
Mou
Park
Smithers
Telkwa
16
Topley
16
Houston
Burns Lake
Francois Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Tahtsa Lake
Kemano
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10 0 10 20 30 40 50 km

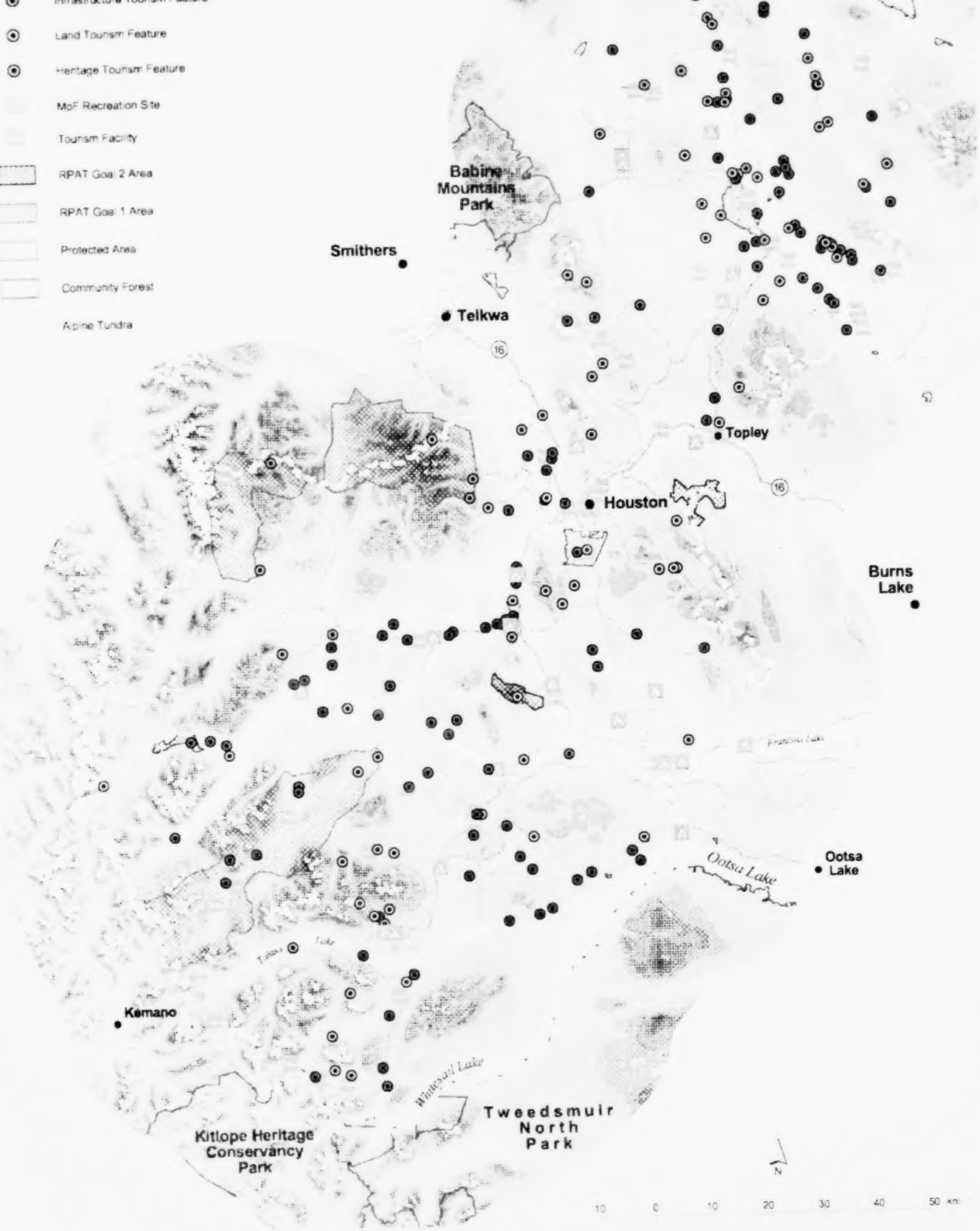

Infrastructure Tourism Feature
Land Tourism Feature
Heritage Tourism Feature
MoF Recreation Site
Tourism Facility
RPAT Goal 2 Area
RPAT Goal 1 Area
Protected Area
Community Forest
Alpine Tundra
Babine Mountains Park
Smithers
Telkwa
16
Topley
16
Houston
Burns Lake
Francois Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Tahtsa Lake
Kemano
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10
0
10
20
30
40
50 km

Exhibit 14: Unit and Recreation Feature Polygon Descriptions

Unit A - Forested hills & lakes north of Lake Babine

An area of rounded hills and small to large lakes. Much of the area has timber harvesting. The difficult access and low levels of public recreation use (due to the need to cross Babine Lake on an industry owned timber barge) are what makes this area different from similar landscapes found south of Babine Lake.

A 1	TSITUTL MOUNTAIN
A 2	MORRISON LAKE
A 3	NAKINILERAK/HAUTELE LAKE CHAIN (Friday to Natowite Lakes)
A 4	NATOWITE LAKE
A 5a	TOCHCHA LAKE
A 5b	NIZIK LAKE
A 5c	BIG LOON LAKE
A 6a	FORT BABINE / TAKLA LAKE GREASE TRAIL
A 6b	FT BABINE TO SMITHERS LANDING SNOWMOBILE LOOP

Unit B – Babine Lake

A Very large lake (The largest natural lake in BC - 177 km long) with island groupings along the east shoreline from the southern district boundary to the entrance of Morrison Arm. Protected bays with good anchorages in these areas. Many beaches including pebble, cobble, sand and red sand. Water in shallower bays and protected areas can become quite warm in the late summer. Narrow arms to the northwest and northeast. Lake contains large Rainbows to 12+ lbs, Cutthroat to 2-1/2 lbs and Lake Char that are capable of reaching 35 lbs. Many of the creeks running into this lake host large sockeye runs. Forested shoreline varies from dense wet interior spruce forest on northerly facing slopes to open mixed wood forests on southerly facing slopes

B 1	BABINE LAKE – NORTHWEST ARM
B 2	BABINE LAKE – MORRISON ARM
B 3	BABINE LAKE – WESTERN SIDE
B 4	BABINE LAKE – EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS

Unit C – Mid-country forested hills and Lakes

Rounded forested hills with a few isolated mountain peaks, many small to large lakes – part of the much larger Nechako Plateau. Extensive timber harvesting, good access throughout the area via forest roads. Many good fishing and camping opportunities. A few hiking trails, numerous snowmobile routes.

C 1	DOME MOUNTAIN
C 2	MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN (Tachek , McCrae Peaks and Nez Lake)
C 3	FULTON RIVER and LAKE
C 3a	UPPER FULTON RIVER,
C 3b	FULTON LAKE
C 3c	LOWER FULTON RIVER
C 4	PAUL LAKE
C 5a	PINE TREE LAKE
C 5 b	DORIS LAKE
C 5c	TANGLECHAIN LAKES
C 6	MORICE MOUNTAIN
C 7	CHINA NOSE
C 8	DUNGATE MEADOWS
C 9	NADINA MOUNTAIN
C 10	SHELFORD HILLS
C 11	SMOKE MOUNTAIN
C 12	MORICE RIVER
C 12a	MORICE RIVER
C 12b	UPPER MORICE RIVER (TO LAMPREY CREEK).
C 12c	LOWER MORICE RIVER (LAMPREY TO BULKLEY).
C 13	NADINA RIVER
C 14a	MCBRIDE LAKE
C 14b	COLLINS LAKE
C 15a	TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
C 15b	BITTERN/BILL NYE LAKES
C 16a	NADINA LAKE
C 16b	NEWCOMBE LAKES
C 17	OWEN LAKE
C 18a	PARROTT LAKES
C 18b	GOOSLY LAKE
C 18c	TSICHGASS LAKES
C 19	FRANCOIS LAKE
C 20a	OOTSA LAKE
C 20b	WHITESAIL LAKE
C 21a	HOUSTON TO TOPLEY SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
C 21b	HOUSTON TO COLLEYMOUNT SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
C 22	TOPLEY TO GRANISLE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
C 23	GRANISLE TO MCKENRICK PASS SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
C 24	GRANISLE TO BURNS LAKE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
C 25	GRANISLE TO FT ST JAMES SNOWMOBILE ROUTES
C 26	DUNGATE CREEK TO BUCK FALLS ROAD TOUR CIRCUIT
C 27	MORICE RIVER – FORESTRY TOUR
C 28	BABINE LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
C 29	FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR (Houston-Burns-Houston) Option 1
C 30	FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR (Houston-Burns-Houston) Option 2
C31	SWEENEY LAKE

Unit D Front country & rural landscapes

Landscapes that lie closest to Houston and Highway 16 and other communities.

D 1	FRONT COUNTRY LAKES
D 2	HOUSTON COMMUNITY FOREST
D3	BULKLEY RIVER
D4	GRANISLE COMMUNITY FOREST

Unit E - Southwest Ranges & Lakes

The Kitimat Range is characterized by round-topped, dome-like mountains with peaks from 2200 to 2500 metres and northerly facing cirques. These ranges have been over-ridden by the ice sheet, which left behind deep U-shaped river valleys with numerous hanging valleys in the steep walls and glaciers in the cirques. South of Morice Lake, the drainage is eastward across the Nechako Plateau to the Fraser River system through the valleys of Tahtsa, Troitsa, Whitesail and Eutsuk lakes, all at about 900 metres elevation. The serrate ridges and peaks are between 2100 and 2500 metres high, with glaciers in most northeast-facing cirques. The lakes occupy ice-modified valleys extending eastwards from within the granitic Coast Range Mountains onto the Nechako Plateau.

E 1	EAST TELKWA RANGES
E 1a	EAST TELKWA RANGES
E 1b	MOOSESKIN JOHNNY LAKE & VALLEY
E 2	BURNIE RIVER
E 3	WEST TELKWA RANGES
E 3 a	WEST TELKWA RANGES
E 3b	BURNIE LAKES
E 3c	HOWSON RANGE
E 4	HERD DOME
E 5	MORICE RANGE
E 5a	NORTH MORICE RANGE
E 5b	SOUTH MORICE RANGE
E 6	TABLELAND MOUNTAIN
E 7	REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN (Range between Morice & Kidprice Lakes)
E 8	ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
E 8a	ATNA LAKE
E 8b	ATNA RIVER TO TAHTSA LAKE
E 9	CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
E 10	COASTAL DIVIDE RANGES
E 10a	DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
E 10b	NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
E 10c	PEAKS SURROUNDING COLES LAKES
E 11	SIBOLA RANGE
E 12	KASALK RANGE
E 13	WHITESAIL RANGE
E 14	MORICE LAKE
E 15	NANIKA / KIDPRICE / STEPP / ANZAC/ LAMPREY LAKES
E 15a	LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES
E 15b	NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES
E 15c	NANIKA RIVER
E 16	TAHTSA LAKE & TAHTSA REACH
E 17	TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN
E 18	COLES LAKE CHAIN
E 19	KASALK RANGE CIRCUM-NAVIGATION
E 19a	UN-NAMED CREEK ROUTE
E 19b	LAVENTIE CREEK ROUTE

Exhibit 15: Climatic Characteristics for the Morice Forest District[1]

Biogeo-climatic zone	Where found in the Morice	Sub-zone Climate Summary	Morice District Climate Extremes	Annual Precipitation	Mean temperature of warmest month	Mean temperature of coldest month
SBSmc ▸ Sub Boreal Spruce – moist cold subzone	▸ All low elevation areas except those in SBSdk below	▸ Cool cloudy summers, wetter and snowier than the SBSdk subzone	▸ Coldest winters	▸ 416 to 724 mm	▸ 9.8 to 14.7 C	▸ -9.8 to -16.2 C
SBSdk ▸ Sub Boreal Spruce – moist cool subzone	▸ Valleys following the Highway 16 corridor, Lower Morice Valley & Francois Lake	▸ Dry warm summers, dry cold winters	▸ Warmest, driest summers, least amount of snowfall			
ESSFmc ▸ Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir – moist cold subzone	▸ The subalpine forest areas through the district except those in ESSFmk below	▸ Cool, fairly dry summers, cold winters	▸ Shortest summer (except for AT)	▸ 580 mm	▸ 8 to 11.6 C	▸ -11.5 to -13.5 C
ESSFmk ▸ Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir – moist cool subzone	▸ A narrow band of subalpine forest on the east side of the coastal ranges south of Telkwa Pass	▸ Dry summers, snowy winters	▸ Snowiest subalpine forest			
CWHws2 ▸ Coastal Western Hemlock – Montaine variant	▸ Shorelines of Tahtsa & Nadina lakes and the SW ends of Morice and Nanika Lakes	▸ Cool cloudy summers, snowy mild winters	▸ Warmest winter, heaviest snowfall	▸ 1000 – 3700 mm	▸ 13.1 to 16.7 C	▸ 3.8 to –8.5 C
AT ▸ Alpine Tundra	▸ On higher mountains throughout the district at elevations between 1400 and 2700m	▸ Cold, windy & snowy, can freeze throughout the year, most precipitation as snow	▸ Longest winters and shortest growing season	▸ N/A	▸ N/A	▸ N/A

---

[1] From A Field Guide to Site Identification and Interpretation for the Prince Rupert Forest Region Part 2, Land Management Handbook number 26, June 1993. Note: Much of the climatic data is from a very limited number of stations and should be viewed as relational data between the various zones rather than precise accurate data for individual zones.

6.3 Product Selection

The BC government has identified over 50 potential tourism activities, which were evaluated by the consulting team to determine which offer the greatest potential for **outdoor recreation-based tourism** development in the Morice Forest District and the Wet'suwet'en Area of Interest. A short-list was generated based on the consultants' knowledge of the resource base, market trends and economic factors of the study area, priorities defined by the funding agencies, and experience conducting similar studies in other parts of B.C.

The list of relevant tourism activities was discussed with local tourism operators and activities were selected which the consultants and operators felt had the most potential for opportunity development. These activities were grouped or singled out into tourism products. Each tourism product may represent a number of activities that have a common relationship.

The tourism products evaluated are:

Snowmobiling	Community circuit routes and mountain riding
Historical Winter Adventure	Includes, ice fishing, dog sledding, snowshoeing, ski touring and trapping. Link to lodge or hut system and cultural experience..
Freshwater - Non-motorized: Canoeing / Rafting/Drifting/River Activities	Along lakes and rivers including the Bulkley and Morice . Opportunities to link to fly and other fishing instruction, wildlife viewing, cultural interpretation. Link to destination lodges, hut systems.
Summer Trails (non-motorized)	Link to cultural heritage. Access to significant features and viewscapes, link to lodges and hut systems.
Road Tours	Link to cultural heritage, scenic and wildlife viewing.
Air Tours	Link to cultural heritage, scenic and wildlife viewing.
Destination Lodge	Mid country and Wilderness resorts
Hut system	Backcountry snowmobile, hiking. Lake shore huts. Link to Backcountry winter, snowmobiling and summer trails..
Lake Tours	Link to fishing, cultural activities, lodges, hut systems

These final products can be regarded as the best short-term options for outdoor recreation-based tourism products. However none exist in isolation, and opportunities to build on clusters of tourism products or where products could be linked are extremely important and are described in this report.

The "top products" should not be considered an all-inclusive list as there are likely other tourism products or activities not evaluated for in this study, which have enormous short or longer term potential. For example, as the primary focus for tourism development in this study is outdoor recreation products, an activity such as a festival or cultural event, which may have high potential in the short term, was not evaluated.

Each of the selected tourism products was also evaluated to determine the land's suitability to support the product. The result of this analysis is entered into the discussion in the following chapter and in the suitability maps.

Exhibit 16 provides an overview matrix of the required resources, complementary products and development considerations of each of the ten tourism "products".

It should also be noted that mature, well developed tourism products such as fishing and hunting have not been examined during this study because it was felt that the opportunity for growth was more significant in newer and less developed products.

Exhibit 16: Product Descriptions

Product Line	Product Delivery	Complementary Product Lines	DESIRABLE RESOURCES	Product Enhancement	Development Considerations *	Comments
LAND - SUMMER						
Hiking, Animal Assisted Hiking Backpacking Horse/Llama Transportation (camping)	• Single/Multi day • Circle • Linear • Shuttle • Guided /Unguided • Instructional	• Hut System, Lodges • Nature Observation • Cultural Heritage • Scenic viewing	• Trails (Length, condition, level of difficulty), Feature clusters (Lakes, ponds, streams, flower meadows, glaciers, accessible peaks), Reliable fauna sightings • Historic/cultural features, Scenic areas. Non-motorized areas, Camp sites, Potable water, Proximity to population	• Loop trails development • Trail maintenance • Access road improvement • Viewscape management • Shuttle services • Primitive and Semi-primitive ROS	• Environmental Impacts • Tenures • Heritage Impacts • Use conflict (motorized)	• Complementary Businesses: Hiking guides, Guidebook production, Shuttle services, Photography courses, Equipment sales and rental, lodges
WATER						
Freshwater: Non-motorized Kayaking Canoeing Rafting Tubing River activities (camping)	• Linear • Circle • Shuttle • Single/Multi day • Guided /Unguided • Instructional	• Cultural Heritage • Nature Observation • Lodge • Marine Cruising • Water: Activities • Scenic viewing • Enthusiast - water	• River and/or lakes • Rafting: Range of whitewater class suitable to skill/activities • Scenic areas, Reliable fauna sightings, Wilderness areas, Fish • Complimentary trails to views/features. Camping locations and infrastructure	• Put in/pull out sites • Trails along difficult stretches • Non-motorized zoning • Viewscape management • Interpretive information • Guide books/services • Shuttle services • Watercraft rentals • Safety provisions	• River classification • Environmental Impacts • Heritage Impacts • Impacts on wildlife • Safety Issues	• Complementary Businesses: Shuttle services (Van, Float Plane), Watercraft rentals, River Guide services, Interpretive Guide services, Hospitality industry

SNOW						
Backcountry Winter Experience	• Single/ Multi day • Linear • Shuttle • Circle • Guided • Instructional	• Destination Lodge • Hut System • Nature Observation • Hunting • Snowmobiling • Dog sledding • Ski touring	• Optimum snow conditions • Wildlife •	• Access • Infrastructure development (hut system). •	• Safety Issues • Avalanche Conditions Impact on the setting • Environmental Impacts	• Complementary businesses: Mountain guide, Hiking guide, Shuttle services, Equipment rental, guidebook production
Motorized Snowmobiling	• Single/ Multi day • Circle • Guided /Unguided	• Lodges • Hut System • Scenic viewing • Guided tours	• Optimum snow conditions • Access, Open "play" areas • Variety cluster for various skill levels	• Groomed Access • Motorized area designation • Road clearing/parking	• Environmental Impacts • Impacts on wildlife • Tenures, Use Conflicts • Avalanche conditions • Negative social impacts	• Complementary businesses: Equipment sales, repair and rental, Guided tours, Trailer & rack construction, hospitality industry
TRANSPORT						
Lake Tours	• Circle • Shuttle • Linkage • Guided • Scheduled • Unscheduled pocket • Mothership	• Nature Observation • Touring • Kayaking • Cultural Heritage • Marine/Freshwater Motorized	• Island groupings • scenic features	• Viewscape Management • Circle opportunities • Linkage with other Tour types • Community linkages • Guide media (Signs, pamphlets, tapes, books)	• Scenic values • Limited anchorage • Wildlife Impacts	• FN Heritage •
Air (Helicopter/ Fixed Wing)	• Circle • Shuttle • Linkage • Guided	• Heli-skiing • Fishing, Hiking • Backcountry skiing • Biking, Touring Nature Observation • Scenic Viewing • Lodges	• Scenic areas, Rivers/Lakes, Open terrain, Trails, Optimum snow conditions • Reliability of fauna sightings • Loop tour opportunities	• Proximity of base camp to important features • Linkage with other Tour types • Viewscape management	• Impacts on wildlife Environmental Impacts • Negative social impacts • Tenure	• Suitable helicopter drop/off pickup is preferably less than a half hour. Complementary businesses: Production of guide media, Local tour guides, link to other tour types (road, water, rail). The helicopter product can compliment communities/lodges.

Road tours	• Circle	• Fishing • Hiking • Nature Observation •	• Scenic areas • Safe, predictable roads • Interesting features • Interpretive info • Fuel & food services	• Paved routes	•	• Maintenance of forest roads a concern • Industrial traffic on forest roads a concern • Availability of forest recreation sites a concern
ACCOMODATION						
Lodge / Resort	• River, Land, • Shoreline • Feature • Amenity (golf course)	• Activity focused: • Retreat, Ranch, Spa, Cultural, Wilderness, Fish , Land-summer • Land Winter, Air • Scenic Viewing	• Focus- wildlife, culture, setting, sport fish • Scenic/unique features • Suitable location • Opt. Snow conditions • Trails	• Proximity to relevant features • Scenic assurance	• Tenures • Environmental Impacts • Fish sustainability • Suitable locations • Social acceptability	• Lodge placement expands the base from which associated products can emerge.
Hut System	• Single or multi • String or cluster • Lake (shuttle) • River (shuttle) • Trail (linear or circle)	• Ski Touring, Fishing • Animal Assisted • Snowmobiling • Boating (small) • Cultural Heritage Nature Observe • Scenic Viewing	• Scenic/unique features • Suitable locations • Focus- wildlife, culture, setting and sport fish. • Ease of travel between huts	• Unobtrusive setting • Critical mass development to allow for efficiency. • Scenic assurance • Non-motorized area	• Vandalism • Tenures • Social • LAC /CC • Avalanche conditions	• High to low end. Provides opportunity to move recreationists from environmentally /culturally sensitive sites. Complementary businesses: Shuttling, equipment sales and rentals, guidebook production
OBSERVATION (Products inherent to all the others)						
Cultural Heritage	• Interpretive Centres • Expositions • Guided • Single / Multi day • Instructional	• Interpretation • Guided tours • Touring Products • Lodges • Nature Observation • Scenic Viewing	• Visible heritage features • Known heritage values	• Heritage Interpretation • Heritage Exposition • Infrastructure development • Viewscape Management	• Sensitivity of information. • Local capacity to do Interpretation	• First Nations (FN) and immigrant heritage can stand alone or compliment each other. FN and Immigrant heritage compliment and thus important to the other products. • Complementary businesses: art and crafts, production of guide media, local tour

						guides, interpretive productions.
Nature Observation Grizzly viewing Bird watching Butterfly watching Wildlife watching Salmon runs Canopy walks	• Linear • Circle • Single/Multi-day • Guided /Self-guided • Canopy walks • Instructional	• Tours • Land • Water • Scenic Viewing Cultural Heritage	• Reliability of wildlife sightings • Safe Viewing areas • Scenic/Unique features • Trails/ Platforms • Proximity to good roads	• Interpretive media/guides • Viewscape Management	• Wildlife management * • Environmental Impacts • Local capacity to do Interpretation • Safety Issues	• Anchor species include bears, whales, birds. Other flora and fauna provide an important compliment. • Complementary businesses: production of guide media, souvenir items, local tour guides.

* **DEVELOPMENT CONSIDERATIONS:**

Wildlife Management must address conflict with people, habituation of the animals to the people, and disturbance to the wildlife and their environs (this includes auditory impacts).

Heritage impacts: must address physical disturbance of heritage (archaeological) sites and artefacts.

Environmental impacts: must address the ecological impacts of an area that results from the kind of use, overuse, waste management, poor behaviour, timing of the activities and the distribution of the use. Refer to the guidelines on Limits of Acceptable Change (LAC).

Negative social impacts: Generally associated with the disturbance of the peace and tranquility of a recreation experience by an activity or participant behaviour.

Site Impacts: accounting for the carrying capacity (focused on the amount of use) and the Limits of Acceptable Change.

Alteration of Setting: the setting relates to the experience associated with an activity ranging from Primitive to Urban. The criteria are identified in the Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS).

Safety Issues: Safety issues are dependent on the activity and are focused on the participant. Liability issues should be incorporated.

Use Conflicts: Use conflicts can be between motorized and non-motorized, mechanized and non-motorized.

6.4 Community and Product Matching

Throughout this section, identified opportunities are associated with the community situated in the optimum geographical location to benefit from development. These communities may or may not support development of that particular opportunity. Opportunities were identified and associated with communities without prejudice to treaty negotiations or First Nation's traditional territories. First Nation leaders have stated that they will not pursue opportunities outside of their traditional territory; they will defer to the Nation in whose territory the opportunity is positioned and will work towards cooperative management in areas that they share. The following table links tourism opportunities to the communities of Houston, Topley, Topley Landing, Granisle and Fort Babine..

Topley Landing, Granisle and Ft. Babine	
PRODUCT	**DESCRIPTION**
Snowmobiling	Opportunities are linked to Babine Lake, the trail and snowmobile routes that head up to the local mountains and extended routes that link the communities with Houston and Topley.
Backcountry winter experience	A package of winter activities which would be best developed in association with existing or new lodges or hut systems, near low elevation old growth forest (for trapping demonstrations), near lakes with ice fishing potential and near areas with potential for scenic skiing and snow shoeing
Summer Trails	These communities are situated close to a number of backcountry trails.
Freshwater Non-motorized	The focus of these communities is Babine lake. The communities lies close to the lakes to the west of Babine Lake. River opportunities are limited.
Road Tours	Road tour opportunities are limited.
Air (Helicopter and Fixed Wing)	There is not an staging area for the air product in these communities. The opportunities to the west, north and south are similar to the larger centres of Houston and Smithers, however to the east the 60 km radius extends to Takla Lake.
Lake tours	Babine Lake offers excellent opportunities for the lake tour product.
Destination Lodge	This area has lodge opportunities associated with the Babine lake, as well as the smaller lakes in the area.
Hut Systems	Hut system can be linked to the Historical trails and to Babine Lake. of the .

Houston	
PRODUCT	**DESCRIPTION**
Snowmobiling	The East and West Telkwa Ranges, Morice Mountain and Dungate meadows are popular local play areas. Opportunities exist to develop inter-community touring routes between Houston and Topley, Granisle and Burns Lake. The Telkwa Caribou Recovery Program is likely to limit opportunities for tourism growth in the Telkwa Ranges
Backcountry winter experience	A package of winter activities which would be best developed in association with existing or new lodges or hut systems, near low elevation old growth forest (for trapping demonstrations), near lakes with ice fishing potential and near areas with potential for scenic skiing and snow shoeing
Summer Trails	Houston is well situated to take advantage of trails from the front country to the backcountry.
Freshwater Non-motorized	Houston is located close to the high quality opportunities of the Morice River. It is the closest large communities to the opportunities to the southwest including the Nanika Kidprice Canoe chain.
Road Tours	Houston is central to a number of roads with circle tour opportunities.
Air (Helicopter and Fixed Wing)	A 60 km radius reaches scenic areas with a variety of topography from rugged peaks, steep terrain and glaciers to large lakes. Highest potential areas include the Telkwa Ranges and the China Nose, Morice Mountain and Nadina Mountain circuit. Wildlife is difficult to detect and the possibility for disturbance is high.
Lake tours	Francois Lake and Morice Lake are large lakes accessible from Houston. Babine Lake is more accessible from Topley Landing, Granisle and Ft. Babine
Destination Lodge	This area has lodge opportunities associated with the many lakes and rivers found in the area and, in the southwest, the high glaciated peaks of the coastal ranges.
Hut Systems	Hut system can be linked to the trails of the Telkwa Ranges, the Southwest Ranges and possibly the Morice River and Nanika/Kidprice canoe chain.

Nanika & Kidprice Lakes

Chapter

7

7 Tourism Opportunity Analysis

Throughout this chapter of the report, references are made to specific map polygons (i.e.: A6A, C21A, etc.). Please note that these letters refer only to the specific GIS &/or Arch Info digital files which form part of the deliverables for this study. In an effort to be 'reader-friendly', the maps within this report use the long, formal names of natural features.

7.1 Snowmobiling

7.1.1 Description

Snowmobiling has been increasing in popularity over the past few years. Advancement in design, weight, reliability and horsepower has enabled sledders or snowmobilers to access difficult terrain and to achieve greater speeds and distances. Logging roads have provided access to remote and spectacular mountain ranges. Avalanches, inclement weather, clouds and resulting loss of visibility are hazards that are increasing in profile as sledders continue to push the limits advanced by technology.

There are two major snowmobile segments: enthusiasts and participants. Snowmobiling ***enthusiasts*** are those who engage in the activity several times a year. Enthusiasts are more likely to live near areas that have good snowmobiling terrain, own snowmobiles and be part of a local snowmobiling club or association. There are those who seek hard or extreme adventure and will look for challenging terrain that includes untracked powder, jumps, and "powder play areas" – large, open areas with high snowfall. They enjoy the experience of high performance snowmobiles. Another group are the "travellers", who enjoy snowmobiles as a means of getting access to wilderness and other town destinations while enjoying the outdoors. ***Participants*** often take on snowmobiling as a day activity as a part of longer trip involving other activities such as downhill skiing. They will not have their own snowmobiles and will require gear as well as basic operating and safety instruction. Participants will value the scenery and wildlife viewing opportunities in addition to the thrill of operating the snowmobile. Participants will go on guided tours whereas enthusiasts are more likely to plan a trip on their own. All the groups enjoy well-maintained, integrated network of trails for touring to interesting and unique destinations.

7.1.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Variability of terrain. Long distance opportunities to link communities. Hereditary chiefs are willing, in some cases, to be involved in project development
Weaknesses	Distant markets. Competition locally and in other area of BC (Rocky Mts.).
Concerns	High potential for conflict with other users and with sensitive wildlife habitats. Lack of public sector funding to develop and maintain opportunities. Uncertainties over land management, access and use. Hereditary Chiefs are concerned about clubs and individuals building cabins on territories without being consulted. Hereditary Chiefs are concerned about snowmobiles and other motorized atv's being used on traditional trails. Increased access increases propensity for 'poaching'. Loss of cultural/heritage features

7.1.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

Opportunities exist for both mountain riding and trail riding between communities in the Morice and adjacent forest districts.

Recreational mountain riding is well established in the Morice District with the most popular areas being the East Telkwa Ranges and Dungate Meadows where the Houston Snowmobile Club has cabins as well as Dome Mountain where the Smithers Snowmobile Club has a cabin and Morice Mountain which does not have a snowmobile cabin at present.

7.1.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

The BC Snowmobile Federation and local snowmobile clubs are working on developing a snowmobile-touring network between BC Communities. In the Morice District, routes between a number of communities do exist. They include routes between Houston and Topley and between Topley and Granisle. The potential to develop routes to other communities exists as well.

The ability of an area to attract snowmobile tourism is dependent on several factors including the physical resource, facility development and available services. The resource assessment below concentrates on the physical factors. Areas are evaluated for either mountain riding or community-to-community trail riding.

For community-to-community trail riding attraction factors include:

- Interconnectivity – the more connections between communities the higher the attraction
- Loop options – many tourists like options allowing travel without returning on same route best
- Permanence – this relates to guaranteed continuous access (Property and land use issues) – it can also relate to frozen lake routes
- Warm up shelters – required for both safety and comfort
- Existing use – capacity of route to sustain further use
- Dependability of snow cover – climatic conditions govern the length of the potential season
- Scenery – scenic areas are more attractive for all kinds of tourists

For mountain riding attraction factors include:

- Access – travel time to trailhead is important as are groomed routes to the alpine
- Warm up shelters – for both safety and comfort
- Range of terrain – best to have terrain suitable for novice to advanced riders
- Size of area – bigger areas have a greater capacity to absorb use
- Existing use – areas have a finite capacity to absorb additional use and provide a quality experience
- Dependability of snow cover – Mountainous areas in the Morice consistently get sufficient snow for snowmobiling. The Ranges at the SW end of the District around Burnie, Morice and Tahtsa Lakes consistently get very high snowfall, often more than 2 metres on the ground.
- Scenery - scenic areas are more attractive for all kinds of tourists

7.1.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

COMMUNITY-TO-COMMUNITY TRAIL RIDING

A 6A FORT BABINE TO TAKLA GREASE TRAIL (U'INTIY) & A6B FT BABINE/SMITHERS LANDING LOOP

- Interconnectivity – The potential exists to connect to Takla Landing and Ft St James to the east, Smithers Landing and Granisle to the south and Moricetown to the west
- Loop options – the potential exists to travel east to Haul Lake and then south along Morrison Lake to Morrison Arm then across to Granisle and back up the west arm to Ft Babine.
- Permanence – With the exception of the trail to Moricetown all routes depend on lakes being safely frozen. Potential tourism operators would need to consider their liability if their tour route crosses frozen lakes.
- Warm up shelters – warm up shelters would be required for safety and comfort
- Existing use – local snowmobile use occurs on parts of these routes but likely very little travel between communities
- Dependability of snow cover – these routes fall within the SBSmc and ESSFmc biogeoclimatic zones with generally cold winters and from 70 to 150 cm of snow on the ground.
- Scenery – Riding along lakes is quite scenic with mountains in the background
- **Potential for trail riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Difficult access and un-developed nature of these routes

Cultural/heritage features: archaeological sites and trails; heritage campsites, settlements, historical significance high—main trade route between nations. Contact: Lake Babine Nation.

C 21A HOUSTON (NEELDZIIKWE)TO TOPLEY SNOWMOBILE ROUTE & C21B HOUSTON TO COLLEYMOUNT

- Interconnectivity – potential routes include connections to Topley, Colleymount and Burns Lake
- Loop options – options exist to travel from Houston to Topley and return via different routes
- Permanence – Portions of the route cross private property
- Warm up shelters – The Dungate Meadows cabin is on this route
- Existing use – the trail to Dungate Meadows and many surrounding old forest roads get significant local use, the more remote areas have occasional use. Much of this area is very popular for family use as the riding is mostly quite easy.
- Dependability of snow cover – Buck Flats and the Bulkley Valley are in the SBSdk subzone which has the lowest snow pack in the Morice Forest District
- Scenery – open fields and Dungate Meadows are attractive
- **Potential for trail riding** - **HIGH**
- **Rationale** – This route is used now, it is scenic, there is a shelter at Dungate Meadows, and a number of route options exist.

Cultural/heritage features: village sites, gravesites, trails, heritage campsites, hunting and gathering areas; Other interests: ceyes Taan Ceek; Look'et weyeez; tseel k'ez teezdlii; khikhgyedullh, alxkat wheLoh's; exk'et, 'llh k'it; Guzeyh Keeyex,; Xex Hidiil; contact: Office of Wet'suwet'en

C 22 TOPLEY TO GRANISLE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE

- Interconnectivity – potential routes from Granisle to Burns Lake, Ft. St. James and access to Smithers via road from McKendrick Pass
- Loop options – Potential to travel from Topley Landing to Burns Lake and back to Topley
- Permanence – a trail along the highway right of way requires an agreement with BC Highways, travel on Babine Lake is only possible when the lake is frozen (typically sometime in January to sometime in April). Potential tourism operators would need to consider their liability if their tour route crosses frozen lakes.
- Warm up shelters – no shelters exist at present although the communities are relatively close together
- Existing use – low levels of local use
- Dependability of snow cover – Route is mainly within the SBSmc biogeoclimatic zone which generally has cold winters and a snow pack usually less than 1 meter
- Scenery – the route is mainly within the forest until it reaches Babine Lake
- **Potential for trail riding - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Although the trail is not particularly scenic it offers the potential to connect to several communities via routes of varying lengths and with a variety of scenery

Cultural/heritage features: House groups map key: S4, G8, L9; contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en

C 23 GRANISLE TO MCKENDRICK PASS SNOWMOBILE ROUTE

- Interconnectivity – reaching Smithers requires a vehicle to pick up snowmobile at McKendrick Pass or Woodmere Road
- Loop options – Return would require retracing parts of the route out, a loop is possible at the Dome Mountain end on the Dome Mountain and Deception Lake roads
- Permanence – this route utilizes mainly forest roads, a crossing of the Fulton River is required, travel along Fulton Lake depends on having thick enough ice
- Warm up shelters – the Smithers snowmobile club has a cabin on Dome Mountain which is on this route
- Existing use – limited use by Granisle snowmobilers
- Dependability of snow cover – Route is mainly within the SBSmc biogeoclimatic zone which generally has cold winters and a snow pack usually less than 1 meter. The Dome Mountain area is in the ESSFmc zone which has usually has snow packs between 70 and 150 cm
- Scenery – Scenic in places along Fulton Lake and on the Dome Mountain part of the route
- **Potential for trail riding - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Although this route doesn't provide true connectivity between communities it does provide a partial loop which makes an interesting day ride out of Granisle

C 24 GRANISLE TO BURNS LAKE (TSEEL K'EZ BIN) SNOWMOBILE ROUTE

- Interconnectivity – a potential does exist to connect to trails further east to Ft St James and Fraser Lake
- Loop options – potential exists to loop from Granisle to Burns Lake to Decker Lake to Topley and back to Granisle
- Permanence – Much of this route depends on Babine lake being frozen. Potential tourism operators would need to consider their liability if their tour route crosses frozen lakes.
- Warm up shelters – No shelters exist within the Morice district
- Existing use – Low local use
- Dependability of snow cover – depends on lake freezing
- Scenery – Shoreline is mainly forested with distant views of mountains
- **Potential for trail riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Requirement that the lake is frozen makes it difficult to guarantee availability of the route to potential tourists except for a relatively short period each winter

Cultural/heritage features: Map reference: S4, g8, L3, W2, L4, T4, L5; Contacts: Lake Babine Nation; Office of the Wet'suwet'en; other interests: Tasdegh bin

C 25 GRANISLE TO FT ST. JAMES SNOWMOBILE ROUTE

- Interconnectivity – potential exists to connect to trails through to Prince George and Wells
- Loop options – potential exists to travel to Ft St James via Natowite, Takla and Stuart Lakes and back via Stuart and Babine Lakes
- Permanence – this route is only possible when all lakes are safely frozen. Potential tourism operators would need to consider their liability if their tour route crosses frozen lakes.
- Warm up shelters – none currently available although cabins do exist on Natowite, Takla and Stuart Lakes
- Existing use – likely no through use although portions of the route do experience snowmobile use
- Dependability of snow cover – these routes fall within the SBSmc and ESSFmc biogeoclimatic zones with generally cold winters and from 70 to 150 cm of snow on the ground.
- Scenery – variety of forest landscapes, lakes and distant mountain peaks
- **Potential for trail riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** - Requirement that the lake is frozen makes it difficult to guarantee availability of the route to potential tourists except for a relatively short period each winter. Also the distance would require the development of several warm up shelters for safety and comfort reasons

Cultural/heritage: Contact: Lake Babine Nation; Nekozlie/Carrier Sekani Tribal Council

MOUNTAIN RIDING

C 1 DOME MOUNTAIN

- Access – travel from Houston depends on the Chapman FSR being cleared or alternatively traveling to Smithers and then up the Babine Lake road to the Dome Mountain Road
- Warm up shelters – The Smithers snowmobile club has a cabin on Dome Mountain
- Range of terrain – a variety of terrain is available
- Size of area – relatively small, approximately 25 square kms
- Existing use – a highly used local area
- Dependability of snow cover – Mainly AT – dependable snow cover
- Scenery – scenic views of the Babine Mountains, Hudson Bay Mountain and the Telkwa Ranges (Haat'elegh)
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – This attractive area with cabins experiences high local use. Significant increases in tourism use has the potential to displace local users – therefore this area is rated as moderate.

Cultural/heritage: Trails, hunting & gathering areas, map reference: W1, L8

C 2 MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN (NEZ LAKE) – WEDZIIH DZEL

- Access – Relatively short drive from Houston to the trailhead near Topley
- Warm up shelters – no snowmobile shelters but cabin(s) reported in the area east of Nez Lake
- Range of terrain – much of the area is forested with wetland meadows and small lakes, just a small part of the area is above tree line
- Size of area – moderate in size, approximately 60 square kms
- Existing use – low use by local residents
- Dependability of snow cover – In the ESSFmc and AT biogeoclimatic zones with average snowfalls ranging from 70 to 150 cm
- Scenery – small forested peaks with one alpine area, larger mountains in the distance
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Much of the area is below tree line, scenery is not dramatic

Cultural/heritage features: contact: office of the Wet'suwet'en map reference s3/s4

C 6 MORICE MOUNTAIN (DZEL TEEL)

- Access – within 20 minutes drive of Houston, some area residents can reach without loading the machines, some access from the Carrier Road (When it is plowed), other access through private land on the Morice River Road
- Warm up shelters – none
- Range of terrain – a variety of terrain
- Size of area – relatively small area, approximately 25 square kms
- Existing use – moderate use by local snowmobilers
- Dependability of snow cover – In the ESSFmc and AT biogeoclimatic zones with average snowfalls ranging from 70 to 150 cm
- Scenery – Views of the Bulkley Valley, Telkwa Ranges and Nadina Mountain
- **Potential for mountain riding – MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Close proximity to Houston and local users limit the potential of Morice Mountain to attract significant numbers of snowmobile tourists.

Cultural/heritage features: Hunting & Gathering areas, campsites, trails, contacts: Office of the Wet'suwet'en; map reference: w4

C 8 DUNGATE MEADOWS

- Access – Can snowmobile directly from Houston
- Warm up shelters – Snowmobile Club cabin

- Range of terrain – mostly play area in meadows, good family area, higher ridges off to the east, on potential trail to Topley, Decker Lake and Colleymount
- Size of area – Large, more than 100 square kms
- Existing use – High use by local snowmobilers
- Dependability of snow cover – Dependable snow cover between 70 and 150 cm on average
- Scenery - scenic meadows and forest parkland
- **Potential for mountain riding – HIGH** although it is more a subalpine play area rather than mountain riding
- **Rationale** – Proximity to town, cabin and location on potential inter-community travel routes

Cultural/heritage: map reference: L3, T2, G3, W7, L4, T4, G5; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en

E 1 A EAST TELKWA RANGES (NELGH DZEL) & E1 B MOOSESKIN JOHNNY (NEELGH BIN)

- Access – 20 minutes from Houston to the trail head, voluntary access restrictions related to the Telkwa Caribou Recovery plan are in place
- Warm up shelters – Cabin operated by Houston snowmobile club
- Range of terrain – Variety including challenging mountain riding
- Size of area – Moderate sized area, approximately 80 square kms, a much larger area is suitable for riding but is in the Telkwa Caribou Recovery non-motorized area
- Existing use – The most popular area locally for mountain riding
- Dependability of snow cover – dependable snow cover
- Scenery – very attractive ridges and alpine plateaus with views of the Bulkley Valley
- **Potential for mountain riding – Moderate**, capacity may be an issue during periods when new snow doesn't fall or if use increases substantially
- **Rationale** – This area is very popular with local riders because it is close to town, scenic, there is a cabin and a good variety of terrain. However the area is not large, it has high levels of use at present and it is not clear that it could sustain more use by a snowmobile tourism product. Also it is uncertain that BC Lands and Water Inc. would approved a motorized tourism product in this area given on-going concerns regarding the Telkwa Caribou Recovery Project.

Cultural/heritage: trails, camps, settlements, archaeological sites, traditional use areas, fishing, hunting & gathering; other interests: Neelgii taat, taldzinbin; Map reference: L7, S3; contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en.

E 3A WEST TELKWA RANGES, E3B BURNIE LAKES (TATDZEE WECOO BIN)

- Access – A Long drive on the Morice and Thautil Forestry roads. Access varies depending on whether the Thautil Road is plowed. Motorized access to much of the West Telkwa Range is currently voluntarily restricted under the Telkwa Caribou Recovery Plan. Access from the north is via the Howson Creek drainage near Mooseskin Johnny Lake.

- Warm up shelters – none although a ski cabin exists in the Starr Creek drainage and Bear Enterprises has a cabin above Burnie Lakes
- Range of terrain – A wide range of challenging to easy terrain
- Size of area – A very large area is suitable, most of it is voluntarily non-motorized
- Existing use – Low use, mostly in the spring with snow conditions make long distant travel easier
- Dependability of snow cover – Heavy snowfall through much of the area, as it is close to the coastal ranges
- Scenery – very scenic, particularly the Howson Ranges, Eagle Peak and the Burnie Lakes area
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Difficult and lengthy access as well as the Caribou Recovery Project restrictions. It is uncertain that BC Lands and Water Inc. would approve a motorized tourism product in these areas because E3A is zoned non-motorized in the Caribou Recovery Project. Also there is potential for conflict with non-motorized users at the Starr Creek cabin in E3A and the Burnie Hut in E3B.

Cultural/heritage: trails, hunting & gathering, village sites, settlements, other interests: Tl'ogh d'lusga we k'aw, tal tsii weyez, Ben Caagh leedek, tseezel k'eedek; Map reference: L6, T1, G6; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en

E 4 HERD DOME (WO'BETL'EET)

- Access – Lengthy drive up the Morice and Gosnell Forestry roads, winter access depends on whether the roads have been cleared for forestry activity
- Warm up shelters – none
- Range of terrain – mostly rolling ridges
- Size of area – medium, approximately 40 square kms
- Existing use – areas have a finite capacity to absorb additional use and provide a quality experience
- Dependability of snow cover – climatic conditions govern the length of the potential season
- Scenery - scenic areas are more attractive for all kinds of tourists
- **Potential for mountain riding- Moderate**
- **Rationale** – Lengthy access and better opportunities closer to town

Cultural/heritage:Trails, campsites, hunting & gathering area; other areas of interest: talbits kwah, woo ah ba'laat; Map reference: G6, T1; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en

E 5 A NORTH MORICE RANGE (HLES BEHS)

- Access – Lengthy drive up the Morice and Gosnell forestry roads, winter access depends on whether the roads have been cleared for forestry activity
- Warm up shelters – none
- Range of terrain – rolling alpine ridges and glacial landforms suitable for a variety of riders
- Size of area – large, approximately 100 square kms with connectivity to terrain further south
- Existing use – very low use, often in the spring
- Dependability of snow cover – proximity to coastal ranges provides plenty of snow
- Scenery – Very attractive with open waters of Morice Lake and glacier covered coastal ranges to the west and south
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Lengthy access and lack of shelter otherwise terrain and scenery would give this area a high rating

Cultural/heritage: camps, trails, hunting, fishing & gathering sites; other areas of interest: C'eneelee Bin, Klotts Wani Bin, Hies Be hs; Map reference: W2; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en

E 6 TABLELAND MOUNTAIN (DZEL TS'EEC)

- Access – accessed from either the Morice Lamprey or Nanika forestry roads, access depends on whether roads have been cleared for forestry activity
- Warm up shelters – none
- Range of terrain – Rounded alpine ridge, limited variety of terrain
- Size of area – small, approximately 12 square kms
- Existing use – very low
- Dependability of snow cover – dependable
- Scenery - scenic Morice Lake to the west and Nanika Kidprice Lake chain to the east
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Small area, relatively difficult to access

Cultural/heritage: Trails, campsites; Map reference: W3; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en

E 7 REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN

- Access – Lengthy access via the Morice River and Nanika forestry roads
- Warm up shelters – none
- Range of terrain – Numerous cirque basins, peaks, and snowfields, lots of variety
- Size of area – large, approximately 100 square kms

- Existing use – very low
- Dependability of snow cover – heavy snowfall
- Scenery – very scenic with open waters of Morice Lake to the west, the Nanika Kidprice canoe chain to the east and the coastal ranges to the SW
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – lengthy difficult access, otherwise portions of this area would be rated as high

E 11 SIBOLA RANGES (NDE DETEEST'AY)

- Access – Good driving on the Huckleberry Mine road but lengthy drive (1.5+ hrs)
- Warm up shelters – cabins
- Range of terrain – a wide variety including rolling ridges, cirque basins and peaks
- Size of area – large, approximately 200 square kms
- Existing use – moderate, both the Houston and Burns Lake Snowmobile clubs use this area
- Dependability of snow cover – proximity to coastal ranges provides lots of snow
- Scenery – Very scenic with large mountains in 180 degrees from the NW to SE
- **Potential for mountain riding - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Access distance is the only reason this area doesn't rate as high

Cultural/heritage: Hunting, fishing & gathering, trails, campsites; other areas of interest: Estts'e leegh, us tsa 'Esay'en cox; Map reference: G7, G3, W4, W6, L9; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en.

E8, E9, E10, E13, E15, E17, E18 SOUTHWEST RANGES AND LAKES

This includes a huge area around the headwaters of the Clore and Atna Rivers, as well as Morice, Nanika, Tahtsa, Troitsa and Coles Lakes which receives virtually no snowmobile use at present because of very lengthy and difficult access. Much of the area has very high quality snowmobile terrain and lots of snow. The scenery varies from impressive to spectacular. It has high potential for a snowmobile product in which guests are flown into a resort and given machines to use. In such a scenario there would be little or no conflict with local users because there aren't any. This would allow the marketing of a very exclusive type of snowmobile experience.

- Access – very lengthy travel by forest road often combined with further access via snow machine on lakes or trails. Access to the headwaters of Morice Lake and the Atna River area is complicated by the year round open waters of Morice Lake
- Warm up shelters – none although at least three guide outfitters have cabins within this area
- Range of terrain – everything from flat river meadows, to lakes to alpine ridges, cirque basins, glaciers and peaks
- Size of area – very large area

- Existing use – almost none, any use likely occurs in the spring when hard snow pack allows long distance travel
- Dependability of snow cover – High snowfall throughout this area, anywhere from 2 to 5 meters of snow on the ground
- Scenery – Very scenic
- **Potential for mountain riding – MODERATE**, would be high given the proximity of a resort catering to snowmobile users
- **Rationale** – This area has everything a snowmobiler could want except access and facilities

Cultural/heritage: Hunting, fishing & gathering areas, campsites, gravesites, village sites, traditional use sites, archaeological sites; Other areas of interest: Wedzen Bin, keyex Seleegh, 'Kiee Kwuh loox kwe, Ndedetsest Ooyeni, C'enegget Neene Keec, Duz wane, Toox kwe, Neenkeec, Been teezdleegh kwe, Xkaya'eh kwah, teezdlii dzel; Map reference: T1, S2, G2, G6, W2, G3, G9, G7; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Broman Lake Band.

7.1.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
	Community to Community trail riding	
A 6A,B	Fort Babine to Takla Grease Trail	Moderate
C 21A,B	Houston to Topley snowmobile route	**High**
C 22	Topley to Granisle snowmobile route	**High**
C 23	Granisle to McKendrick Pass snowmobile route	**High**
C 24	Granisle to Burns Lake snowmobile route	Moderate
C 25	Granisle to Ft St. James Snowmobile route	Moderate
	Mountain Riding	
C 1	Dome Mountain	Moderate
C 2	Matzehtzel Mountain (Nez Lake)	Moderate
C 6	Morice Mountain	Moderate
C 8	Dungate Meadows	**High**
E 1A,B	East Telkwa Ranges	**High**
E 3A,B	West Telkwa Ranges	Moderate
E 4	Herd Dome	Moderate
E 5A	North Morice Range	Moderate
E 6	Tableland Mountain	Moderate
E 7	Redslide Mountain	Moderate
E 11	Sibola Ranges	Moderate
E8, E9, E10, E13, E15, E17, E18	Southwest Ranges and Lakes	Moderate

7.1.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.1.3.1 MARKETS

Soft-adventurers who are participating in other winter destination activities such as downhill and cross-country skiing are prime targets. The snowmobile market is evenly distributed amongst age groups, with a significant portion 35 and over (60.1%). Almost three quarters are male and half travel with friends. While the median age is 41, many younger people are being introduced into the activity through family outings. While the activity has traditionally been male-dominated, there are an increasing number of women, couples, retirees and families participating associated with the general increase in the soft adventure market.

Snowmobiling is growing extremely fast, perhaps more so than any other outdoor activity, motorized or non-motorized. The increased demand and use is coming from residents, regional visitors and short-haul visitors. In the Morice Forest District, visiting snowmobilers tend be from the surrounding region. This market is self-guided and is not likely to be a major purchaser of guiding services. The majority have their own equipment and gas, food and accommodation services when they visit the region. In areas to the east, regional and Canadian short-haul visitors, primarily Alberta, are a key market segment, but the Morice is too distant to cater to these markets. Participation by US and international visitors is minor.

There are many good snowmobile destinations in the province with very good snow conditions and better proximity to key staging areas. The province-wide trail network being established by the BC Snowmobile Federation will improve access to quality terrain in adjacent communities, but it will also increase participation. Competition is not that significant within the region, as most snowmobilers are self-guided. A new operator offering guiding services would have to stimulate demand either by bringing in new visitors, or converting existing visitors to buyers of value-added services.

7.1.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

Land use and resource management is a major issue for snowmobiling, particularly where competing use pressures are high. While this is not a major factor in the study area at this time, the rising popularity of snowmobiling may create use pressures in the future. Land/resource managers can provide some assistance for resolving conflicts, with changes in legislation and policy, but there are really no mechanisms for forcing commercial operators (tenured and untenured), resident snowmobilers and unguided visiting snowmobilers to keep out of each others' way. Solutions are most likely to be worked out amongst the user groups themselves.

There are concerns about motorized winter recreation with some potential for access restriction. The Ministry of Air Water and Land Protection has worked with local clubs to negotiate snowmobile use in areas of wildlife use. For example, there are designated non-motorized areas within the Telkwa Caribou Recovery Area. Local clubs have also agreed to not use their snowmobiles on Morice Mountain if caribou are present.

Avalanches, inclement weather, clouds and resulting loss of visibility are hazards that are increasing in profile as sledders continue to push the limits advanced by technology. As the areas considered suitable for snowmobiling expand in the backcountry, there is a related increase in danger related to natural occurrences such as avalanches. Only 5 to 15 percent of snowmobile incidents occur on well-maintained, designated trails where 80 to 90 percent of snowmobiling takes place.[55] Operators have to be cognizant of their safety procedures and liability protection. An added issue in the Morice is lake and ice safety.

---

[55] "Snowmobiling Safety", Snowmobiling American Council of Snowmobile Associations website.

The cooperation of local snowmobilers is essential as it will be difficult to justify the investment in facilities on a strictly commercial basis. Any new use may conflict with areas frequented by local recreationists, including Houston and Smithers snowmobile clubs. There are existing agreements between user groups in the region. Snowmobilers and cross-country skiers have come to resolution on shared use of Morice Mountain, with each group using a separate part of the mountain. There is potential conflict in more remote areas between backcountry skiing and snowmobile use (e.g., Burnie Lakes, Starr Creek).

7.1.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

- A site should be 5 – 10 minutes from a town or service centre to take advantage of infrastructure, services such as fuel and mechanical, and hospitality (food, beverage, accommodation). Play areas must have a variety of terrain (ups, downs, flats). Long distance travel requires suitable accommodation and services linked together with a trail system.
- In the Morice, future access may be affected by deactivate roads – green up usually occurs within five to seven years and may restrict access.
- Improving infrastructure and hospitality services to encourage longer and more frequent trips is a key. Linking snowmobile development to the existing lodges and resorts is the easiest way to provide this level of services and amenities.
- Critical needs in the region include trail infrastructure, event development, and local land use planning. Adequate and secure parking is a requirement as expensive tow vehicles and trailers are left for long periods of time. Warm-up huts and cabins are a bonus for day riders and a requirement for multi-day hut-to-hut tours. Good signage is important for both convenience and safety reasons. An operations base is needed for repairs and maintenance. Fuel storage is another important requirement, both at the operations base and remote fuelling locations. Tour operators will need trailers and tow vehicles for hauling to and from trailheads.
- Tenure is not a critical issue because the amount of commercial guiding is low. Nearby accommodation, particularly if it provides direct access to trails, is a great advantage for capturing snowmobile business. Quality après snowmobile activities are a growing requirement for destination snowmobilers.
- There are moderate capital costs for a snowmobile guiding operation. A basic facility comprising trail building and minor service development would incur cash costs of at least $25,000 to $35,000.
- A new facility could be based on an all-season product (e.g. ATVs, motor cross in the summer). Developing trails in co-operation with off-season users such as hikers, mountain bikers and horseback riders would also facilitate development.

7.1.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

There is good resource attributes and snow conditions for snowmobiling throughout the District. The major limiting factors include distance from major regional markets and the lack of service infrastructure. Also, existing markets are self-guided and do not purchase guiding services. Communities can build on successes by creating more infrastructure and services aimed at attracting more of the regional market.

Snowmobiling is often seen as having significant negative affects on the backcountry in terms of conflicts with other users and the environment. Regulation and designation of areas and routes may occur in the future and limit development, but this should not be an issue in the near-term as use conflicts are low.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		**Babine (A&B)**	**Houston (C&D)**	**Southwest (E)**
Markets	Demand	Medium	Medium	Low
	Competition	High	High	High
	Overall potential	Medium	Medium	Low
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Medium	Medium	High
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Develop-ment Needs	Crown tenure	Low	Low	Low
	Infrastructure	Medium	Medium	High
	Capital	Medium	Medium	Medium
Employment opportunities		Medium-Low	Medium-Low	Low
Opportunities		• Linkages to neighbouring districts from Fort Babine; however, infrastructure is very limited. • Route development to and from Granisle and Topley Landing where there is good infrastructure.	• Close in areas (Morice, Dungate, East Telkwa) to Houston have excellent potential, but potential conflicts with local users would have to be well-managed.	• Good potential with high capability areas in outstanding scenic areas, but infrastructure and services are minimal.

Please see Exhibit 17 for a map showing Snowmobiling Suitability for the Morice Forest District.

Snowmobiling Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

Snowmobiling Ranking

▨ High Suitability

Moderate Suitability

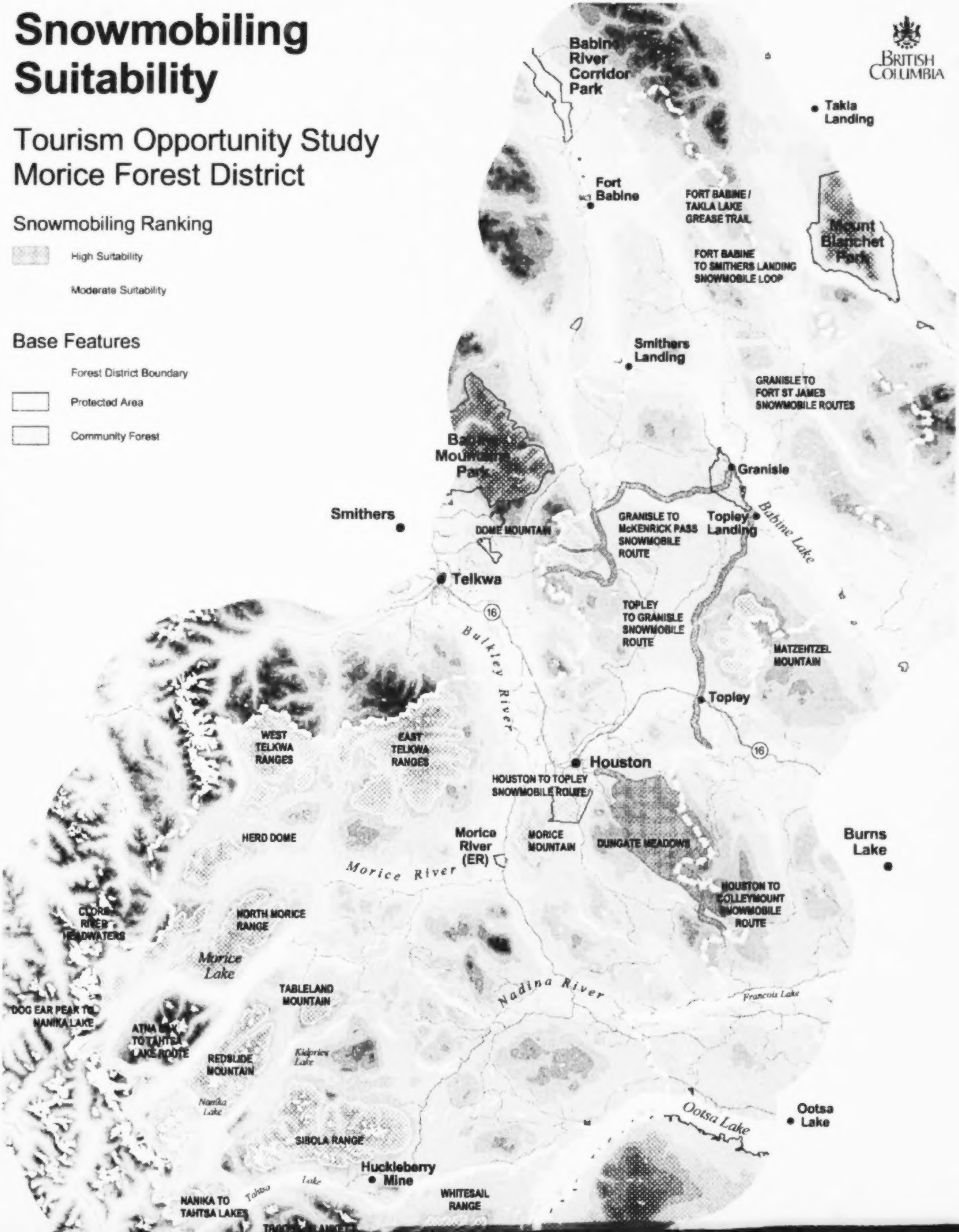
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

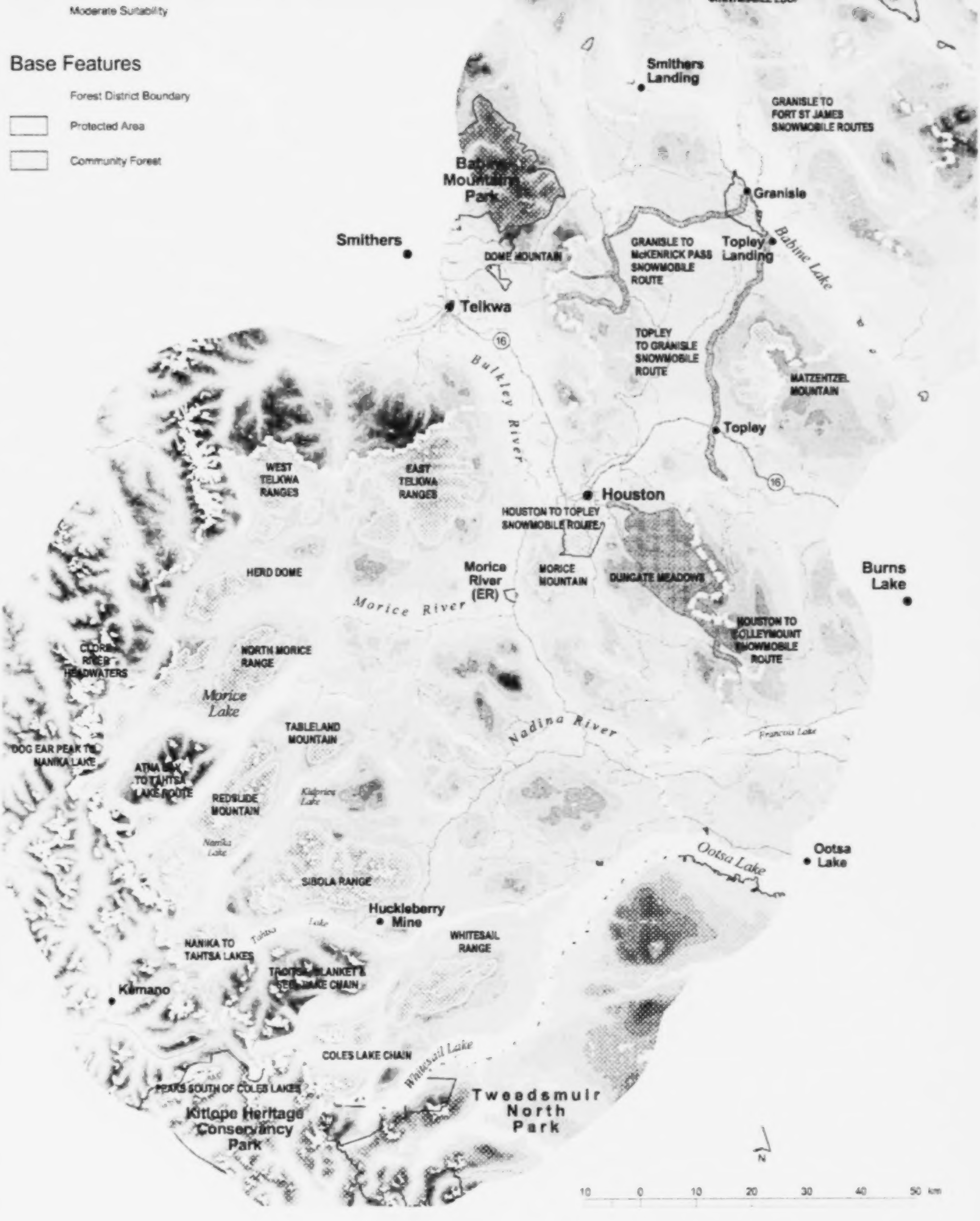
☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest

BRITISH COLUMBIA



Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
FORT BABINE / TAKLA LAKE GREASE TRAIL
Mount Blanchet Park
FORT BABINE TO SMITHERS LANDING SNOWMOBILE LOOP
Smithers Landing
GRANISLE TO FORT ST JAMES SNOWMOBILE ROUTES
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
DOME MOUNTAIN
GRANISLE TO McKENRICK PASS SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
TOPLEY TO GRANISLE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
16
HOUSTON TO TOPLEY SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
HERD DOME
Morice River (ER)
MORICE MOUNTAIN
DUNGATE MEADOWS
Burns Lake
Morice River
HOUSTON TO COLLEYMOUNT SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
NORTH MORICE RANGE
Morice Lake
Nadina River
Francois Lake
TABLELAND MOUNTAIN
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SIBOLA RANGE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
WHITESAIL RANGE
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES


Moderate Suitability
Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
Smithers Landing
GRANISLE TO FORT ST JAMES SNOWMOBILE ROUTES
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
DOME MOUNTAIN
GRANISLE TO McKENRICK PASS SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
TOPLEY TO GRANISLE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
16
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
HOUSTON TO TOPLEY SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
HERD DOME
Morice River (ER)
MORICE MOUNTAIN
DUNGATE MEADOWS
Burns Lake
Morice River
HOUSTON TO COLLEYMOUNT SNOWMOBILE ROUTE
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
NORTH MORICE RANGE
Morice Lake
TABLELAND MOUNTAIN
Nadina River
Francois Lake
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
ATNA LAKE TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SIBOLA RANGE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
WHITESAIL RANGE
TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN
Kemano
COLES LAKE CHAIN
Whitesail Lake
PEAKS SOUTH OF COLES LAKES
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
Tweedsmuir North Park
N
10
0
10
20
30
40
50 km

7.2 Historical Winter Adventure

7.2.1 Description

The Historical Winter Adventure Product is a tourism concept that incorporates a number of winter outdoor recreation activities that are founded in traditional use and in winter survival skills. The objective is to be part of the Canadian frontier - to interact with the land under the rigors of winter without undue discomfort.

The product incorporates winter activities with historical economic and survival activities such as trapping and ice fishing. Participants can use a lodge to return to or may follow a trapper cabin (or hut) system. Trapping requires the collaboration of a trapper licensed for the specified area. The latest humane trapping devices are to be used with explanations regarding traditional methods and use. Hunting is not included in the product but can be added with due consideration for licenses and regulations. Photography is a similar activity that requires tracking but is non-consumptive.

Traditional transportation systems are preferred with a focus on snowshoeing, cross country skiing and dog sledding. Instructional sessions on the techniques of trapping and the various transport activities are integral to the product. Different levels of rigor can be provided ranging from a "soft" product where modern amenities are furnish to an "extreme" product where minimal comforts are provided and the life and hardships of historical times are emulated. Trapped animals may not be a necessary component of this product rather it is the interpretation of methods in which the animals are trapped that is of importance.

A large part of this product is the linkage to history of the First Nations and the early pioneers. It means to emulate some aspects of the lifestyles. Traditional methods of transport and of trapping may be discussed and included unless it results in unnecessary duress to the participant or is inhumane to the animals. Interpretation of tracks on the snow, of techniques for ensuring success in trapping, of fishing methods under ice and in streams, of tracking game, of the history of the land and its people are integral. Songs, ritual, stories and other known winter social activities can be provided through a lodge. Modern conveniences are there to compliment the experience.

7.2.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Lengthy cold winters. Presence of trappers and local knowledge. Presence of existing lodges and areas of high hut and lodge potential. Proximity of sled dogs. Accessibility.
Weaknesses	Lack of existing markets or product development. Lack of interest among existing resorts/lodges for winter operation. Winter harvesting may affect the solitude insome areas.
Concerns	Increasing loss of old growth valley bottom forest. Need for significant coordination among package contributors (e.g. resorts, trappers, guides). The threat of cultural appropriation and lack of authenticity in Aboriginal 'related' products

7.2.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

The Morice Forest District has long cold winters suitable for this product. The balance of remoteness and access allows for a backcountry "wilderness" opportunity within relative reach of lodges and other service providers. The ecosystems are rich in game and small mammals. The numerous lakes provide opportunities for ice fishing.

This product links closely with other products identified in this document. Reference to specific product analysis will provide for opportunities specific to those activities. These include:

- **Destination Lodges**
- **Hut Systems**
- **Freshwater Activities** (non-motorized)

What has not been discussed are:

- **Ice fishing** - Ice fishing requires the perfect fishing spot. The drilling with an ice auger of a large hole completely through the ice until open water can be seen. An ice chisel is then used to widen the hole. A skimmer is used to scoop out slush or chips from the fishing hole. Some people use chainsaws for cutting both the ice hole and firewood. Some sportsmen bring tents or ice fishing huts to protect them from the wind. Fires are often built on the ice to provide warmth. People pull sleds or use snowmobiles to bring in supplies. A few come with the family for the entire day, packing stoves to make hot drinks and food. Skating rinks are a secondary activity particularly amongst the young. A primary concern for ice fishing is the carrying capacity of fish in a lake during winter and thus the ability of the resource to provide a tourism ice fishing product[56]. The factors and concerns include:
    - Ice fishing is very "consumptive" – catch and release does not work well
    - Small, un-stocked lakes can not sustain heavy ice fishing pressure
    - The sustainability of small lake ice-fishing would depend on the ability of commercial operators to rotate use.
    - Small lakes may not have the capability to sustain both local and commercial recreation use
    - Larger lakes with good natural fish recruitment would be best suited for ice fishing tourism
    - BC Angling regulations do not provide many tools for managing ice fishing – waters are either open or closed, the level of angling effort is not regulated
- **Snowshoeing** - this activity has reached a renaissance with a wide variety of snowshoes available providing for a range of conditions. Basically, the activity takes place over loose snow and the object of a snowshoe is to prevent the individual from sinking into the snow. It can be easier to snowshoe a forested landscape than it is to ski as it is easier to get around obstacles and navigate up & down hills.
- **Nordic Skiing** - in this instance light touring skis are required. Activity takes place on un-groomed trails but ones in which the route is clear and easily followed.
- **Dog sledding** - a complex activity that requires the use of dogs to pull a sled. A number of dog sledders are found in the Bulkley Valley and the town of Telkwa holds an annual race which is part of a western Canada dog sled racing circuit.
- **Trapping** - not a recreational activity in the normal sense, it is principally accepted as an economic activity. However, the activity takes place in the backcountry, where the experience of solitude and naturalness dominates. Many trappers use machines to access the staging point for

---

[56] information provided by Dana Atagai, Fisheries section with the Ministry of Land, Water and Air Protection in Smithers

their trap lines and even to get to their traps. The product would be of greater interest if non-motorized access to the traps was used, thereby evoking a idealistic image of a time past.

7.2.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

The potential opportunities are closely linked to the vicinity of the Destination Lodge product in areas that have high presence of fur bearing animals. The supportive presence of lakes, rivers, snowmobile routes and hut systems all enhance the opportunity.

A matrix was developed which evaluated historical winter adventure opportunities based on proximity to existing or potential destination lodge or hut systems, ice fishing opportunities, and trapping opportunities.

Points for lodge or hut systems

One or two points were given for any polygons which either contained, or were near, potential Lodge or Hut systems. Points were give for either lodge or hut systems, whichever was rated higher in our related assessments elsewhere in this report. If either huts or lodges already exist but were not given a high or moderate rating in the product assessment, associated polygons were still given one point in the assessment matrix for winter adventure.

Points for Ice fishing opportunities (Tun'dah Chlokh hustetah)

Two points were given for any lakes rated as high in a separate assessment of ice fishing opportunities. Individual lakes with moderate potential for ice fishing were given one point. One point was given for groupings of lakes.

Exhibit 18: Ice Fishing Opportunities

Polygon #	Lake	Group	Ice fishing
A 2	Morrison Lake		**High**
A 4	Natowite Lake		**High**
B 1,2, 3,4,	Babine Lake		**High**
C 3 B	Fulton Lake		**High**
C 15A	Tagetochlain Lake (Poplar Lake)	Yes	**High**
C 16A	Nadina Lake	Yes	**High**
C 19	Francois Lake		**High**
A 5A	Tochcha Lake		Moderate
A 3	Nakinilerak/Hautete Lake Chain	Yes	Moderate
A 5 B, C	Nizik and Big Loon Lakes		Moderate
C 4	Paul Lake		Moderate
C14A, B, C15B, C16B, C17, C18A, B, C, C31	Goosly, Parrott, Owen, Newcombe, Bill Nye, Bittern, McBride, Collins, Sweeney Lakes	Yes	Moderate
C 20 A, B, E16	Ootsa and Whitesail Lakes, Tahtsa Lake, Tahtsa Reach,		Moderate
D 1	Front Country Lakes - Helen, Irrigation, Barrett and Klinger	Yes	Moderate
E 15B	Nanika & Kidprice Lakes	Yes	Moderate
E 17	Troitsa Lake		Moderate

Points for trapping interpretation (Nabuz Nelth-tun)

Potential for trapping interpretation was judged to be highest in valley bottom areas with old growth forest as suggested by Wildlife Biologists with WLAP. Old growth mapping is currently underway for the Morice District but maps are not yet available. The existence of old growth was projected by reviewing the current road network mapping and the current mapping of forestry operable limits. Valley bottom areas outside of the operable forest or away from the existing road network were given 2 points. Smaller, un-harvested valley bottom areas closer to the forest road network were given 1 point. Areas which have been heavily harvested were given no points.

No points have been provided for Nordic skiing, snowshoeing and snowmobiling, because these are complimentary activities that can take place under less rigid circumstances. Dog-sledding opportunities have been noted outside the area and would require transport.

7.2.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

The following areas have been identified as having high and moderate suitability for the winter products based on the criteria established above.

C 3b	**Fulton Lake:** High rating for lodges, ice fishing and trapping.	**High**
A 3	**Nakinilerak/Hautete Lake Chain:** High rating for trapping and moderate for huts, ice fishing. Lake grouping.	**High**
C 15b	**Bittern/Bill Nye Lakes:** High rating for trapping and moderate for lodge, ice fishing. Lake grouping.	**High**
C 18c	**Tsichgass Lakes:** High rating for lodge and moderate for huts, ice fishing and trapping. Lake grouping.	**High**
E 15b	**Nanika & Kidprice Lakes:** High rating for trapping and moderate for huts, ice fishing. Lake grouping.	**High**
E 17	**Troitsa, Blanket & Seel Lake Chain:** High rating for trapping and moderate for huts, ice fishing. Lake grouping.	**High**
B 1	**Babine Lake - Northwest Arm:** High rating for ice fishing and trapping and moderate for lodge.	**High**
B 2	**Babine Lake - Morrison Arm:** High rating for ice fishing and lodge and moderate for trapping.	**High**
B 3	**Babine Lake - Western Side:** High rating for ice fishing and lodge and moderate for trapping.	**High**
C 12b	**Lower Morice River:** High rating for hut and lodge and moderate for trapping.	**High**
E 8a	**Atna Lake:** High rating for lodge and trapping and moderate for ice fishing.	**High**
C 15a	**Tagetochlain Lake (Poplar Lake):** High rating for ice fishing and moderate for huts. Lake grouping.	Moderate
C 16a	**Nadina Lake:** High rating for ice fishing and moderate for trapping. Lake grouping.	Moderate
E 15a	**Lamprey, Anzac & Stepp Lakes:** High rating for trapping and moderate for huts. Lake grouping.	Moderate
E 3b	**Burnie Lakes:** High rating for trapping and moderate for lodge. Lake grouping.	Moderate
A 2	**Morrison Lake:** High rating for ice fishing and trapping.	Moderate
A 5b	**Nizik Lake:** High rating for lodge and moderate for ice fishing and trapping.	Moderate
A 5c	**Big Loon Lake:** Moderate for ice fishing, lodge and trapping.	Moderate
B 4	**Babine Lake - Eastern Bays and Islands:** High for ice fishing and moderate for lodge.	Moderate
C 12 a	**Upper Morice River:** High for hut and moderate for trapping.	Moderate
C 19	**Francois Lake:** High for ice fishing and moderate for lodge.	Moderate
C 4	**Paul Lake:** Moderate for ice fishing, lodge and trapping.	Moderate
C17	**Owen Lake:** Moderate for ice fishing, lodge and trapping.	Moderate
C31	**Sweeney Lake:** Moderate for ice fishing and thigh for trapping.	Moderate
E 16	**Tahtsa Lake & Tahtsa Reach:** Moderate for ice fishing and thigh for trapping.	Moderate

7.2.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
A 2	Morrison Lake	Mod
A 3	Nakinilerak/Hautete Lake Chain	**High**
A 5b	NIZIK LAKE	Mod
A 5c	BIG LOON LAKE	Mod
B 1	Babine Lake - Northwest Arm	**High**
B 2	Babine Lake - Morrison Arm	**High**
B 3	Babine Lake - Western Side	**High**
B 4	Babine Lake - Eastern Bays And Islands	Mod
C 12 a	Upper Morice River	Mod
C 12b	Lower Morice River	**High**
C 15a	TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)	Mod
C 15b	BITTERN/BILL NYE LAKES	**High**
C 16a	Nadina Lake	Mod
C 18c	TSICHGASS LAKES	**High**
C 19	FRANCOIS LAKE	Mod
C 3b	Fulton Lake	**High**
C 4	Paul Lake	Mod
C17	Owen Lake	Mod
C31	Sweeney Lake	Mod
E 15a	LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES	Mod
E 15b	NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES	**High**
E 16	TAHTSA LAKE & TAHTSA REACH	Mod
E 17	Troits, Blanket & Seel Lake Chain	**High**
E 3b	Burnie Lakes	Mod
E 8a	Atna Lake	**High**

7.2.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.2.3.1 MARKETS

The winter adventure product can include a number of activities including dog sledding, cross-country skiing, snowshoeing, tobogganing, ice fishing and ice/rock climbing.

The demographic profile varies enormously for these activities, but generally, the more strenuous and risky the activity, the more it will appeal to the younger, under-34 age groups. While most winter activities in our list do not involve much personal safety risk, they do occur in cold weather and so would only be classified as soft if the amenities, comfort and service were to virtually offset the low temperature setting. Until those conditions are met, the appeal to the over-45 age group will be limited.

The harder the activity the more likely it will appeal to mean. Winter products such as dog sledding the wildlife viewing in winter have a strong appeal for women. International markets with the greatest interest in winter activities include the US, followed by Germany. Japan and France, both of which are small factors in the BC adventure market, have are the two largest markets for dog-sledding in Eastern Canada and the NWT.

The region does not have a developed winter tourism product or market. Few of the resorts and lodges in the region are open during the winter, despite their proximity to key features such as lakefronts. Since the region itself has only a very limited winter market (i.e. snowmobiling and downhill skiing) and since both of these are regional (e.g. Terrace, Prince Rupert, Prince George) markets, it appears that the best opportunity for developing a winter product line is with the regional market.

The challenge for local development is that the regional market is not high spending and thus is unlikely to purchase a high-value, packaged product.

Major competitors for these types of winter activities would include the northern Territories, and Quebec.

7.2.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

Several of the activities are consumptive in nature and thus concern issues of sustainability and use. Trapping and ice fishing, in particular, engage in wildlife harvesting and may possibly conflict with resource management planning and objectives. Small lakes that are not regularly stocked would be susceptible ice fishing pressure. Conflicts with resident users would also be a possible issue. Since BC is not known as an ice fishing region, resource managers do not exercise much control over activity.

On Crown land, good terrain is likely to be valued by other users and may conflict with the visitor experience depending on activity being undertaken. For skiers, conflicts with snowmobilers are well documented. The actual area needed for ski touring is not that large (e.g. 20 square kilometres) compared to other backcountry users like Heli-skiing and snowmobiling.

Conflicts with forest activity is also a potential issue, especially for activities like skiing and dog sledding where there is an expectation of unmodified landscapes.

Where a trap line is intended for development as a tourism experience there would have to be good coordination on timing of use. There are over sixty-two trapping territories in the Morice, with each potentially having several registered trappers who may or may not be actively trapping. There may also be activity by assistant trappers who have been given permission from the registered trapline holders.

7.2.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

Canadian studies on winter activities other than skiing and snowmobiling suggested revenue opportunities that are well below the average for other outdoor adventure businesses. For example, in 1995, the average dog sledding outfit in Canada (most of which were based in the Yukon, NWT or Quebec) averaged $55,000 in revenues, although operating margins were considered good. One of the reasons for the low revenues is the limited operating season. Many winter vacations are associated with calendar holidays like Christmas, New Years and Spring Break. Most North Americans bank their work holidays for the summer, thus limiting their opportunity to travel in winter.

Infrastructure requirements are moderate as many of these activities rely upon trail use. Convenience of access and perhaps backcountry accommodation will attract more users. The potential for linking activities to backcountry huts and cabins would allow for multi-activities in a given day and also allow for multi-day trips.

Development may require a CR tenure if the use were frequent enough. This way, non-compatible activities could be controlled and restricted.

7.2.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

The potential for this product is average because at present there is very little product development or market awareness. Except for snowmobiling and skiing, there is not a significant demand for secondary pursuits. The fact that the existing resorts/lodges pursue few if any winter activities is indicative of how difficult it is to develop a viable winter clientele. There are some high quality lodges in very close proximity to high quality winter features such as ice fishing on Babine Lake yet the market has never been cultivated.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		**Babine (A&B)**	**Houston (C&D)**	**Southwest (E)**
Markets	Demand	Low	Medium	Medium
	Competition	High	High	High
	Overall potential	Low	Medium	Medium
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Low	Low	Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Develop-ment Needs	Crown tenure	Low	Low	Low
	Infrastructure	Low	Medium	Medium
	Capital	Low	Low	Low
Employment opportunities		Low	Low	Low
Opportunities		• Babine and Fulton lakes - good combination of existing resort facilities and quality ice fishing and trapping experience.	• Tsichgass Lakes – lake grouping with high lodge potential for winter products.	• High quality wilderness experience on Nanika/Kidprice and Troitsa/Seel but access and remoteness limit potential.

Please see Exhibit 19 for a map showing historical winter adventure suitability.

Historical Winter Adventure Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

BRITISH COLUMBIA

Historical Winter Adventure Ranking

▨ High Suitability

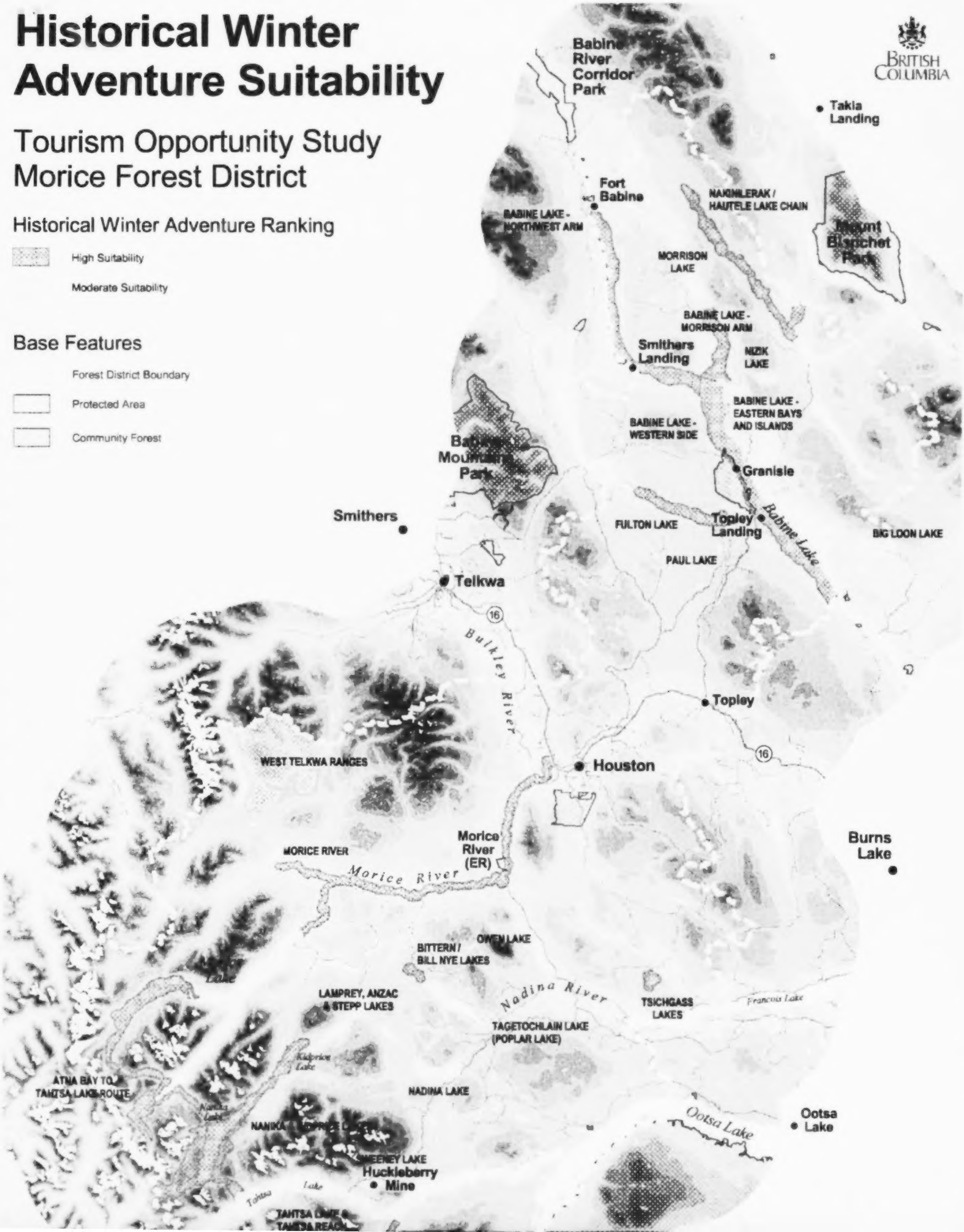
Moderate Suitability

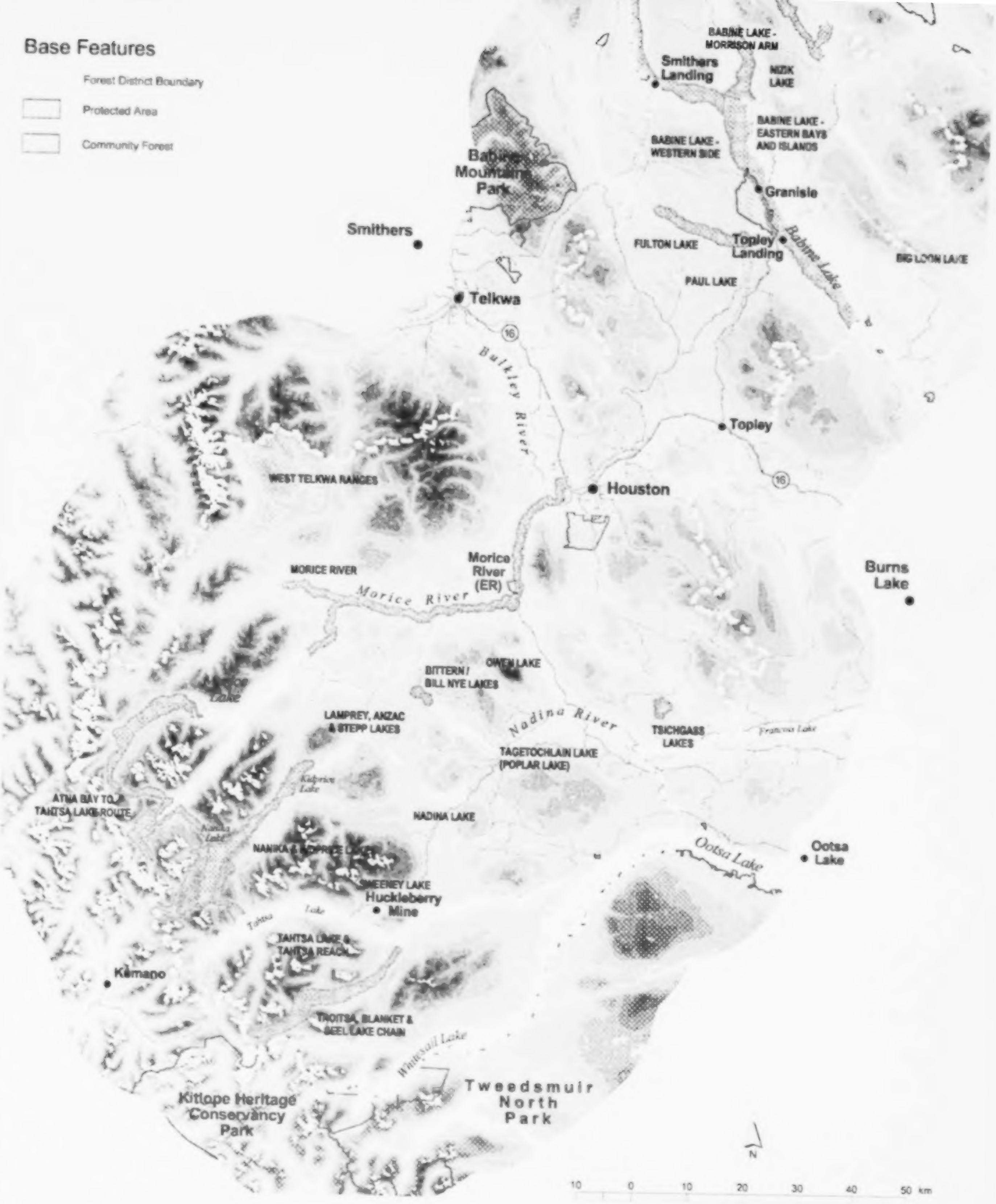
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest


Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
BABINE LAKE - NORTHWEST ARM
NAKINILERAK / HAUTETE LAKE CHAIN
Mount Blanchet Park
MORRISON LAKE
BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM
Smithers Landing
NIZIK LAKE
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
FULTON LAKE
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
BIG LOON LAKE
PAUL LAKE
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
16
Houston
WEST TELKWA RANGES
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Morice River
Burns Lake
OWEN LAKE
BITTERN / BILL NYE LAKES
Lake
LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES
Nadina River
TSICHGASS LAKES
Francois Lake
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Kidprice Lake
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Nanika Lake
NADINA LAKE
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
NANIKA / KIDPRICE LAKES
SWEENEY LAKE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
TAHTSA LAKE & TAHTSA REACH


Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM
Smithers Landing
NIZIK LAKE
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
FULTON LAKE
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
BIG LOON LAKE
PAUL LAKE
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
WEST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
16
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Morice River
Burns Lake
Morice Lake
OWEN LAKE
BITTERN / BILL NYE LAKES
LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES
Nadina River
TSICHGASS LAKES
Francois Lake
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Kidprice Lake
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Nanika Lake
NADINA LAKE
NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SWEENEY LAKE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
TAHTSA LAKE & TAHTSA REACH
Kemano
TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10 0 10 20 30 40 50 km

7.3 Fresh Water Activity: Non-motorized (Canoeing, Rafting, Kayaking, Drifting and Associated River Activities) – Na'kiyhe

7.3.1 Description

This water activity product includes an array of recreation activities utilizing canoes, kayaks, rafts and smaller skiffs (may be motorized with small engines) as a means to travel along a fast to slow moving river. Complementary features such as scenery, sport fish, wildlife, beaches, waterfalls, rapids, pools, ledges, standing waves, other water features and recreation sites and water access allow for more diverse product development. These activities can be closely linked on one hand to an "activity experience" as in whitewater kayaking or rafting or to an interpretive and instructional product, for example where the proper methods for fly fishing are imparted. Cultural heritage can be an important part of the a "tour" component of freshwater activities.

Water activities are principally divided into two different groups: Flat water and Whitewater.

Flatwater activities include:

- Lake related recreation 1) Pleasure canoeing, often to fish, on smaller lakes where wind is not a major factor or 2) Canoe tripping on lake chains (a string of lakes that may require portages along creeks that cannot be navigated.
- River related flatwater recreation usually involves paddling in open canoes; generally these are day trips but can include multi-day trips.

Whitewater recreation activities

- Focused on rivers, the opportunity is part of an "activity experience" and requires swift running water.

7.3.2 Regional SWOT Summary

Strengths	A wide variety of flatwater in the district. Strengths of the river include world class fishing, a range of natural settings, access to the river and lake opportunities, wilderness. Wildlife viewing opportunities are excellent. The use of non-motorized vehicles are highly acceptable to hereditary chiefs
Weaknesses	The majority of the rivers are unsuitable for whitewater activities and thus provide limited opportunities.
Concerns	For the Bulkley River, the continuous growth of use may lead to deterioration of the river experience. Timber harvesting visible from the lakes and rivers affects the setting hence experience of the activity.

7.3.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

The Morice Forest district has numerous lakes and rivers suitable for freshwater activities. Many locations offer exceptional scenery, great fishing and a number are quite easy to access.

The primary opportunities associated with *flatwater activities on* the rivers and lakes in the Study Area include:

- ***World class fishing:*** The Morice and Bulkley rivers are internationally renowned for world class fishing.
- ***Natural Settings including un-dammed rivers:*** The rivers have a range of settings that extend from the primitive (along the upper Morice) to the rural (along the lower Morice and Bulkley). The views from the rivers range from predominantly natural to wilderness. None of the rivers are dammed.
- ***Numerous lakes and the presence of lake chains:*** many lakes suitable for canoeing, lake chain opportunities - one well known and three lesser-known opportunities.
- ***Single and multi day opportunities:*** The large lakes and extensive river systems allow for multi-day opportunities. Access to the rivers allow for single day opportunities with entry and egress points.
- ***Long paddling season:*** The rivers are noted for a paddling season that extends from March to October.

Whitewater recreation opportunities are limited to the Nanika River and potentially the Burnie River.

The freshwater activity products can be linked to the culture and heritage of the region through interpretation and awareness building. The Wet'suwet'en First Nations people have historically derived their sustenance from the bounty of the land. The abundance allowed time for arts and ritual. The First Nations continued presence as a people and the subtle historical evidence of their relationship to the natural surroundings can heighten the feeling of mystery and wonder for the recreationist.

7.3.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

Potential canoeing and rafting areas were evaluated based on the following features:

Scenery

- A very scenic location – enjoying the scenery is generally one of the top reasons for taking a holiday

Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities)

- A location where no logging is visible or will be in the future – the highest quality scenery is usually considered to be that in which there is minimal sign of civilization

Climate and Winds

- The sunniest and driest climate is generally most suitable, with the optimum aspect to the SE and SW. Low or predictable winds are important in lakes particularly larger ones where there is the added danger of wave action.

Access (paved/gravel road, air)

- Backcountry expeditions require remoteness. Access to a staging area by road or through fixed wing or helicopter access are needed to transport the boats. Any semblance of roads or human activity must be non-existent or minimal.

- For mid-country and single day entries, access to the entry and egress points are of importance.

Level of difficulty (water class levels)

- Pertaining primarily to whitewater opportunities - a consistent whitewater class of river that offers challenge coupled with the presence of "play areas" is highly sought. Rivers broken up by extremely difficult sections of river are constrained by those sections unless a point of egress allows for a portage or departure by those not skilled to challenge the section.

Level of existing use (popular locally?)

- This is dependent on the perception of remoteness of the participant (the setting). If there is a perception of wilderness backcountry then the expectation is of few encounters. The closer to the front country the higher the tolerance for a greater number of encounters.

Other recreation opportunities (camp, fish, wildlife viewing, beaches, hut to hut, hiking)

- Flatwater boating opportunities are enhanced by the availability of other recreation opportunities. Flatwater river expeditions can be linked to fishing lessons, or wildlife and cultural viewing and interpretation. The presence of beaches, trails, huts and other activity linked features increases the value of a flatwater boating recreation experience.

Cultural features

- The presence of Wet'suwet'en or early European cultural features enhances a lodge experience by providing a sense of history and continuity to the landscape.

7.3.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

A 2 MORRISON LAKE

Larger lake that is on a historical trail between Babine Lake and a Grease Trail to the north.

- Scenery - scenic mountain peaks to east and west
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Fringe of trees around lake screens evidence of human resource activity.
- Climate and Winds - Cool sub-boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone.
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - accessed from nearby forest roads – land access requires crossing Lake Babine via forest industry barge or hiking from Ft. Babine, also floatplane access
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - Flatwater
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) Very little use at present.
- Other recreation opportunities (camp, fish, wildlife viewing, beaches, hut to hut, hiking) very good fishing Potential camping, wildlife viewing.
- Cultural features - Historic location of fish hatchery.
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**

- **Rationale**: Wilderness scenery, wildlife and fishing all make this trip attractive but it is difficult to access and therefore has only moderate potential to attract tourism use.

Cultural/heritage: High propensity for cultural/heritage sites. Contact: Lake Babine Nation

A 3 NAKINILERAK LAKE CHAIN

Three lakes joined by slow moving Hautete Creek, likely with beaver dams. Two forest road access points.

- Scenery Scenic - mountain peaks in distance. Sub-boreal spruce forest and wetlands surrounding lakes and creek.
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Little evidence of human resource activity, except for two crossings by the Hautete forest service road.
- Climate and Winds - Cool Sub-boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone.
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - Air access, road access requires crossing Lake Babine on forest industry barge and more than an hours travel on gravel forest roads
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) – flatwater, likely some portaging required over beaver dams
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - there is likely almost no use at present.
- Other recreation opportunities - Trophy sized lake trout., Camping, wildlife viewing.
- Cultural features – Contact: Lake Babine Nation
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Wilderness scenery, wildlife and fishing all make this trip attractive but it is difficult to access and therefore has only moderate potential to attract tourism use

C 3 A UPPER FULTON RIVER

A shallow river (dragging/portaging required) surrounded by extensive wetlands,.

- Scenery - Scenic river and wetlands, Babine Mountains to the west
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - considerable harvesting in area, the view from the river is mostly natural in appearance
- Climate and Winds - Cool sub-boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone.
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - accessed via the Babine Lake forest road from Smithers (approximately 1 hour)
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) – Flatwater, portaging and dragging necessary in low water
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) -, very little use of the river by local users
- Other recreation opportunities - high wildlife viewing values,

- Cultural features – Contact: Lake Babine Nation, Office of Wet'suwet'en—Access via W1, L8, S3, S4
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**:

C 5 A,B,C PINE TREE, DORIS AND TANGLECHAIN LAKES

Three small lakes with MOF Recreation sites accessible from the Babine Lake Road.

- Scenery - Very scenic views of Babine Ranges to the west
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Surrounded by timber harvesting, little is visible from these lakes..
- Climate and Winds - Cool sub-boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone. Small lakes protected from the wind by surrounding forest
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - The Lake Babine forest road provides access from Smithers (approximately 1 hr) while the Chapman FSR provides access from Houston (approximately 1.5 hours)
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - Flatwater
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - All sites are popular camping and fishing locations.,
- Other recreation opportunities - Fishing, camping, hiking.
- Cultural features – Contact: Lake Babine Nation; Office of Wet'suwet'en via Access- W1, L8, S3, S4-
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**:

C 12 A,B THE MORICE RIVER(WED ZEN KWE):

A clear river that emerges from Morice Lake to join the Bulkley river near Houston. The river provides opportunities for drifting and canoeing and is internationally renowned for fishing. It also contains numerous features including pools, beaches, forest, and meadows. A multi-day excursion with a string of campsites or huts is ideal for this river. Heavy rains result in turbid waters.

- Scenery - Very scenic
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Surrounding forests have been extensively harvested, little harvesting is visible from the river
- Climate and Winds Biogeoclimatic Zone – The River is mostly within the Sub-boreal Spruce (SBS) from Lamprey Creek downstream the river is in the SBSdk subzone - the driest and sunniest zone in the Morice District
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - numerous good access points from the Morice River FSR
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) , except for the upper 5 – 10 km which has some class 2-3 water, the river is mostly a float trip

- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - popular locally but the level of use is low,
- Other recreation opportunities (camp, fish, wildlife viewing, beaches, hut to hut, hiking) - good fishing, wildlife viewing opportunities for camping, beaches for picnics, potential to make a multi-day trip with one or two cabins between Morice Lake and a take out in either Telkwa or Smithers
- Cultural features - Potential for First Nations interpretation exists throughout this river. Archeological sites occur on the river , Traditional use areas, Hunting, fishing & gathering sites, campsites, village sites; O ther areas of interest: C'ilatiy to'stan Weduhszanlie; De'wan nee le eh, Tat'leye'tezlie, mus dzeedul mooh, Unes yex, C'eltay toostanii kwe, Tel get the, Nel beets kwe, Bii wanii C'eek, Wedzen kwe, Dzengoz'aay, Talgeeyus, Cil tal toss tan quah, Weduhs zanlie; Map reference: W2, W4, W5, W6; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale:** A very scenic river, good fishing, good camping, good access, easy floating, wildlife viewing opportunities

C 13 THE NADINA RIVER (NIIT'ANLII)

A shallow winding river with a large sockeye run.

- Scenery - Views are generally of forested river edge, few mountains visible, some wetlands along the lower reaches.
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Surrounded by timber harvesting but many stretches where none is visible.
- Climate and Winds - Within the SBS biogeoclimatic zone, the lower half of the river is in the SBSdk (drier/sunnier subzone).
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) – several access points along the old Morice/Tahtsa FSR.
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) – easy, Portaging and dragging required in low water.
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - Very little use of the river except where it is accessible to forest roads.
- Other recreation opportunities - Potential camping/multi day trip. High fish values (fishing and viewing), high wildlife values (particularly in the lower reach wetlands near Francois Lake.
- Cultural features – campsites, archaeological sites, traditional use sites, hunting & gathering areas, trails; Other areas of interest: Niit agh Ben, Neetl'anlii Ts'anlii, Tl'ook wecoo, Tagetochlain, Us tsa la, heht bin, Nitl'anlii ts'anlii; Map reference: G7; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Shallow water would make this river less attractive to many users, therefore it has been given a moderate ability to attract tourists to a canoe product

C14A MCBRIDE, C15A POPLAR, C16A NADINA, C17 OWEN, C18A PARROTT C18B GOOSLY, C18C TSICHGASS, AND C31 SWEENEY LAKES

Mid country, medium sized lakes. All but Tsichgass and Goosly have MOF recreation sites (McBride has MOF cabin).

- Scenery - Views are generally of forested hills and lakeshore, few mountains visible.
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - All surrounded by timber harvesting although most of the shoreline remains in a natural state.
- Climate and Winds - Owen, Goosly and Tsichgass are within the SBSdk (dry/sunny) biogeoclimatic zone, all the rest are in the SBSmc (moist/cold) biogeoclimatic zone.
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - accessed from forest roads, generally within an hours drive of Houston.
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) – flatwater, surrounding forests protect paddlers from the wind
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) -). All popular locally for camping, canoeing, boating and fishing
- Other recreation opportunities - Camping, fishing, boating.
- Cultural features – Village sites, archaeological features, campsites, trails, hunting, fishing & gathering areas, gravesites; Other areas of interest: Lootdzes teezlii, lootdzes tl'aat, lootdzes ben, Dziglus Bec'e'aal k'eet, Taki Kwe, Tac'its'olh'en: Map Reference: W3, G2, G7, W4, W6, T3, L9; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Broman Lake Band
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Lack of especially scenic areas and surrounding timber harvesting give these lakes only moderate ability to attract users to a canoeing product

D 1 SUNSET, BARRETT, IRRIGATION, KLINGER AND HELEN LAKES

Small lakes,.

- Scenery - generally surrounded by forested landscapes with few distant views
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Harvesting is not visible, some rural homesteads nearby, summer camps on Barrett and Irrigation Lakes.
- Climate and Winds - All but Helen are within the SBSdk – driest and sunniest biogeoclimatic zone in the Morice district.
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - accessible from highway 16 (within 15 minutes) or rural gravel roads,
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) – flatwater, surrounding forest protects lakes from the wind
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - high use by locals for canoeing, boating and fishing

- Other recreation opportunities - Camping at Sunset and Helen Lakes. Beaches at Irrigation and Sunset Lakes
- Cultural features – Archaeological features, traditional use sites, hunting, fishing & gathering areas, gravesites, village sites, settlements, trails; Map reference: L2, L3, S3, S4, G8, T2; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en.
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Small lakes, not especially scenic, high use by locals are all factors which give these lakes only moderate capability of attracting additional tourism use

D3 BULKLEY RIVER

- **Scenery** – rural farming landscapes, often hidden by river bank
- **Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities)** – Much of the landscape is rural farming.
- **Climate and Winds** -within the SBSdk – driest and sunniest biogeoclimatic zone in the Morice district.
- **Access (paved/gravel road, air)** - accessible from highway 16 at Houston, the Walcott Road at the Walcott suspension bridge and at the Quick bridge in the Bulkley Forest District
- **Level of difficulty (water class levels)** – flatwater, with a few riffles
- **Level of existing use (popular locally?)** - moderate use by locals for canoeing, relatively high use by anglers during the summer and fall fishing season
- **Other recreation opportunities** - fishing, picnicking, tubing
- **Cultural features** – Hunting, fishing & gathering areas, trails, village sites, meeting gathering area, Map reference: L9, S3, L8, W1 L1, G1; Other areas of interest: Known Wet'suwet'en cultural sites near Emerson Creek; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en, Moricetown Band
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Landscape less scenic than the Morice River, requires more work to paddle as it can be slower water than the Morice River

E 2 THE BURNIE RIVER(TALDZEE WEYEEZ TS'ANLI) FROM BURNIE LAKES TO THE CLORE RIVER (OOYENI)

- Scenery - very scenic, wilderness river, high snow clad peaks to the north and the southwest
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Natural.
- Climate and Winds - Within the Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone, wetter and somewhat warmer than the SBS zone.
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - Access at present time would have to be fly-in. Future forest roads will make this river more accessible.
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - level of difficulty not known though some class 3 water is likely

- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - It is likely that very little recreation use occurs on this river.
- Other recreation opportunities - wilderness river, wildlife viewing, camping, hiking on river flats
- Cultural features – Hunting, fishing & gathering areas, campsites, trails; Map reference: L7, G6, T1, S2; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Difficulty in accessing this area and lack of knowledge about water conditions lead to a moderate rating – it is possible that better access and attractive water conditions could give this river a high ability to attract use in the future.

E 8 A ATNA LAKE (C'ENEELEE BEN)

- Scenery - Scenery is spectacular, glaciated peaks of coastal range in background, Upper Atna River delta
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) – wilderness lake with Guide Outfitter cabin, no timber harvesting nearby
- Climate and Winds - Atna Lake is within the Coastal Hemlock Biogeoclimatic zone, the wettest part of the Morice District
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - A portage trail from Atna Bay provides access for boaters on Morice Lake, otherwise access is via floatplane
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - flatwater.
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - Most use on the lake is likely by walkers coming up the trail, low levels of use.
- Other recreation opportunities - fishing, camping, beaches, island, cabin (Nanika Guiding)..
- Cultural features – Known Wet'suwet'en heritage sites in the area, hunting, fishing & gathering areas, traditional trails, village sites; Map Reference: W2, G2; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en .
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Although this is a very attractive lake, difficulty in accessing the area gives it only a moderate capability of attracting tourists to a canoeing product. However, a resort associated with the area would increase attractiveness to high.

E 15A LAMPREY, STEPP & ANZAC LAKES (LHUDIS BIN)

Ironically the lakes which are normally canoed under the aegis of Nanika/Kidprice are Lamprey, Stepp and Anzac (not Nanika & Kidprice). Most people do not portage their canoes through on the final lengthy portage to Kidprice Lake and the only people who usually canoe on Nanika lake are clients flown there by Nanika Guiding.

- Scenery -The lake chain is scenic, becoming more so the further down the chain one travels.

- Naturalness - other than portage trails, campsites and Outfitter cabins on Kidprice Lake, the lake chain is undisturbed by human activity
- Climate and Winds - Afternoon westerly winds can push up big waves and make travel hazardous.
- Access - Approximately 73 kms by gravel forestry roads from Highway 16 to the Lamprey Lake launching point
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - flatwater with sections of extensive portages. The first portage is 1.5 km and has steep sections which discourage some users
- Level of existing use - Although this is the most popular local canoe route use is quite low.
- Other recreation opportunities - Camping, hiking, wildlife viewing and fishing are common activities. Fishing varies, some lakes have mainly small fish, the bigger lakes have bigger fish
- Cultural features – Hunting, fishing & gathering areas; map reference: W2, G2 contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale:** Wilderness Lake chains suitable for canoeing are relatively un-common in northern BC and have the potential for attracting many users

E 15B KIDPRICE AND NANIKA LAKES (C'INIGGIT NENIKEKH)

Medium sized wilderness lakes in the coastal ranges. Good fishing.

- Scenery - very scenic, snow covered coastal ranges on either side of the lakes as well as at the SW end of Nanika Lake
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Natural. No evidence of human resource activity. Wilderness except for portage trail from Stepp to Kidprice Lake and Outfitter cabins on Nanika and Kidprice Lakes
- Climate and Winds – Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone on Kidprice and Coastal Hemlock biogeoclimatic zone on Nanika Lakes. Afternoon winds can make canoeing hazardous
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - ,. Access to Kidprice Lake is possible via the portage trail from Stepp Lake, access to Nanika is possible by floatplane only. There is a reported overgrown access route from Morice Lake which is likely not used at present
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) -Flatwater.
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - Very little existing use with the exception of a local guide outfitter who has cabins on both lakes and limited camping at the NE end of Kidprice Lake where the portage trail from Stepp Lake ends.
- Other recreation opportunities - , wildlife viewing, camping potential, hiking to nearby peaks
- Cultural features – Heritage trails, hunting, fishing & gathering areas; Map reference: G2, W2, W4, W6 L9, S3; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en.
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**

- **Rationale**: Although these lakes are more scenic and have a higher degree of wilderness than the lower parts of the lake chain, difficulty in accessing them makes them less attractive for most users

E15c NANIKA RIVER (Neenekeec)

- **Scenery** - Narrow forested valley with coastal peaks in background
- **Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) –** Although the lower river has harvesting on both sides little is visible from the water, generally natural
- **Climate and Winds** - within the coastal variant of the Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir Biogeoclimatic zone (ESSF).
- **Access (paved/gravel road, air)** - accessible via canoe from Kidprice Lake or via floatplane
- **Level of difficulty (water class levels) –** difficult with boulders and log jams
- **Level of existing use (popular locally?)** - Very little use
- **Other recreation opportunities –** Camping, fishing
- **Cultural features** – Hunting, fishing & gathering areas, gravesites, heritage trails, settlements; Map reference: G7; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Difficulty in accessing the area lessens the ability of this river to attract tourism use however it is one of only two whitewater opportunities in the district.

E 17 TROITSA, BLANKET AND SEEL LAKES (TSCC'ULH TESDLIZ BIN)

A wilderness lake chain.. Portage trail from end of Troitsa Lake to Blanket and Seel Lakes..

- Scenery - Narrow forested valley with coastal peaks in background
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Natural, wilderness lake with fishing resort at east end, timber harvesting within a few kms but not visible from the lake
- Climate and Winds - Lakes are within the coastal variant of the Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir Biogeoclimatic zone (ESSF). Afternoon westerly winds can make canoeing hazardous
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - accessible via cat track from Tahtsa Lake. Access requires the means to cross Tahtsa Reach, otherwise access by floatplane
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - Flatwater with portage.
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - Very little use, the fishing resort has been closed for the last two years due to temporary turbid water caused by an underwater slide.
- Other recreation opportunities - Camping and hiking opportunities. Trophy rainbow fishing..
- Cultural features – Hunting, fishing & gathering area; Map reference: G9, G4, G3; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**

- **Rationale**: Difficulty in accessing the area lessens the ability of this lake chain to attract tourism use. A resort development could increase the ability of this area to attract canoeing tourism to high.

E 18 THE COLES LAKE CHAIN (WESEL BIN)

Located over a ridge south of Troitsa Lake. A guide outfitter has cabins on these lakes. Portage trails join them.,

- Scenery - Steep forested slopes with snow capped peaks in background
- Naturalness (degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities) - Natural.
- Climate and Winds - Lakes are within the coastal variant of the Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir Biogeoclimatic zone (ESSF).
- Access (paved/gravel road, air) - accessible via a cat track from Troitsa and via a trail from Whitesail Lake to the south.
- Level of difficulty (water class levels) - flatwater
- Level of existing use (popular locally?) - Very little use.
- Other recreation opportunities - Fishing, camping, hiking.
- Cultural features -Hunting, fishing & gathering area; Map reference: G9, G4, G3; Contact: Office of the Wet'suwet'en
- **Freshwater Activity potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale**: Difficulty in accessing the area lessens the ability of this lake chain to attract tourism use. A resort development could increase the ability of this area to attract canoeing tourism to high.

7.3.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
A 3	Nakinilerak Lake Chain	Moderate
A 2	Morrison Lake	Moderate
C 3A	Upper Fulton River	Moderate
C 5 A,B,C	Pine Tree, Doris And Tanglechain Lakes	Moderate
C 12 A,B	The Morice River:	**High**
C 13	The Nadina River From Nadina Lake To Francois Lake	Moderate
C14A, 15A,16A,17, 18A,B,C, 31	Owen, Parrott, Tsichgass, Poplar, Nadina, Goosly Mcbride and Sweeney Lakes	Moderate
D 1	Sunset, Barrett, Irrigation, Klinger And Helen Lakes	Moderate
D3	The Bulkley River	Moderate
E 2	The Burnie River (Burnie Lakes To The Clore River)	Moderate
E 8A	Atna Lake	Moderate
E 15A	Lamprey, Anzac & Stepp Lakes	**High**
E 15B	Kidprice And Nanika Lakes	Moderate
E15C	Nanika River	Moderate
E 17	Troitsa, Blanket And Seel Lakes	Moderate
E 18	The Coles Lake Chain	Moderate

7.3.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.3.3.1 MARKETS

Lakes/rivers activities include kayaking, rafting, canoeing and fishing. There is no single market profile for this product, but instead several distinct segments and sub-segments. Canoeing and river kayaking each have two sub-segments, recreational paddling and whitewater, the latter entailing more skill and experience by participants. Rafting in BC is generally conducted down whitewater sections of rivers, but can also entail floating. Freshwater fishing that occurs in streams, rivers, ponds or lakes. In BC, major species of interest include trout, char, salmon, steelhead and bass.

Kayaking and canoeing generally require a good fitness level, and have their strongest appeal among younger travellers. Kayaking/canoeing operators frequently include bird watching and nature observation as secondary activities. Kayaking/canoeing can also play a secondary role as part of other travel experiences that involve wilderness activities.

In Canada, river kayakers tend to be younger than ocean kayakers, between 20 and 44 years of age. The majority (60%) are male, and travel with friends (29%) or couples (28%). Participants are from Canada (82%), the U.S. (12%) and overseas (6%). The demand for kayaking has increased over the past decade as access to better quality equipment and instruction makes it easier to learn and become proficient at the sport.

The canoeing market differs from the kayak market in some important ways. Although many demographic characteristics are similar (the average canoe participant is under the age of 35 (53%) and male (62%)), they are much more likely to travel with friends (48%), and perhaps of most significance to commercial operators, are just as likely to be international visitors than Canadians. In

1996, forty-five percent of commercially guided canoeists were Canadian, while 31% were German and 14% American. 57

Although not conclusive, Canadian visitor data does suggest that the river kayak product appeals mostly to Canadian participants and secondarily Americans, while the canoe product has a much stronger appeal for the German and American markets. In terms of absolute size, the market for canoeing is much larger than kayaking. Participation rates for river kayaking are among the lowest of all outdoor recreation activities.

There is extensive competition regionally and across Canada for canoeing and kayaking. Alberta Rockies, Kootenays, Thompson Okanagan and the Caribou offer quality river/lake experiences, with similar features to the Morice. One product that the study area cannot offer is the multi-day trip lake system linked by waterways and portages such as is available at Bowron Lakes or Powell Lakes chain. Wilderness river/lakes activities and new products such as voyageur canoeing are available in all provinces.

There is expected to be continued growth in the future for canoeing especially and, to a lesser extent, kayaking. Canoeing is part of the North American heritage and is relatively easy to learn. It is also a portable activity as participants can easily take their boats to any river that is accessible by vehicle. River kayaking is a more demanding activity requiring considerable skill and higher levels of risk. Consequently it will probably grow more slowly than canoeing.

7.3.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

Clients on commercially-led lake paddling trips are looking for a sense of isolation and wilderness. Typically, they do not want to hear or see motorized watercraft, highly altered landscapes or large-scale evidence of commercial harvesting. For some areas of the Morice, particularly the larger lakes which are mostly oriented toward motorized use, such conflicts are inevitable and will compromise the tourism potential of non-motorized use. Babine, Ootsa and Whitesail lakes fall into this category.

Resource management has a significant impact on the marketability of canoeing and kayaking. The extensive evidence of industrial forestry has compromised the potential of some river and lake sections. Visual quality is a very important attribute for this pursuit.

Lakes like Ootsa and Whitesail which are part of the Nechako reservoir are not suitable for the wilderness canoe/kayak experience. Water levels change too much and make the experience unpredictable. Situations like the summer of 2001 when there was significant draw down of the reservoir water levels created access and visual quality problems.

7.3.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

- In terms of site location, river activities require access to single and multi-day canoe/kayak routes, flat water routes and fast water routes, varying grades of water for all levels of expertise, play areas and water suitable for instruction are all important considerations. A variety of water classes will give an operator some flexibility when catering to markets. Good whitewater is essential for enthusiasts, while lower classes are needed when serving lower-

---

[57] Adventure Travel and Ecotourism in Canada: Strategic Framework for Development, p.3-31, The Randolph Group, January 1997

skilled, soft adventurers. Whitewater opportunities in the district are limited to the Nanika River.

- For lakes, the larger lakes with their variable shorelines, and attractive scenery are the primary attractants for this activity. Generally, lakes that permit half-day to full-day paddling and enable participants to achieve a sense of isolation (including being away from other participants) are preferred. The smaller lakes in the Southwest unit also have potential, especially with their proximity but would require the presence of additional features to enhance the experience. Such features include historical or cultural sites, wildlife viewing, sandy beaches, waterfalls, fishing, etc.
- The ability to develop lake chains is a major strength of the district. There are several lake groupings and chains.
- Nature observation, wildlife viewing and fishing are also attractants for these markets. The German market, especially, is interested in wildlife viewing. Multi-activity packaging and interpretation is essential.
- Crown tenure is generally not an issue with river and lake operators in the region as the frequency of trips does not warrant the associated time and cost. If an operator uses a specific land feature such as a beach or camp on a regular basis then CR tenure will be required. Also, if there is restricted access to a lake, then specific tenure for access or shoreline use areas for activities like camping and picnicking is required.
- Canoeing and kayaking development, and to a lesser extent rafting or fishing, should be linked to some outstanding recreational feature, aesthetic appeal or valued secondary activity. Infrastructure is also important, as attracting participants and enthusiasts will require the development of more amenities to encourage stopovers. While this does not necessarily translate into high costs, minimum levels of access for put-ins and take-outs are essential. Good signage, as well as shuttling, supplies and rental services to self-guided users would also assist development.
- To operate within established industry standards, maximum tour group size is ten guests with two guides, and using a mixed fleet of double and single kayaks or canoes. A fleet of 5 double and two single fibreglass kayaks, with all necessary kayaking equipment (paddles, PFDs, spray decks, pumps, and required safety equipment) would cost an operator between $25-30,000. Many companies also provide tents, sleeping pads, dry bags, paddling jackets or wetsuits, and all camp kitchen facilities (shelter, portable stove, pots, etc.). Start-up equipment needs and costs will vary depending on partnerships with other tourism product operators, and on the style and remoteness of the trips.
- As instruction services are essential for a guiding outfit, having instructors with the ability to clearly explain, demonstrate and provide feedback and coaching is a benefit. This usually means instructors/guides who have proven certification and demonstrate an ability to teach.
- Operators offering kayaking tours had annual revenues of approximately $120,000 in 1993, with approximately one third bringing in less than $50,000. The canoeing/kayaking business is very profitable because of lower-than-average operating expenses. The average outfit has 700 clients with an average daily revenue of $113 per traveller. The average trip length was 5.7 days.

- More vertical integration of product design and marketing is required, including raising awareness of the potential of lakes and rivers among BC residents (i.e. enthusiasts who are activity-oriented travellers).

7.3.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

Long-term trends show rising participation rates among North American markets, particularly among soft adventure participants rather than the extreme enthusiast market. All of these markets are seeking a broader outdoor adventure experience and may decide to participate in recreational paddling once in the region. The Morice FD can offer a range of close-in/remote adventures and is very well positioned to attract more visitors.

There is moderate potential in the soft adventure/participant category for domestic, short-haul and German markets. All of these markets are seeking a broader outdoor adventure experience and will decide to participate in recreational paddling once in the region. The Morice has a range of close-in/remote adventures. Native cultural interpretation, nature observation, wildlife viewing and fishing are also attractants for these markets. The German market, especially, is interested in wildlife viewing.

The major constraining factor is a lack of grade 3+ water that would attract enthusiasts and adventure seekers. Also the area does not boast a lakes series with connecting waterways (rivers, streams) and portages that are usually preferred over single, isolated large lakes. Lakes connected in such a manner may provide opportunities for multi-day wilderness paddling trips. This should focus attention more on the casual participant interested in the softer, short duration adventures. Kayaking, rafting and fishing will be of more interest to the existing regional and short-haul travellers (western US and Canada) to the region, more so than canoeing.

The ability to package sport fishing, nature observation, historical interpretation with boating activities can help operators diversify, but avoidance of high use locations will be necessary to minimize conflicts with other users.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		Babine (A&B)	Houston (C&D)	Southwest (E)
Markets	Demand	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Competition	High	High	Medium
	Overall potential	Medium	Medium	High
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Low	Low	Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Develop-ment Needs	Crown tenure	Low	Low	Low
	Infrastructure	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Capital	Low	Low	Medium
Employment opportunities		Low	Low	Low
	Opportunities	• Smaller lakes (Fulton, Morrison) with flatwater experience and opportunities for fishing and wildlife viewing.	• Drifting, canoeing, fishing packages on the Morice.	• Excellent opportunity for Nanika-Kidprice (with Nanika Falls) and Troitsa and Coles chains, all linked to outstanding scenery and a variety of features. • Possible linkages to North Tweedsmuir.

7.3.4 Fresh Water Activity: Non-motorized and Motorized Maps

On the following page is the tourism suitability map for the Fresh Water Activity: Non-motorized products (***rafting / drifting & canoeing / kayaking***).

Freshwater Activity: Non-motorized Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

BRITISH COLUMBIA

Freshwater Activity Ranking

▨ High Suitability

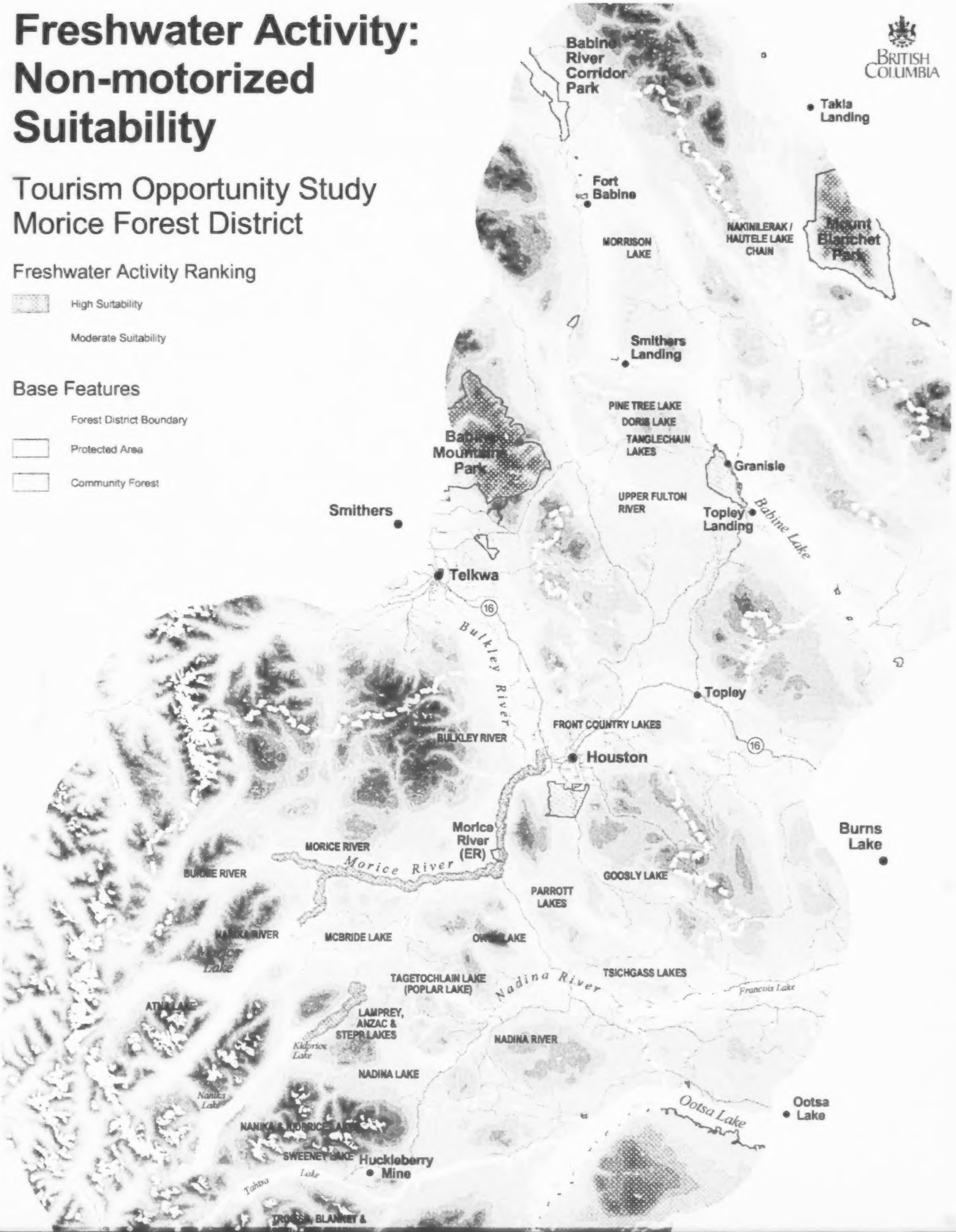
Moderate Suitability

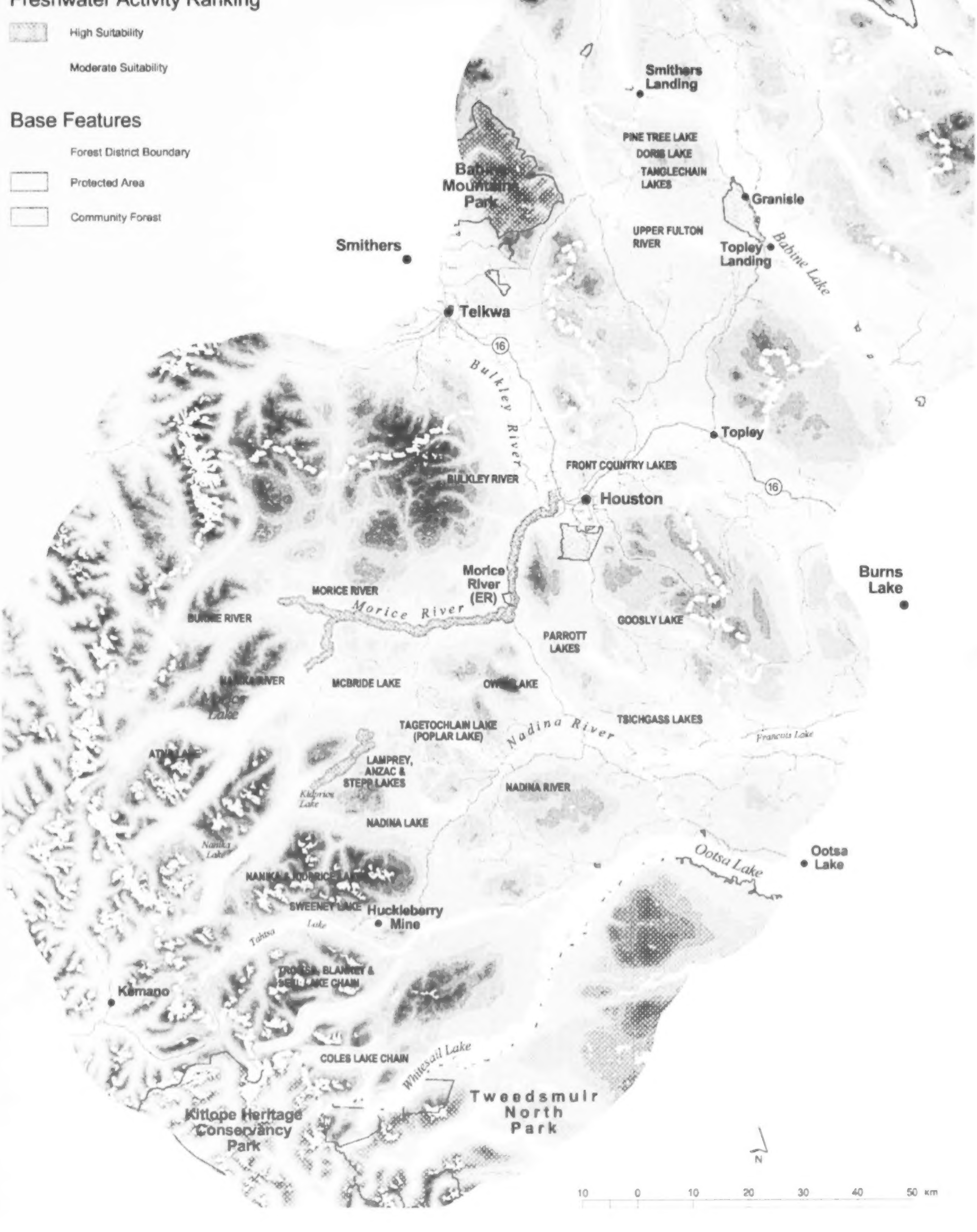
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest


Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
MORRISON LAKE
NAKINILERAK / HAUTELE LAKE CHAIN
Mount Blanchet Park
Smithers Landing
PINE TREE LAKE
DORIS LAKE
TANGLECHAIN LAKES
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
UPPER FULTON RIVER
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Smithers
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
FRONT COUNTRY LAKES
BULKLEY RIVER
16
Houston
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Morice River
Burns Lake
BURNIE RIVER
GOOSLY LAKE
PARROTT LAKES
NANIKA RIVER
MCBRIDE LAKE
OWEN LAKE
Morice Lake
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Nadina River
TSICHGASS LAKES
Francois Lake
ATNA LAKE
LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES
Kidprice Lake
NADINA RIVER
NADINA LAKE
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES
SWEENEY LAKE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
TROITSA, BLANKET &


Freshwater Activity Ranking
High Suitability
Moderate Suitability
Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
Smithers Landing
PINE TREE LAKE
DORIS LAKE
TANGLECHAIN LAKES
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
UPPER FULTON RIVER
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
FRONT COUNTRY LAKES
BULKLEY RIVER
Houston
16
Morice River (ER)
Burns Lake
MORICE RIVER
Morice River
BURNIE RIVER
GOOSLY LAKE
PARROTT LAKES
NANIKA RIVER
MCBRIDE LAKE
OWEN LAKE
Morice Lake
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Nadina River
TSICHGASS LAKES
Francois Lake
ATNA LAKE
LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES
Kidprice Lake
NADINA RIVER
NADINA LAKE
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES
SWEENEY LAKE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
TROITSA, BLANKET & SETH LAKE CHAIN
Kemano
COLES LAKE CHAIN
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10 0 10 20 30 40 50 km

7.4 Summer Trail Products (non-motorized)

7.4.1 Description

Trail products include hiking (generally frontcountry, mid-country or from a lodge), backpacking (midcountry/backcountry), animal assisted, such as llama or horse packing (primarily backcountry) or horseback riding (front country to backcountry). The activities take place on trails or off trail, terrain permitting.

Frontcountry and midcountry *hikes* are primarily single day. Backcountry trips are primarily multi-day. Midcountry trips can be either single or multi-day. Day use is usually based from a lodge, resort or guest ranch, ideally in an attractive natural setting where the operation of a ranch is feasible, and where there is easy accessibility to a network of trails. Multi-day trips or *backpacking,* set in the midcountry or backcountry, usually requiring wilderness or near wilderness settings, and cabins or camps to accommodate recreationists. Accessibility to trails is required and alpine or sub-alpine zones are a preferred destination if possible. However, steep, rocky or boggy areas are considered as undesirable for commercial ventures because they are dangerous and can create too much liability for operators.

The *llama/goat packing* product is essentially a hiking product, wherein llamas/goats are used to pack the gear with participants walking or hiking alongside. Horse packing is generally associated with the guest riding alongside on another horse. Llamas and goats are very sure-footed, and can access most areas that a hiker is willing to go. There is also some novelty associated with the animals and this can be an attractant in itself, although the prime motivation for participants is a wilderness experience in scenic remote terrain.

Trails are the key ingredient for the viability of any *horse-packing* operation, and therefore trails (and roads) are the primary screen. Good trails or narrow gravel roads are preferred, as these provide ideal footing for the horses, yet provide the rider with a sense of being part of the surroundings. Wider roads serve mainly as access to narrower ones or trails. Slopes are the next major consideration, as steeper slopes quickly become awkward for horse and rider, and introduce the undesirable possibility of accidents and associated liability. Environmentally sensitive features such as the alpine/subalpine and boggy areas are a major consideration with regards to the degradation of the trails and surrounding terrain. Features such as attractive scenery, cabins, waterfalls, lakes etc. can enhance the experience. Alpine areas, if accessible, are a considerable attractant.

Generally, hiking and backpacking are self-guided. Horseback riding is generally associated with a guide. Llama, goat or horse packing typically involve a guide/outfitter who offers overnight (or longer) pack trips into wilderness areas and which naturally include camping, cooking and other guide services. Operators offer both moving trips (move each day) and day trips from a base camp.

Established trails require maintenance to assure their viability and safety. A commitment to undertake this responsibility lies with either: provincial government (with a focus on Parks, Forest Service Recreation trails, community forests), local governments (regional parks), non-profit organizations (often times for activity specific use, such as crosscountry skiing or snowmobiling) or private landowners (often associated with horseback riding).

7.4.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Wide spectrum of trails (and routes) within natural appearing rural landscapes to primitive. Variable scenery and natural features. Established trails. Maze of logging roads. Significant access to alpine areas by trails in Northern BC and many trails are near local communities. Wet'suwet'en common and secondary traditional trails provide rich cultural and heritage resources.
Weaknesses	No commitment for long term maintenance of trails by various agencies. Lack of product diversity.
Concerns	Conflicting uses. Potential for impact by industrial logging/mining activities. Hereditary chiefs would like a management plan for access to traditional territories including restricted access to sensitive cultural/heritage sites.

7.4.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

The Morice Forest District has numerous "trails" that were developed by trappers, miners, First Nations and recreation users as well as forestry roads. The trail inventory database may not identify many possible routes generally known by guide outfitters. Most of the summer trail activities are related to hiking (and backpacking). At present there are no operators offering llama/goat or horse packing (horseback riding) opportunities in the District.

Summer trail opportunity areas are concentrated primarily in the mountainous areas in the SW end of the Morice Forest District. An important exception is the Grease Trail which leads from Hazelton via the Suskwa Valley to Ft Babine and then on to Takla Lake, passing through the very northernmost part of the Morice District.

Hiking is well established in the Telkwa Ranges, on China Nose, Morice Mountain and Nadina Mountain. Some summer trail opportunities occur in the Nez Lake area near Topley; on the mountains near the head of Morice Lake (Tableland, Herd Dome the Northern Morice Range); the Sibola Range near Tahtsa Lake and the Shelford Hills north of Ootsa Lake.

A number of other areas offer high potential for wilderness summer trail opportunities since they are very remote and experience very little use at present. These include the headwaters of the Clore and Atna Rivers, the south west ends of Morice and Nanika Lakes and the valleys and mountains around Troitsa and Coles Lakes near the very south end of the forest District.

7.4.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

The following areas have been identified as having moderate to high summer trail opportunities. A set of factors was developed to provide the analysis required to rate the areas:

- Scenic values – quality of views, ponds, lakes, streams, glaciers, flowers, wildlife
- Historic Interest – First Nations, Mining
- Size of the area – small or large suitable for multi or single day.
- Naturalness – degree of impact by harvesting/other human activities. Higher values are associated with natural landscapes.
- Climate – biogeoclimatic zone, the drier the zone the more attractive the area.
- Access – road, trail or air. Ease of access to the staging area (or trailhead) is an added benefit.

- Level of existing use – Depending on the proximity to populations centers and ease of access, the expected number of encounters is expected to decrease with remoteness. Hence level of use is directly related to access and location.
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** – either moderate or high. The trails and areas suitability for the summer trail product.
- **Rationale** – the reasons for the rating

7.4.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

Areas significance for the summer trail product in the Morice Forest District are individually assessed below.

A1 TSITUTL MOUNTAIN

- Scenic values – Scenic alpine/subalpine meadows, parkland, wetlands, rocky alpine areas
- Historic interest – not known
- Size of area – Small alpine area in the Morice District, larger contiguous alpine area in the adjoining Ft. St. James and Burns Lake Forest Districts
- Naturalness – Currently little harvesting in the area but nearby valleys are within the operable forest
- Climate – Lower elevations are within the Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir biogeoclimatic zone, balance within the sub boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Fly-in or cross-country bush whacking only at present
- Level of existing use – Little or none
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling, Heli-hiking, ski touring
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Difficult access and relatively small size of the area.

A 6A FT BABINE TO TAKLA LAKE GREASE TRAIL

- Scenic values – Mostly forested, some mountain views, several small or medium sized lakes near the west end of the trail, numerous creek crossings
- Historic interest – Ancient Wet'suwet'en Grease trading trail, Ft. Babine Lodge serves as destination point between Wet'suwet'en and Babine nations
- Size of area – Approximately 45 kms from Ft Babine to Takla Lake
- Naturalness – Mainly natural but power line is visible along the route
- Climate – Sub boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Access by foot from Ft Babine, access to Ft Babine requires more than 2 hours drive on forestry roads north of Smithers
- Level of existing use – almost exclusively used by Ft Babine residents

- Other recreation opportunities – Horseback, ATV and snowmobile
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Significant 1st Nations history is counterbalanced by remoteness, impact of a power line and ATV use on the trail.

C 2 MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN

- Scenic values – Several subalpine peaks, Nez Lake and several small lakes and ponds
- Historic interest – Mining exploration in the area, Fire lookout on a forested ridge north of Matzehtzel Mountain
- Size of area – Approximately 80 square kms
- Naturalness – Mainly natural, Guide Outfitter trails and cabin on Nez Lake
- Climate – Mainly Engleman Spruce subalpine Fir (ESSF) with Alpine tundra (AT) at higher elevations
- Access – Mining access trail from near Topley
- Level of existing use – Important use area for local guide outfitter
- Other recreation opportunities – Horseback riding, Snowmobiling, hunting, wildlife viewing
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Much of the trail network is in forested areas, the scenery is less dramatic than that found in the in areas south of Highway 16

C 6 MORICE MOUNTAIN (DZEL TEEL)

- Scenic values – Excellent views of the Bulkley and Morice Valleys, Nadina Mountain and the coastal ranges to the South and West
- Cultural/Historic interest – Hunting & Gathering, trapping, heritage campsites, territorial markers, legends
- Size of area – Approximately 35 sq km
- Naturalness – Natural, extensive Swiss Burn to the south and west, ski cabin
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) and Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Trail from Houston Community Forest to the north, foot access through the Swiss burn from the Carrier FSR and trail access via private land from the Morice River FSR.
- Level of existing use – moderate local use
- Other summer recreation opportunities – horseback riding, mountain biking, wildlife viewing (goats)
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Very scenic, close to town, good access, wildlife viewing, well suited to day use

C 7 CHINA NOSE(TZEZUUL)

- Scenic values – dramatic cliffs, visible from much of surrounding area, Views of the Bulkley valley and several lakes to the east
- Cultural/Historic interest – Hunting & Gathering, heritage campsites, territorial markers, legends, trapping, settlements
- Size of area – Very small
- Naturalness – The mountain is in natural condition, significant timber harvesting around the base of the mountain
- Climate – Sub boreal Spruce biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Trail access from the Heading Creek FSR
- Level of existing use – moderate local use
- Other summer recreation opportunities – rock scrambling in dramatic cracks on the mountain
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Dramatic topography, good scenery, close to town

C 9 NADINA MOUNTAIN

- Scenic values – Dramatic granitic intrusion visible over most of the southern Morice District, views of nearby lakes and Morice River
- Cultural/Historic interest – Hunting & Gathering, fishing, heritage campsites, legends, territorial marker, trapping, heritage trails.
- Size of area – small, less than 15 square km
- Naturalness – The mountain is natural with the exception of the access trail, the surrounding forest lands have been extensively harvested
- Climate – The peak is mainly Alpine Tundra (AT), surrounding hillsides are Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – A foot trail exists from Owen Lake, users also report accessing the peak from forest roads to the south
- Level of existing use – low to moderate local use
- Other recreation opportunities – wildlife viewing (goats), camping
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Viewscapes in all directions, relatively easy to access, potential to camp and see wildlife

C 10 SHELFORD HILLS

- Scenic values – Scenic subalpine parkland with many small ponds and lakes
- Historic interest – There are several cultural and heritage features on route to shelford hills. Areas of interest include features outlined in map reference: S5, G5, L4, G7, W4, W6, L9, T3, G8.
- Size of area – Medium, approximately 80 square kms
- Naturalness – Natural, mostly outside operable forest so likely to remain natural
- Climate – Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Shelford Hills are completely surrounded by timber harvesting, informal access occurs from forest roads throughout the area
- Level of existing use – likely low
- Other recreation opportunities – wildlife viewing (moose, bear, mountain goats), fossil hunting, camping
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Area is relatively remote, most of the area is below tree line which limits distant views

C 11 SMOKE MOUNTAIN (HONDEK)

- Scenic values – Isolation from other mountains gives good views of the Nanika Kidprice Lake chain to the west, the Sibola Range to the south and Newcombe and Nadina Lakes to the east
- Historic interest – legends; territorial boundary, Ggiistl'e ben,
- Size of area – Small, approximately 25 square kms
- Naturalness – Mountain is natural, extensive timber harvesting on the forested plateau to the east of the mountain
- Climate – Mainly Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone
- Access - No trail access, access may become more accessible when timber harvesting is closer to the mountain
- Level of existing use – likely none
- Other recreation opportunities – wildlife viewing (goats)
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Lack of existing access, lack of landscape variety in the alpine, relative small area

E1, E3 EAST AND WEST TELKWA RANGES (NELGII DZEL)

- Scenic values – Very scenic, views of the Bulkley and Morice Valleys, the dramatic Howson Range and the coast ranges to the south, some permanent snow fields, numerous small ponds
- Cultural/Historic interest – mineral exploration trails in the Starr Creek valley and on Eagle Peak, Rich with Cultural and heritage values, and historic trails network; traditional use areas for hunting, fishing, and food gathering. Heritage village sites, and gravesites are also in existence.
- Size of area – Very large – estimate 400 square km
- Naturalness – Mainly natural with exception of mineral exploration trails, snowmobile cabin in the East Telkwas, the Starr Creek Cabin in the west Telkwas and Bear Enterprises' cabin above upper Burnie Lake
- Climate – Largely alpine tundra (AT) surrounded by Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir biogeoclimatic zones
- Access – Foot access via the snowmobile trail in the Emerson Creek area, most trail access comes from the Bulkley Forest District in the north, other access is fly-in
- Level of existing use - Low
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing (caribou), Heli-hiking, ATV (limited by lack of access and Telkwa Caribou Recovery Plan
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** - **HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Huge, scenic area, historic interest, high potential for hut to hut system, good camping opportunities, wildlife viewing, short flight distance to access Heli-hiking opportunities

E 4 HERD DOME (WO'BETL'EET)

- Scenic values – Central location between Gosnell Creek and Burnie River valleys gives extensive views to all points of the compass, dramatic Howsons to the north and Coastal Ranges to the SW, rolling alpine ridges
- Cultural/Historic interest – common trails serving as trade route between Bella Coola trail and grease trail. Area also served as hub to access Haisla and Tshimsian territory. Area is rich and abundant for hunting, fishing and food gathering.
- Size of area – medium sized – approximately 40 square kms
- Naturalness -- alpine area is natural, forested land in Gosnell Creek to the east is experiencing timber harvesting at present
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) surrounded by Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zones
- Access – Foot access from forestry roads to the east
- Level of existing use - Low
- Other recreation opportunities – horseback riding, wildlife viewing (goats)
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** - High

- **Rationale** – Suitable for multi-day trips and camping, very scenic, unlikely to encounter many other users, opportunities to see wildlife

E 5 A, B NORTH AND SOUTH MORICE RANGES (LHO KWAH)

- Scenic values – very scenic, rolling alpine ridges and glacial landforms in the north ranges, more dramatic glaciated peaks in the south ranges, views of Morice Lake to the east and Dogs Ear, Atna and Mortella peaks of the coastal ranges to the south
- Cultural/Historic interest – heritage/archaeological village site, camps, heritage trails. Rich and abundant for cultural hunting, fishing and food gathering. Other interests include: C'eneelee Bin, Klotts wani bin, hles besh.
- Size of area – Large, North Range approximately 100 square kms, South Range approximately 100 square kms
- Naturalness – both ranges are natural, timber harvesting is occurring in the Gosnell Creek drainage to the north and west of the North Range
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) in the high elevations and Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) in subalpine areas
- Access – A trail provides access to a fire lookout at the north end of the North Ranges, the only other access would be fly-in
- Level of existing use – low in the North Ranges, may be some use by local Guide Outfitter in the South Ranges
- Other recreation opportunities – Heli-hiking, wildlife viewing (goats), camping, horseback riding
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** – **High** in North Range (A), **Moderate** in South Range (B)
- **Rationale** – Current access, scenic views, large area and camping opportunities make North Range high, South Range would be high except for remote location and lack of access. A resort located nearby could access numerous hiking-hiking opportunities in this area.

E 6 TABLELAND MOUNTAIN (DZEL TSDEEC)

- Scenic values – Isolated location between Stepp and Morice Lakes provides many scenic views in all directions of lakes and mountain ranges
- Cultural/Historic interest – heritage trails, traditional campsites, caches, hunting & food gathering area
- Size of area – Small, approximately 12 square kms
- Naturalness – Alpine is natural, forested hills to north and west have been extensively harvested
- Climate – Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Informal foot access occurs from nearby logging roads
- Level of existing use - low
- Other recreation opportunities – wildlife viewing (goats), berry picking

- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** - **MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Lack of formal trail access, relatively small area, relatively remote.

E7 REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN

- Scenic values – Very scenic, numerous cirque basins, snowfields, small ponds, views of Morice, Nanika and Kidprice Lakes, dramatic coastal peaks to the south and west
- Historic interest – not known
- Size of area – large, approximately 100 square kms
- Naturalness – natural, some timber harvesting at the north end of the range, most of the surrounding area is outside of the operable forest base
- Climate – High elevations Alpine Tundra (AT) and lower elevation Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Snowmobile access exists from logging roads to the north. The local guide outfitter accesses this range from the Nanika Kidprice lake chain
- Level of existing use – very low
- Other recreation opportunities – viewing, wildlife viewing
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** – **HIGH**
- **Rationale** – scenic, more accessible than ranges further to the south, opportunities to see wildlife

E 8A,B ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE (C'INIGGIT NENIKEKH)

- Scenic values – likely the highest in the Morice District, glaciated peaks, braided glacial outwash plains, subalpine parkland, small lakes and ponds
- Cultural/Historic interest – Wet'suwet'en travel route, rich and abundant with cultural/heritage values including hunting & food gathering, village sites, gravesites, and heritage trails.
- Size of area –large, approximately 160 – 200 square kms of a more or less linear feature
- Naturalness – Wilderness, Outfitter cabins on Atna and Nanika Lakes
- Climate – Mostly Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) with areas around the lakes of Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH) biogeoclimatic zones
- Access – The Atna Bay end of the Route can be accessed via boat from Morice Lake, the Tahtsa end of the route can be accessed via boat on Tahtsa Lake. Any other access to the route would be via floatplane
- Level of existing use – low use of parts of the area by local Guide Outfitter
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing, viewing
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use** - **HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Extremely scenic area, wilderness, wildlife, excellent opportunity for a wilderness resort or hut to hut hiking in this area

E 9 CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS (OOYENI)

- Scenic values – Extremely scenic glacial outwash plain, wetlands, very similar to the Atna River headwaters immediately to the south
- Cultural/Historic interest – Hunting & food gathering, heritage trails, economic activities, heritage camps,
- Size of area – small, approximately 40 square kms
- Naturalness - wilderness
- Climate – Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone
- Access – Fly-in access at the present, access may become possible from forestry development in the Upper Clore valley in the Kalum Forest District
- Level of existing use – very low to none
- Other recreation opportunities – wildlife viewing, camping, viewing
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Among most scenic areas in the district

E10A,B,C COASTAL DIVIDE RANGES

- Scenic values – Rugged glacier and snow covered peaks with extensive wetland meadows and ponds in the subalpine areas
- Cultural/Historic interest –territorial boundaries, oohn'yisto'weten legends, heritage trails, heritage camps
- Size of area – large, approximately 280 square kms
- Naturalness - wilderness
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) at high elevations and mainly Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) at subalpine elevations
- Access – Very remote, limited to fly-in access
- Level of existing use – none to very low
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Very remote, more difficult traveling than the adjacent Atna to Tahtsa route

E11 SIBOLA RANGE (NDE DETEEST'AY)

- Scenic values – scenic rolling alpine, permanent snowfields with some dramatic peaks, views of Nanika, Kidprice and Tahtsa Lakes and numerous mountain ranges
- Cultural/Historic interest – extensive mineral exploration, some old buildings and artifacts, village site, heritage trails, archaeological sites, Hunting & food gathering sites, Esttse'leegh, Ustsa, Esay'en cox

- Size of area – large, approximately 200 square kms
- Naturalness – considerable evidence of past human activity, roads, buildings, communication towers
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) with Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) at subalpine elevations
- Access – Road access from near Sweeney Lake and from near Twinkle Lake
- Level of existing use – Moderate to high because of road access
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, mountain biking, summer skiing, wildlife viewing (goats, caribou), fossil hunting
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Although relatively remote, road access makes this range attractive to many people, scenery, historical interest and fossils make the area attractive

E13 WHITESAIL RANGE (C'ELE'LEGHEEL DZEL)

- Scenic values – Rounded alpine ridges, snowcapped peaks with steep forested sides, views of Tahtsa Reach, Ootsa Lake and Whitesail Lake and Nechako Plateau to the east
- Cultural/Historic interest – mineral exploration trails intrude into this range from the north, village sites, heritage sites, hunting & food gathering areas
- Size of area – medium, approximately 75 square kms
- Naturalness – mainly natural with some mineral exploration
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) at high elevations with Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) biogeoclimatic zone in the subalpine
- Access – old mining trails from Tahtsa Reach
- Level of existing use – low, some hunting in the fall
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing (grizzly, caribou)
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Remote, hard to access, limited variety

E17 & E18 TROITSA/COLES (WESEL BIN)

- Scenic values – Many small lakes, wetlands, forested hillsides and rounded alpine areas
- Cultural/Historic interest – some mineral exploration in the area, heritage camps, settlements, hunting, gathering, fishing,
- Size of area – large, approximately 180 square kms
- Naturalness – Wilderness, Guide Outfitter camps/cabins on Seel and Coles Lakes
- Climate – Alpine Tundra (AT) at high elevations and Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) at subalpine locations

- Access – Trail to the east end of Troitsa Lake and trail to lower Coles Lake from Whitesail Lake but access to much of the area requires use of boats on the lakes.
- Level of existing use – low use by two local Guide Outfitters
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – difficult to access and much of the travel throughout the area requires boats as well

E19A,B TAHTSA TO TROITSA ROUTES (TSCC'ULH TESDLIZ BIN)

- Scenic values – Moderate, most of these two routes are within the forest
- Cultural/Historic interest – talk'aaz kwe, tak'aay kwe, heritage camps, trails, settlement, Aleh Uhl Ghel, Netseldii, Ben Coo,
- Size of area – Laventie route approximately 20 kms, un-named creek approximately 16 kms to lake in the headwaters
- Naturalness - wilderness
- Climate – The Laventie drainage is mainly in the Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH) biogeoclimatic zone whereas the other drainage is mainly in the Engleman Spruce Subalpine Fir (ESSF) zone
- Access – Access would be by boat or floatplane on both ends of these routes
- Level of existing use - none
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, hut to hut hiking
- **Potential for Summer Trail Use - MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – This route is currently un-developed and remote.

7.4.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
A1	Tsitutl Mountain	Moderate
A6A	Ft Babine to Takla Lake Grease Trail	Moderate
C 2	Matzehtzel Mountain	Moderate
C 6	Morice Mountain	**High**
C 7	China Nose	**High**
C 9	Nadina Mountain	**High**
C 10	Shelford Hills	Moderate
C 11	Smoke Mountain	Moderate
E1, E3	East and West Telkwa Ranges	**High**
E 4	Herd Dome	**High**
E 5 A	North Morice Ranges	**High**
E 5 B	South Morice Ranges	Moderate
E 6	Tableland Mountain	Moderate
E7	Redslide Mountain	**High**
E 8A,B	Atna Bay to Tahtsa Lake Route	**High**
E 9	Clore River Headwaters	**High**
E10A,B,C	Coastal Divide Ranges	Moderate
E11	Sibola Range	**High**
E13	Whitesail Range	Moderate
E17, 18	Troitsa/Coles	Moderate
E19A,B	Tahtsa to Troitsa Routes	Moderate

7.4.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.4.3.1 MARKETS

In Canada, **trail riding** adventurers tend to be fairly evenly distributed across all age groups, with a higher participation rate from females (53.3%) than males. They tend to travel with friends (27.0%) or in couples (26.7%). Two-thirds are from Canada, although a significant portion come from other countries (19.4%).[58] Countries with a high level of interest in trail riding include Germany. Competition is relatively low for this product as there are very few operators regionally, but short-haul markets that pass through the area have a wide selection of trail riding opportunities in neighbouring regions, include the Cariboo-Chilcotin, Prince George and the Alberta Rockies. Important secondary activities include river activities, hiking and nature observation.

The **hiking** market in Canada has a very broad based demographic profile with an even distribution across age groups and by gender. BC and Canadian residents make up three quarters of the market, while equal shares of the remaining quarter are accounted for by US and overseas visitors. Hiking is a primary trip activity for Canadian travellers, with 32 percent, or 5.2 million, participating in hiking or walking on their last long overnight pleasure trip. Of all outdoor recreation activities, hiking has been one of the highest growing in terms of participation in the US. The US market grew by 93 percent from 24.7 million participants in 1982-1983 to 47.7 million participants in 1994-1995.[59]

---

[58] Adventure Travel and Ecotourism in Canada: Strategic Framework for Development, p.3-32, 1997.

[59] National Survey on Recreation and the Environment, 1994-1995.

Hiking has a very good participation rate, and therefore high demand, among Europeans, especially Germans. Like trail riding, hiking is often combined with other activities such as wildlife viewing; camping and backpacking, all of which are experiencing increased participation levels. Many surveys combine hiking with backpacking for their statistics. As well, many operators include backpacking and extended trekking under the category of guided hikes.

Demand will continue to increase for hiking both as a primary activity and as a secondary activity in conjunction with other products. Because of its accessibility, low skill requirements, relative safety and instant appeal, growth rates among North American and European hiking markets are expected to continue to climb even as the overall population ages.

There is extensive competition regionally, nationally and internationally for travellers interested in pursuing hiking. For the hiking enthusiast in pursuit of a challenge, wilderness trek products like the West Coast Trail, the Nootka Island Trail and Berg Lake Trail have well-earned reputations and regularly attract capacity visitation. The national and provincial park systems cater extensively to this market. Similarly, many communities and all parks have developed trail inventories and related services that create a safe and interesting product for the soft adventurer/participant. Regionally, Tweedsmuir Park caters to overnight backpackers and hiking enthusiasts.

7.4.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

- Trail riding and packing generally requires access to large tracts of Crown land where some trail development has taken place. Contact with other users, especially those using mechanized transportation, is seen as undesirable. Unaltered landscapes are preferred. Day use trail riding is more compatible with multi-use trails, as this product is not so highly associated with wilderness. However, the use of trails for multi-day wilderness trips needs to be planned relative to other uses, e.g. horse or llama packing and ATV or mountain bike tours or self-guided use are likely not compatible. Forest tenures can have a major impact on areas where trails have been developed for horse packing. Clients do not expect to see major human alteration of the landscape, especially logging.
- Hiking is usually compatible with other recreation uses in the area. Uncrowded trails are preferred, particularly those attracted to backcountry hiking. Visual and acoustic quality is important so the quality of the experience is sometimes dependent on other resource users in the hiking areas.
- Wildlife viewing opportunities are a major advantage for all trail activities. Impacts on wildlife can be minimized with appropriate management, but restrictions in very sensitive areas may necessitate designated trails.
- First Nations issues will be pertinent to many trail products, particularly those of cultural significance. For example, the Babine-Takla Grease Trail which has been restored by Houston Forest Products (HFP) and the Fort Babine Band is only open for non-motorized recreational use. Details concerning use of such sites on a commercial basis would likely need to be negotiated with the individual First Nation groups.

7.4.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

- Building a marketable trail product all depends on the market being targeted. A front-country trail that offers a very safe adventure would be readily accessible and linked to a variety of amenities and services, as well as outdoor features. The key location features of a remote, trekking-type trail are quite different. Here the built environment is less important and natural features take over - a combination of wilderness areas/parks, high scenic and natural values, wildlife and wildlife viewing opportunities and solitude is beneficial. Often the alpine and sub-alpine environments are preferred. Wherever the trail is located there are some features that will make it attractive to all visitor markets – fishing opportunities, lakes, waterfalls, wildlife viewing opportunities, historical features and cultural interpretation.

- Trail riding and hiking in more remote and high elevation locales could be augmented by hut development, which would allow for multi-day tours, and linkages with higher quality amenities (e.g. accommodation). This product would appeal to the hiking enthusiast market. There is a growing market, especially in the US, for wilderness camping.
- Infrastructure needs are not that extensive, but it is important to provide access and maintain a quality trail network, especially near the frontcountry where multi-use activities predominate. Trail activities are very reliant on road access to trailheads and trails that lead to wilderness destinations. Trailheads have to be accessible within a short distance from where vehicles must be parked. Circuit routes are preferred over out-and-back trails.
- In general, the better the signage, parking, garbage disposal, washrooms, and interpretative facilities the better the trip experience will be for users. This means quality map information and some investment in public facilities. The private sector is rarely solely responsible for development simply because it does not have the necessary access to the land. Communities have an excellent opportunity to enhance their hiking product, especially in the frontcountry, as it can be developed in conjunction with recreation initiatives.
- The start-up and operating costs of a new trail riding venture are modest unless there is a dude or guest ranch component. The costs for a trail riding venture would include the purchase of the animals (approximately $1,500 to $2,500 each), corral, barn, storage for tack, and an arena for instruction. Guest accommodation facilities would raise costs into the hundreds of thousands or even millions of dollars.
- Marketing and promotion to attract Highway 16 travellers. The production and distribution of self-guiding aides, including trail books, books, maps and web sites could increase participation levels.
- The acquisition of tenure over trail development and use areas would allow operators to maintain some control over the environment and associated viewscapes. Parks and protected areas may have policies that preclude the use of horses, especially in sensitive areas such as alpine environments and riparian zones which are often scenic and are, therefore, desirable destinations for trail riding and hiking.
- Low capital costs – hiking, backpacking and trail riding does not require a significant investment in equipment but trail and accommodation infrastructure is very important. Since the provision of these components can rarely be justified based on revenues available from hiking, multi-activity tourism is usually accommodated.
- The average Canadian tour operator offering hiking as the major activity had annual gross revenues of $167,000 in 1993. Almost two thirds of operators brought in less than $50,000 and this contributed to a low average gross margin of 6.9%, considerably less than other activities. With an average number of travellers of 1,390, this equated to about $120 in revenue per traveller.

- Niche marketing (e.g. slide shows, local presentations, communication with community groups) should be used to increase regional awareness of newly developed hiking products.
- In order for a guiding operation to succeed, it must provide a value-added service that hikers cannot obtain through self-guided hikes. This means creating a high-end experience through linkages to authentic cultural/heritage interpretation, wildlife viewing, meals and lodging.
- Develop specialized tours or specialize completely in a specific market segment such as women only, seniors or at-risk youth. Although hiking appeals to a wide range of people demographically, it is important to identify specific target markets and their distinct needs.

7.4.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

The potential for development in the region is average. There are good quality resources but market volumes to the area are quite low and it is not known as either a hiking, biking, riding or trekking destination. Nevertheless, among existing visitors to Northwest BC, hiking/backpacking is the third most important outdoor activity among non-residents. The potential for commercial hiking tours spans a full range of options from multi-day trekking tours to short interpreted tours of the frontcountry.

The key limiting factors is the overall lack of exposure and well known trail systems. Many hiking participants become repeat clients, so increasing the opportunity for new experiences should increase the potential for repeat customers. Further interpretation of unique features like the lakes and river system and First Nations would significantly enhance the frontcountry hiking product.

There is potential for commercial hiking tours spans a full range of options from multi-day trekking tours to short interpreted tours of the frontcountry.

Commercial operators must provide additional value to gain customers, either through a quality experience (not only the hike but interpretation, meals and lodging) and/or adding other desired activities, which the customers cannot do on their own.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		Babine (A&B)	Houston (C&D)	Southwest (E)
Markets	Demand	Low	Medium	Medium
	Competition	High	High	High
	Overall potential	Low	Medium	Medium
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Low	Low	Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Develop-ment Needs	Crown tenure	Low	Low	Low
	Infrastructure	Low	Medium	Medium
	Capital	Low	Low	Low
Employment opportunities		Low	Low	Low
	Opportunities	• Some potential for product development around the Hazelton to Talka Lake Grease trail, but lack of accommodation in the area is a problem.	• Full range of product possibilities including day-hikes (Morice Mountain in association with wildlife viewing) and multi-day hikes (Nanika in association with fishing and wildlife viewing).	• Atna Bay-Tahtsa, Clore and Sibola excellent opportunities due to high scenic values and multi-activities potential

On the following page is the suitability map for the Summer Trail: Non-Motorized tourism product (Exhibit 21).

Summer Trail: Non-motorized Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

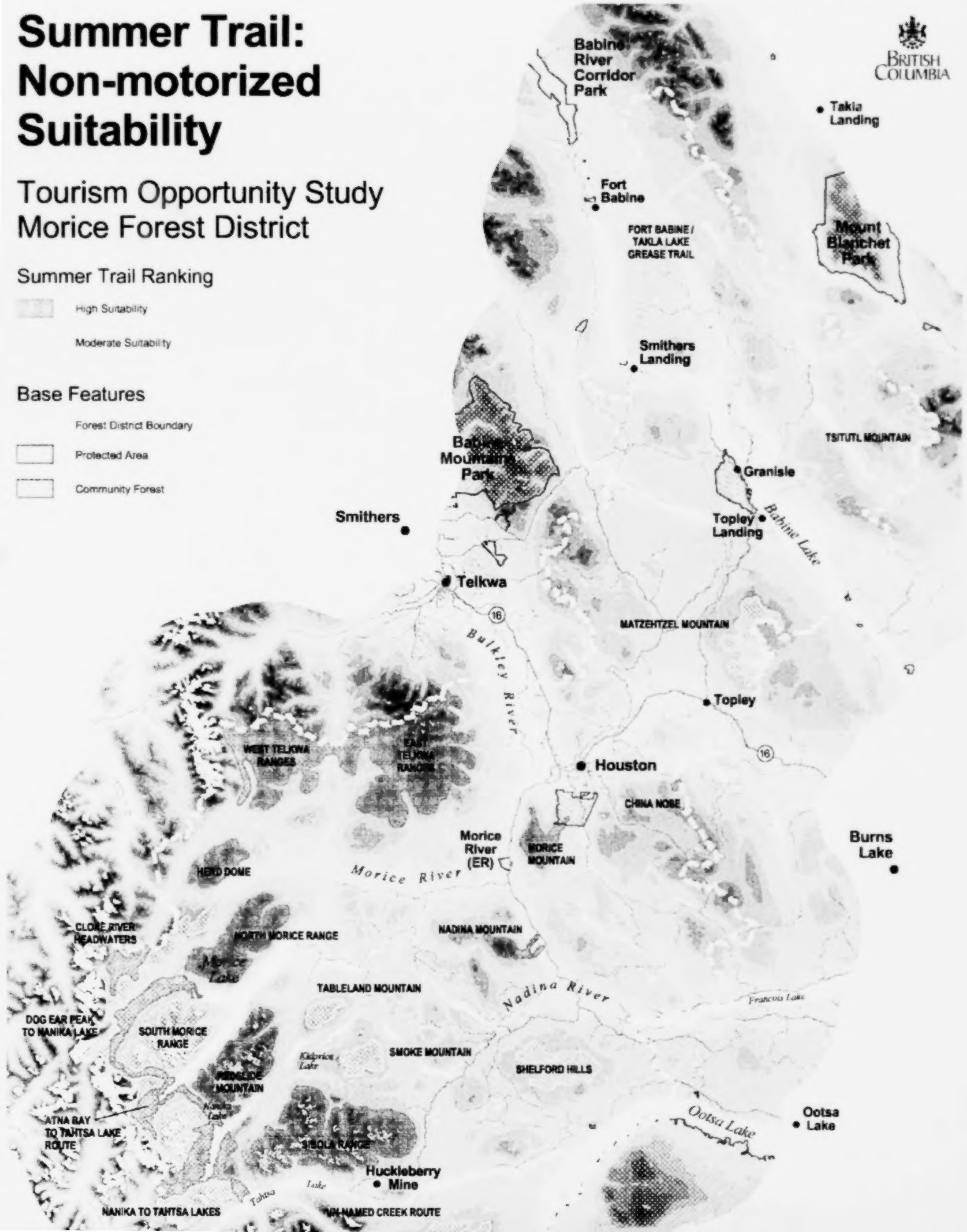
BRITISH COLUMBIA

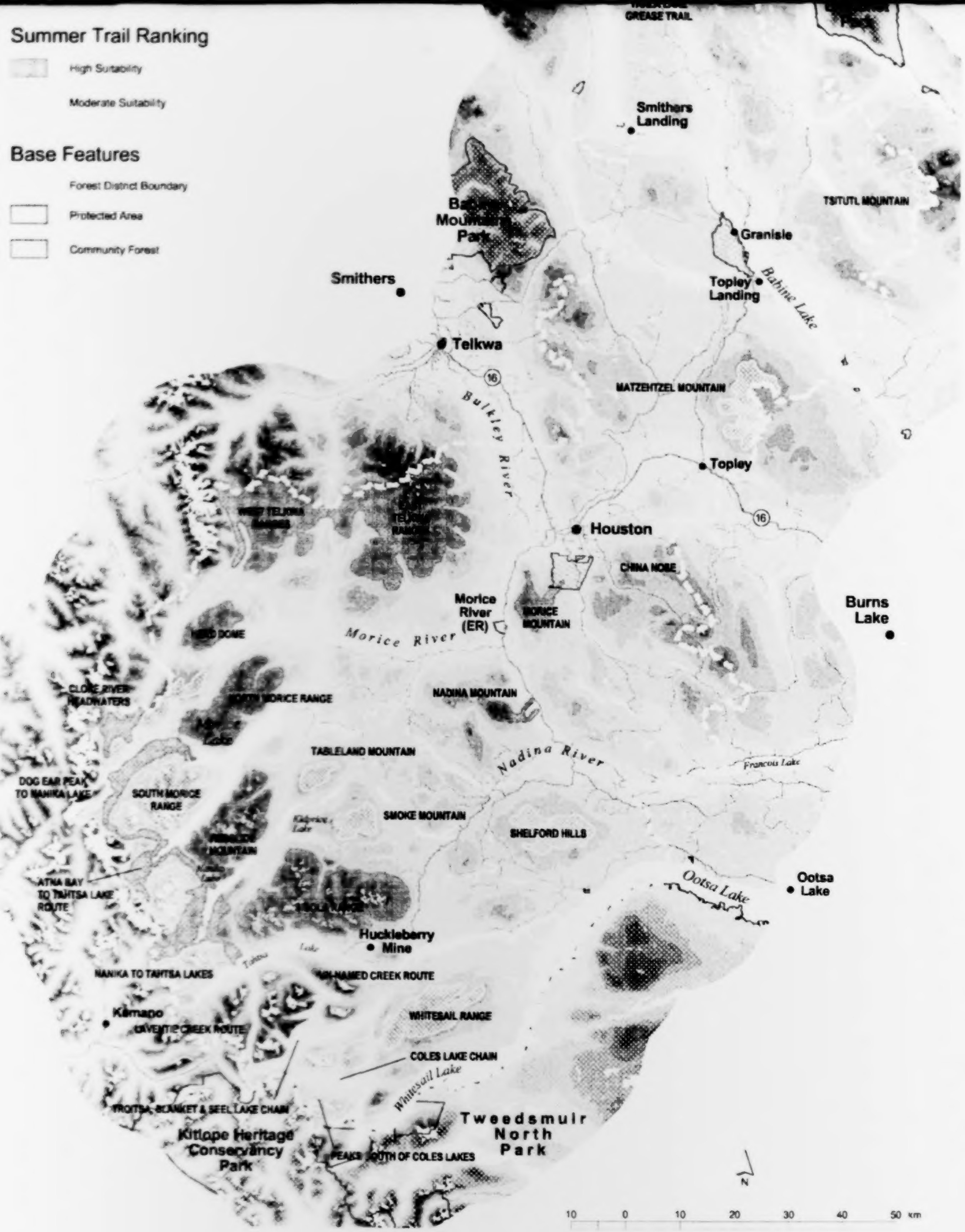
Summer Trail Ranking

- ▨ High Suitability
- Moderate Suitability

Base Features

- Forest District Boundary
- ☐ Protected Area
- ☐ Community Forest


Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
FORT BABINE / TAKLA LAKE GREASE TRAIL
Mount Blanchet Park
Smithers Landing
TSITUTL MOUNTAIN
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
16
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
CHINA NOSE
Burns Lake
Morice River (ER)
MORICE MOUNTAIN
Morice River
HERD DOME
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
NORTH MORICE RANGE
NADINA MOUNTAIN
Morice Lake
TABLELAND MOUNTAIN
Nadina River
Francois Lake
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
SOUTH MORICE RANGE
SMOKE MOUNTAIN
Kidprice Lake
SHELFORD HILLS
REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN
Nanika Lake
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SIBOLA RANGE
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
UNNAMED CREEK ROUTE


Summer Trail Ranking
High Suitability
Moderate Suitability
Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
GREASE TRAIL
Smithers Landing
Babine Mountains Park
TSITUTL MOUNTAIN
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
16
CHINA NOSE
Morice River (ER)
MORICE MOUNTAIN
Burns Lake
NED DOME
Morice River
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
NORTH MORICE RANGE
Morice Lake
NADINA MOUNTAIN
TABLELAND MOUNTAIN
Nadina River
Francois Lake
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
SOUTH MORICE RANGE
SMOKE MOUNTAIN
Kidprice Lake
SHELFORD HILLS
MOUNTAIN
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
UN-NAMED CREEK ROUTE
Kemano
WHITESAIL RANGE
COLES LAKE CHAIN
Whitesail Lake
TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
Tweedsmuir North Park
PEAKS SOUTH OF COLES LAKES
N
10 0 10 20 30 40 50 km

7.5 Road Tours (Nyec'adihl'git)

7.5.1 Description

This activity focuses on driving and sightseeing, both on highway and in cities/towns. While primarily self-guided, guided bus and motorcoach tours are also considered. Sightseeing is an activity very closely associated with automobile touring. There are opportunities for touring on gravel secondary roads. Comfortable and safety equipped large Sport Utility Vehicles are a preferred mode of transport.

Road tours require high scenic values and corresponding viewpoints and points of interest. Road tours can be linear or circle, or be part of other tours such as a water cruise and rail tour. They are ideal for those individuals seeking an adventure in safety and comfort and for those who do not choose or are unable to take their own vehicles.

7.5.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Loop and circuit tour opportunities. Tourism industry is oriented toward rubber-tire trade. Dispersed communities and highway network allow for circuit and corridor development. Potential for roads to handle increased tourist traffic. Good gateway signage and informational signage.
Weaknesses	Few road side attractions. Lack of themed development in some of the high potential tourism areas. Heavy industrial traffic poises safety hazard.
Concerns	Quality of the infrastructure. Scenic management of timber harvesting. Increasing levels of industrial traffic. Deactivation of secondary gravel roads. Un-certainty regarding maintenance of the forest road network

7.5.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

All the road tour loops possible in the Morice Forest District are at least partially on gravel roads. Not all tourists will feel comfortable driving their vehicles on gravel roads. Unfamiliar driving conditions, wear and tear on vehicles, lack of signs, industrial traffic, dust, rocks and mud all contribute to a reluctance on the part of many highway travelers to leave paved routes.

Other travelers are eager to leave the paved roads but lack the information they need in the way of good maps, particularly on the forest road network, which is often not well signed.

The Houston Chamber of Commerce and the Forest Industry have recognised these challenges and have operated interpretive forestry tours in a van 3 days a week over the July August summer period for the last few years. These have been very popular with tours averaging 10 persons.

7.5.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

For road tours to be attractive to tourists they must have some or all of the following characteristics:

- Predictable, safe road & traffic conditions
- Scenic driving

- Scenic stopping locations
- Interesting features
- Available interpretive information
- Opportunities for wildlife viewing
- Historical or cultural interest
- Opportunities to talk to local residents
- Fuel and meal services

Five potential road circuit tours are assessed below:

7.5.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

C26 DUNGATE CREEK TO BUCK FLAT CIRCUIT (TS'IN K'OZ'AY)

Approximately 95 km in length, the route goes up the Equity Mine Road to the mine site, over to Goosly Lake and back to Houston on the Buck Flats Road

- Road & traffic conditions - relatively little traffic on the Equity Mines road on Dungate Creek, traffic on the Buck Flats road changes according to logging activity. It is uncertain what effect changes in MOF road maintenance will have on road conditions at this point.
- Scenery – Mainly forested, some mountains, Dungate and Buck Flats Creeks, Goosly Lake
- Features – Buck Creek Falls, Equity Silver Mine, Fish at Goosly Lake
- Information – None available at present
- Wildlife viewing – potential for sighting bear, moose, deer
- Historical or cultural interest – Equity Mine, cultural and heritage education on land-use, traditional territorial boundaries, impact of development-industrial/residential, heritage trails, traditional camps, Swiss Fire.
- Opportunities to talk to local residents – some potential on Buck Flats road
- Fuel and meal services – Houston only
- **Potential Road Tour rating - HIGH**
- **Rationale –** Has potential for both mining & forestry interpretation, some scenic features and roads are usually not too busy, relatively short tour suitable for ½ day outing

C27 MORICE/CARRIER FORESTRY TOUR (DSU'HL TE'HL)

Travel to Owen Lake, back to Carrier Road, up Buck Flats road to Buck Falls and back to Houston, approximately 110 kms in length

- Road & traffic conditions – the Morice Forestry road can be very busy with wide and long loads, sometimes it is very dusty, the Carrier and Buck Flats roads are less busy. It is uncertain what effect changes in MOF road maintenance will have on road conditions at this point.

- Scenery – scenic views of Morice River, Owen Lake, Nadina Mountain, Swiss Burn
- Features – Morice River, Swiss Burn, Buck Creek Falls
- Information – Forestry interpretive viewpoint in Swiss Burn
- Wildlife viewing – potential for sighting bear, moose, deer, mountain goats
- Historical or cultural interest – Swiss Burn, cultural and heritage land use, social and economic relationship of traditional territories and the Wet'suwet'en hereditary system, traditional trail network, territorial boundaries
- Opportunities to talk to local residents - some potential on Buck Flats road
- Fuel and meal services – Houston only
- **Potential Road Tour rating - HIGH**
- **Rationale –** Potential for forest management interpretation, possible wildlife viewing, potential to discuss wildfires, relatively short tour suitable for ½ day outing

C28 BABINE LAKE CIRCLE TOUR

Houston to Topley to Granisle, Granisle cutoff the Babine Lake Road, back to Highway 16 near Smithers, follow highway 16 to Houston, approximately 215 kms in length.

- Road & traffic conditions – approximately 2/3 of this tour is on paved roads. The Babine Lake road from Highway 16 is usually a well maintained gravel forestry road although it can become very rough when wet weather and heavy logging traffic occur at the same time. The Granisle cutoff road receive less maintenance and is often quite rough. It is uncertain what effect changes in MOF road maintenance will have on road conditions at this point.
- Scenery – Rural farms & ranches to Topley, forested hillsides from Topley to Granisle, fine views along Babine Lake, Forested hills, small lakes and old burn along Granisle cutoff, Lake, cut blocks and subalpine pass on way back to Highway 16, then farmland from near Smithers to Houston
- Features – Findlay Falls, Fulton River Spawning channel, Red Bluff Provincial Park, Babine Lake, Chapman Lake, Babine Mountains Provincial Park, several MOF recreation sites near this route, Indian Lovestone Telegraph Cabin in Quick, Walcott Suspension bridge between Quick and Houston
- Information – Information stops along highway near Topley and Topley Landing, Interpretive displays at Fulton River Spawning channels, Information center at Granisle
- Wildlife viewing – potential to view bears, moose and deer
- Historical or cultural interest – Heritage war site, territorial boundaries, legends, heritage camps, heritage trails, traditional fishing sites, historical overview of the Indian act, hunting and food gathering sites, potential cultural interest at Tatchek village at the mouth of the Fulton River
- Opportunities to talk to local residents- potential at Topley, Topley Landing, Tatchek, Granisle
- Fuel and meal services – Topley, Granisle, Telkwa

- **Potential Road Tour rating - HIGH**
- **Rationale –** Culture and natural history interest, potential for Forestry Interpretation, a variety of views, potential to talk to locals

C29 FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR(BIWANIŁ-TAGECHTOLAIN- MESZI KWE- HONEAGH BIN)

Morice River Road to Francois Lake turn-off, along north shore of Francois Lake to the Ferry crossing, north to Burns Lake and then back to Houston along Highway 16, approximately 220 kms in length, more than ½ of the route is paved.

- Road & traffic conditions – Morice River Road is wide and well maintained to Francois Lake turn-off where it becomes more narrow and winding, road along Francois Lake improves as you travel east, the road from the ferry back to Burns Lake is paved.. Increased harvesting of pine beetle timber is likely to result in heavy logging traffic on some portions of these roads. It is uncertain what effect changes in MOF road maintenance will have on road conditions at this point.
- Scenery – Views of Morice River, Owen Lake, Francois Lake, farming landscape along Francois Lake and back to Burns Lake. Farming and forest landscape between Burns Lake and Houston.
- Features – Morice River, Owen Lake, Francois Lake, Several MOF Recreation sites along route, Nourse Creek Trail on Francois Lake, Opal Beds trail near Burns Lake.
- Information – Info Centre in Burns Lake, museum, info stop on Highway 16 near Topley
- Wildlife viewing – potential bears, moose, deer
- Historical or cultural interest – Swiss Burn, early ranching history, museum, cultural and heritage sites, winter camps, trap lines, historical developments (industrial/residential) and impacts on culture, territorial boundaries, legends, hunting and food gathering sites
- Opportunities to talk to local residents – Colleymount, Burns Lake and Topley
- Fuel and meal services – Ferry crossing, Burns Lake and Topley
- **Potential Road Tour rating - HIGH**
- **Rationale –** Potential for interpretation of forest management, early ranching history, scenic locations, several suitable stops for lunch

C30 FRANCOIS LAKE/WISTARIA CIRCLE TOUR (TSELH TSE K'IZ-NETANLI)

Same route as above to Francois Lake then south to Wistaria along Ootsa lake to Grassy Plains, cross Francois Lake by ferry, north to Burns Lake and back to Houston along Highway 16, approximately 260 kms, less than ½ of which is paved.

- Road & traffic conditions – the road from Francois Lake south is winding and narrow in some places. Increased harvesting of pine beetle timber is likely to result in heavy logging traffic on some portions of these roads. It is uncertain what effect changes in MOF road maintenance will have on road conditions at this point.
- Scenery – more rural ranching landscape south of Francois Lake, scenic views over Ootsa Lake into Tweedsmuir Provincial Park

- Features – as above with potential to stop at Ootsa Lake
- Information – as above
- Wildlife viewing – as above
- Historical or cultural interest – more ranching, impact of industrial development on the Cheslatta nation, cultural/heritage sites
- Opportunities to talk to local residents – as above plus Wistaria and Grassy Plains
- Fuel and meal services – as above plus Grassy Plains and Southbank
- **Potential Road Tour rating - MODERATE**
- **Rationale –** Has much the same interests as Francois Lake circle tour above but likely at least another hours travel time, many people may find there is too much gravel road driving for a day trip.

7.5.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
C26	Dungate Creek to Buck Flat circuit	**High**
C27	Morice/Carrier Forestry Tour	**High**
C28	Babine Lake circle tour	**High**
C29	Francois Lake circle tour	**High**
C30	Francois Lake/Wistaria circle tour	Moderate

7.5.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.5.3.1 MARKETS

Road tours are conducted primarily by free independent regional and short-haul visitors from North American markets. This group tends to travel by private vehicle and will make a decision to participate in sightseeing and touring once in the region. Secondarily, bus/motorcoach tour participants from the US, Europe and Asia. Both these markets are well represented along Highway 16.

Road touring activity focuses on driving and sightseeing, on highways and major roads and in cities/towns. While this type of touring is primarily self-guided, guided bus and motorcoach tours are also part of the market. In the US and Canada over half of the total population reportedly participates in sightseeing, and participation rates have been growing. Short-haul and regional markets are primarily travelling in personal vehicles while long-haul visitors are more likely to visit sightseeing attractions and to spend a greater proportion of their money on packaged tours.

In general, the further a tourist had to come to get to BC, the more likely sightseeing was the primary purpose of their trip. Visitors from Europe, long-haul US and Eastern Canada are also more likely to visit sightseeing attractions and to spend a greater proportion of their money on packaged tours. Since many of these tours are offered with bus or motorcoach as transportation, it follows that the long-haul US and European visitors are also more likely to use buses for transportation. By far the majority of visitors use car or motorcycle for transportation while in BC, suggesting that most visitors take self-guided sightseeing trips.

As mentioned above, the further travellers have come from, the more likely they are to participate in a guided, packaged tour. These travellers value the knowledge of the area by the tour company and the convenience of being able to see all of the major sights without significant planning. Packaged tour travellers are willing to pay for the convenience of having most of their sightseeing, transportation, accommodation and food arranged for them. Independent travellers value the flexibility and privacy of travelling on their own according to their own schedule. They may have planned a detailed itinerary before arrival, or plan their trip along the way, enabling them to experience certain venues for longer periods of time (perhaps with unplanned overnight stays).

Many regions of the province and neighbouring Alberta have upgraded their hospitality infrastructure, services and attractions in recent years to pursue independent travellers. A major source of competition is Alaska, the Yukon and Northeast BC. Many visitors to the Northwest region are travelling to and from Alaska and do not have a lot of discretionary holiday time. Catering more to this market means providing experiences not available further north.

Many highway visitors to the region could be attracted to spend more time and money locally, or are actively looking for something to do but have been unable to find an experience to meet their expectations. This means the tourism industry will have to provide more attractions, interpretation and accommodation and make a stronger appeal to the free independent travellers.

7.5.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

The road touring product is oriented toward highway markets and front country facilities, so its access and use of the backcountry is minimal compared to other outdoor products. Still, issues such as visual quality, participation in land use planning and relations with forest companies are considered important to the future development of the sector.60 Where travellers are being encouraged to use secondary roads, then potential conflicts with industrial and logging truck traffic will be a concern.

Because the Morice is already highly roaded, there is pressure to prevent further circle tours from being developed. While this may prove beneficial for tourism, it also increases access for sustenance hunting and poaching.

7.5.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

- The key features sought for road touring include access to a variety of frontcountry attractions and interpreted experiences, high quality scenic viewing, wildlife viewing and sightseeing potential, and activities in a park or protected setting.
- The key to unlocking the potential of this market is to develop along four key dimensions, including staging areas, attractions, services and tour corridors. The primary mode of transportation in the region is private vehicle (RVs and cars) and most travellers are on their way to somewhere else in the region, or Alaska. They have to be given safe and convenient

---

[60] TREK International Inc., 2000, COTA Membership Survey Results: Land Use Issues October/November 2000, Council of Tourism Associations of BC.

opportunities to explore more corridors in the region and then these opportunities have to be actively promoted. A themed First Nations cultural heritage interpretive tour, for example, that packages together attractions, interpretive sites, accommodation and dining could work.

- Public infrastructure, especially highways and roads, is also critical to future development, as it will determine the quality of visitor experience. This involves mainly highway signage and road conditions, both of which need significant upgrading so visitors are presented with better information and direction about more touring options.
- Successful road touring regions have made commitments to preserving their areas while developing roads for improved access. Corridor Management Plans (CMP) are being used to establish clear guidelines for development and activities along a route. This helps coordinate and prioritize infrastructure investment and build awareness among tourism operators about the need for a cooperative and sustainable approach to service and development.
- The ability to tap into senior government funding for highway development and improvement projects could determine how successful communities will be for developing their road tour markets.
- Lastly, in order to compete in the tourist market regionally and worldwide, coordinated development and marketing efforts that emphasize an area's distinctive features are needed to draw tourists. This includes working with other communities especially in the Lakes district (Burns Lake, Southside) where broader regional road tours would have more potential. This could include marketing tools such as Internet websites, which can be used to provide information that allows individual tourists to plan their own itineraries and make bookings for accommodations in advance. Tourists should able to develop self-guided tours. There should also be supporting material and interpretive/sightseeing facilities along the touring route to support this self-guided activity. More conventional collateral material such as brochures and maps/guides in cooperation with communities and operators throughout the route will also be helpful. Another possible tool are cassettes and CDs with narrative tours of the area.

7.5.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

The Morice has a diversity of landforms, with rugged mountains to the southwest and rolling, gentle terrain in the north and east. The lakes and rivers are renowned for their beauty and the quality of the fishing. There is an abundance of large game species for hunting or wildlife viewing. Much of the landbase is readily accessible by two- or four-wheel drive vehicle. Houston has a core of service businesses, which would allow it to serve as a hub for circle tours to surrounding features and communities. These conditions are favourable for a road-touring product linked to a variety of short-duration outdoor activities.

The lack of growth in highway traffic counts suggests that communities will have to attract more of the existing visitor volumes if they are to increase activity. The highways and main roads in the study area are capable of handling more tourist traffic during peak season, and the road tour product could be developed hand-in-hand with much needed tourism infrastructure to enhance all outdoor products.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		Babine (A&B)	Houston (C&D)	Southwest (E)
Markets	Demand	Medium	Medium	Low
	Competition	High	High	High
	Overall potential	Medium	Medium	Low
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Medium-Low	Medium-Low	Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Develop-ment Needs	Crown tenure	Low	Low	Low
	Infrastructure	High	High	Low
	Capital	Medium-High	Medium-High	Low
Employment opportunities		Medium-High	Medium-High	Low
Opportunities		Variety of circle tours based out of Houston with a focus on Babine Lake, Morice River and the Lakes District. Opportunities for linkages resorts on Babine and Francois lakes and product development in cooperation with Southside for a region-wide tour product.		

On the following page is the suitability map for the Road Touring tourism product (Exhibit 22).

Road Touring Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

Road Touring Ranking

▨ High Suitability

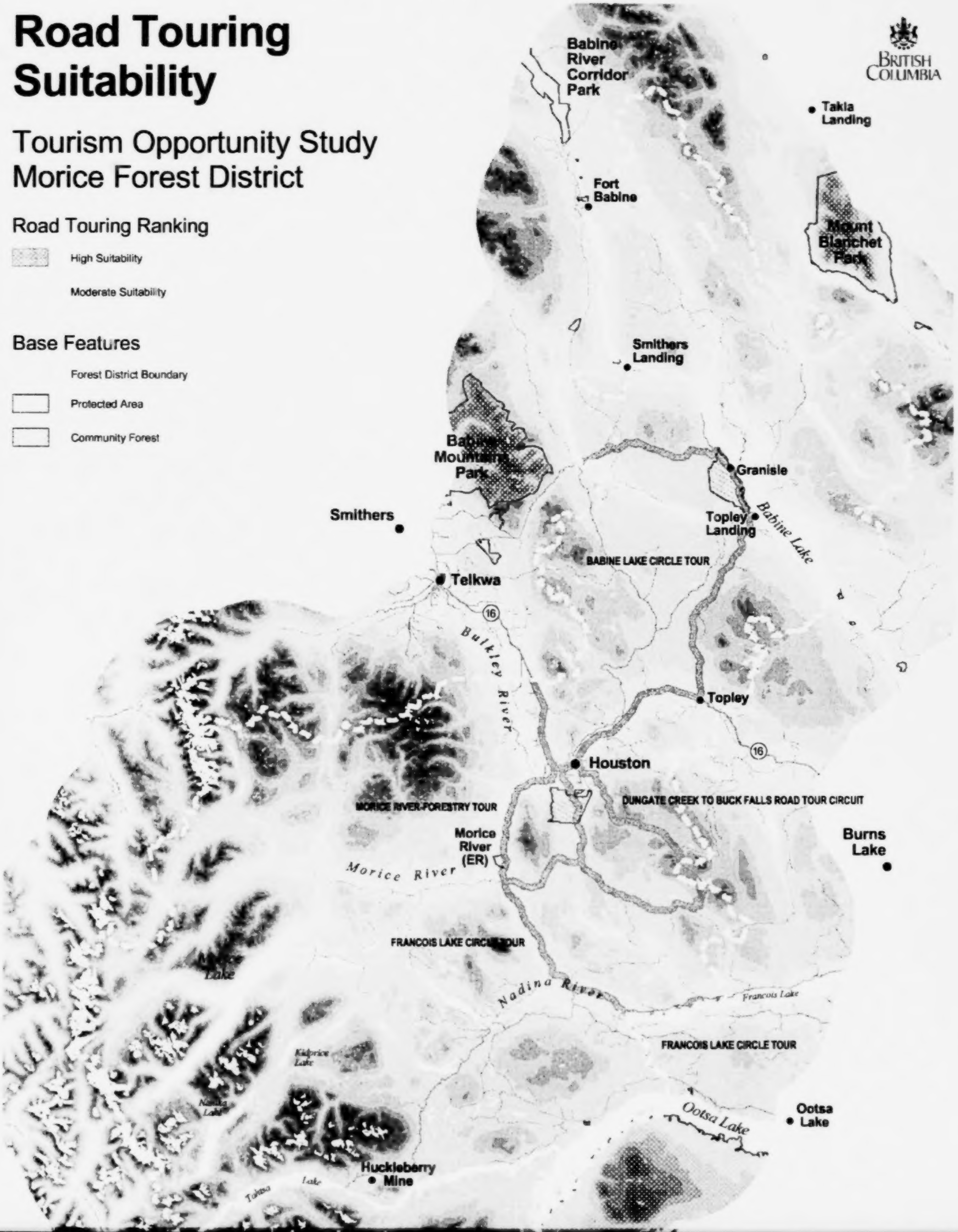
Moderate Suitability

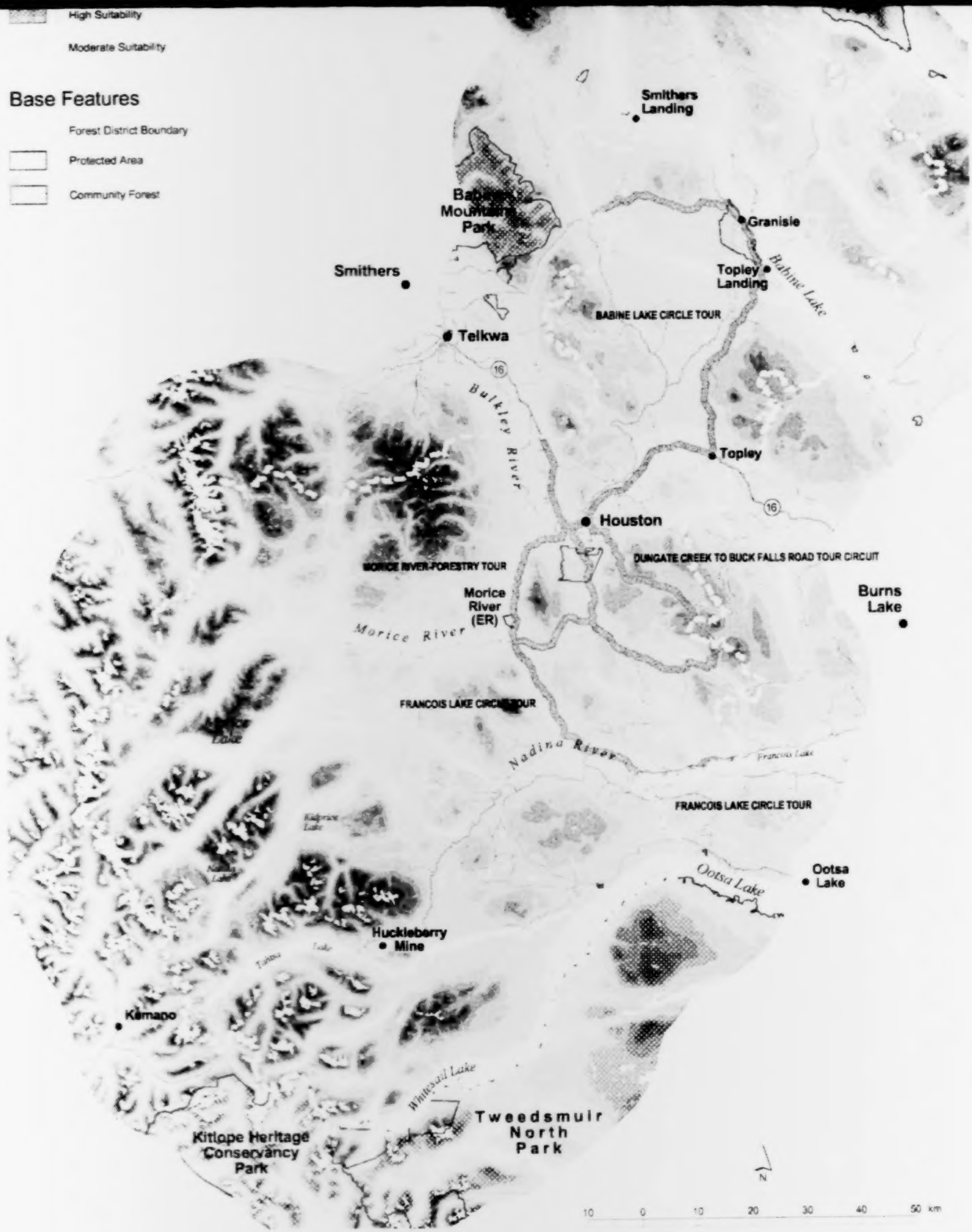
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest


BRITISH COLUMBIA
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
Mount Blanchet Park
Smithers Landing
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
BABINE LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
16
Houston
DUNGATE CREEK TO BUCK FALLS ROAD TOUR CIRCUIT
MORICE RIVER-FORESTRY TOUR
Morice River (ER)
Morice River
Burns Lake
FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
Morice Lake
Nadina River
Francois Lake
FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake


High Suitability
Moderate Suitability
Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
Smithers Landing
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Smithers
BABINE LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
16
Houston
MORICE RIVER-FORESTRY TOUR
DUNGATE CREEK TO BUCK FALLS ROAD TOUR CIRCUIT
Burns Lake
Morice River (ER)
Morice River
FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
Morice Lake
Nadina River
Francois Lake
FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
Kemano
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10
0
10
20
30
40
50 km

7.6 Air Tour (Nyec'adihl'git)

7.6.1 Description

The Air Tour and Access Product is associated with scenic touring as well as providing access to and opportunities for mountain biking, paragliding, hiking, skiing and fishing. It utilizes the diversity of helicopters and the affordability of fixed wing aircraft. It compliments many tourism activity products. It has two components:

- An *air tour* allows tourists an opportunity to view surrounding landscapes while experiencing flying. The tours are best limited to an hour. Dramatic landscapes or diverse features are essential.
- The *air access tour* contains an air tour component but it is primarily to get recreationists to where they want to be. The turn around time from the base to the delivery area should be done within the shortest time possible. It is most suited for the helicopter. The access tour can deliver fishermen to the best fishing hole and, if need be, to instantly transfer them to another hole. This is an activity that is best managed by existing guides. Mountain bikers, hikers and ski tours can be delivered to the summit to enjoy the alpine/subalpine ridges and can be picked up or may return by trail. They may take a picnic lunch. Heli-skiing and paragliding activities require drop off at the summit of pristine snowfields, pickup at the base of the hill and then a drop off once again at the summit. The access tour is most profitable where the features are within a 15-minute flight of the base camp or airfield.

To determine the relationship of the features to the base camp or airfield the following criteria were identified:

- The staging areas are determined by it's ability to attract tourists, close linkage to industrial opportunities and the availability of required infrastructure.
- An air tour product should not take longer than one hour and at average speeds of up 150 km per hour, a 60 km radius from the center is optimal for circle tours.
- The greatest and most profitable opportunities lie where the features are closest to the base camp or airfield.

7.6.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Scenic recreation features suitable for air tour. Suitable activity opportunities close to staging areas.
Weaknesses	Poor community support. Wildlife are incidental and air touring may disturb those in visible areas. Environmental concerns with activities utilizing air access to subalpine/alpine ridges. Concern for impact on rebuilding caribou herd in the Telkwa Ranges
Concerns	Land use uncertainties, lack of community support, declining industrial base. Access and development of cultural and heritage sensitive areas

7.6.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

The Morice Study Area has geographical features well suited for the air tour product. The mountain ranges to the west have a range of features including jagged peaks, rounded ridges, flower meadows with many small lakes and ponds and small glaciers. The many lakes and rivers provide a diversity of scenery and recreation opportunity. The primary staging point for the air tour is Houston, and a 60 km radius touches many parts of the study area from Babine Lake to Morice Lake and south to Ootsa Lake. Although, Houston is noted as the primary staging area, there are opportunities for secondary staging areas associated to a recreation activity. There are also features that are well suited as destination features. The following discussion identifies the recreation resources within the 60 km range and destination features.

7.6.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

The potential opportunities for the air tour product in the Morice fall under two categories:

Air Touring based on the two primary criteria:

1) distance from an airport or air base
2) variety of scenery, and

Suitability for ***Air Destinations*** is based on two factors:

1) distance from an airport or air base
2) a recreation product suitable for air access

7.6.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

Air Touring

The Morice District has two areas with high suitability for air touring and two with moderate suitability.

E1, E3 THE TELKWA RANGES (NELGI'L'AT)

There is a variety of scenery including alpine ridges, glacier capped peaks, lakes and the potential for wildlife sightings (caribou, wolves, bears, goats). These ranges are also within a 60 km flight range of both Smithers and Houston flying bases.

- **Air touring suitability: HIGH**
- **Rationale:** Variety of features, wildlife and within 60 km radius from flying bases. Area is rich and abundant with cultural and heritage resources.

C7 - THE CHINA NOSE, C6 - MORICE MOUNTAIN AND C9 - NADINA MOUNTAIN (DETSI'NEGH-BIWANII)

All the areas fall within a range a 60 km flight range of bases in Houston and can be grouped as a ***triangle tour***. There are alpine areas, dramatic rock formations, lakes and potential for seeing wildlife (goats, caribou, bears.

- **Air touring suitability: HIGH**
- **Rationale:** Variety of features, wildlife and within 60 km radius from flying bases. Area is rich and abundant with cultural and heritage resources

C2 - THE MATZEHTZEL PEAK AREA

Varied scenery with subalpine peaks, lakes, ponds and a possibility of seeing wildlife, however it is less scenic than the two areas listed above and would likely be less attractive to sight seeing air tours.

- **Air touring suitability: MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** Features and wildlife within a 60 km radius from flying bases.

E5, E6, E7, E8, E9, E10A,B, E11, E14, E15 - CLORE, GOSNELL, MORICE, AND NANIKA/KIDPRICE VALLEYS (TSCC'ULH TESDLIZ BIN-LHUDIS BIN_

These Area encompassing the is highly scenic with rugged glacier capped peaks, alpine ridges, lakes and wildlife however it is outside of the 60 km radius from Houston and has therefore been classified as moderate.

- **Air touring suitability: MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** High features and wildlife beyond the 60 km radius from flying bases. Area is rich and abundant with cultural and heritage resources.

Air Destination

The following areas were judged to be suitable for access because they are within the 60 km radius of either the Smithers or Houston area and they have a product suitable for air access.

B 3 TOPLEY LANDING OR GRANISLE, E 1B MOOSESKIN JOHNNY, E3B BURNIE LAKES, C12 B LOWER MORICE RIVER (TALDZI-WIYIZ BIN-NELGI'L'AT-BIWANII-CI'DI TOSTAN)

These ***Existing or potential lodge*** locations fall within 60 km radius of the Smithers airport and Houston staging areas. Suitable areas for air drop-off of clients travelling into the Smithers regional airport.

- **Air destination suitability: HIGH**
- **Rationale:** High features, existing and potential lodges within the 60 km radius from flying bases and regional airport.

E1,E3 - TELKWAS,(NELGI'L'AT) C2 - MATZEHTZEL, E4 - HERD DOME, (TALBITS KWAH)AND E7 - REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN (LHUDIS BIN)

Excellent hiking areas associated with ***potential Hut to Hut*** systems within the appropriate flight distances of Houston Heliports.

- **Air destination suitability: HIGH**
- **Rationale:** Within the 60 km radius from flying bases.

E 8 THE ATNA/TAHTSA ROUTE, (C'INNIGGIT NENIKEKH) E 17 TROITSA/COLES (TSCC'ULH TESDLIZ BIN)

These two ***potential hiking Lodges or Hut to Hut trail systems*** sustain an air drop off of parties to trailheads or lodges within the system. The trailheads are outside the optimal 60 km flight distance from an airport.

- **Air destination suitability: MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** Outside the 60 km radius from flying bases.

C12 MORICE RIVER, E15 NANIKA/KIDPRICE SYSTEM (LHUDIS BIN-C'INNIGGIT NENIKEKH)

Canoeing products associated with hut to hut accommodation could both provide opportunities for air drop off of clients starting a trip package.

- **Air destination suitability: MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** The Morice River system is accessible by road the opportunity for air access to canoeing associated hut to hut system into the Nanika/ Kidprice and the Seel - Troitsa Lakes is outside the 60 km radius from the flying base.

C 6 - MORICE MOUNTAIN,(BIWANII) C 7 - CHINA NOSE (DETSINEGH), C 9 – NADINA (BIWANII) MOUNTAIN, E 1, E 3 - TELKWA RANGES (NELGIAAT

These peaks offer tremendous ***hiking opportunities enhanced by air access*** and all are suitable for Heli-hiking drop-off and pick up as they are within a suitable flying distance of Houston heli-ports.

- **Air destination suitability: HIGH**
- **Rationale:** tremendous hiking opportunities within the optimal 60 km radius for Heli-hiking.

E 4 - HERD DOME, E 5A - NORTH MORICE RANGE, E 7 - REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN, E 11 - SIBOLA RANGE

These alpine areas have features that have excellent potential for ***hiking opportunities enhanced by air access*** but lie outside the optimum 60 km radius. Potential would be somewhat lower than peaks and ranges close to town.

- **Air destination suitability: MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** tremendous hiking opportunities outside the optimal 60 km radius for Heli-hiking.

7.6.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
	AIR TOURS	
E 1, E 3	THE TELKWA RANGES	**High**
C 7	China Nose	**High**
C 6	Morice Mountain	**High**
C 9	Nadina Mountain	**High**
C 2	Matzehtzel Peak area	Moderate
E 5	Morice Ranges	Moderate
E 6	Tableland Mountain	Moderate
E 7	Redslide Mountain	Moderate
E 8	Atna Bay To Tahtsa Lake Route	Moderate
E 9	Clore River Headwaters	Moderate
E 10a	Dog Ear Peak To Nanika Lake	Moderate
E 10b	Nanika To Tahtsa Lakes	Moderate
E 11	Sibola Range	Moderate
E 14	Morice Lake	Moderate
E 15	Nanika / Kidprice / Stepp / Anzac/ Lamprey Lakes	Moderate
	AIR DESTINATION	
	Existing or potential lodge	
B 3	Topley Landing or Granisle	**High**
E 1b	Mooseskin Johnny	**High**
E 3b	Burnie Lakes	**High**
C 12b	Lower Morice River	**High**
	Hut system within radius	
E1,E3	Telkwas	**High**
C 2	Matzehtzel	**High**
E 4	Herd Dome	**High**
E 7	Redslide Mountain	**High**
	Hut to Hut trail outside radius	
E 8	the Atna/Tahtsa Route	Moderate
E 17	Troitsa/Coles	Moderate
	Hut to Hut accommodation river	
C 12	Morice River	Moderate
E 15	Nanika/Kidprice system	Moderate
	Hiking opportunities inside radius	
C 6	Morice Mountain	**High**
C 7	China Nose	**High**
C 9	Nadina Mountain	**High**
E 1, E 3	Telkwa Ranges	**High**
	Hiking opportunities outside radius	
E 4	Herd Dome	Moderate
E 5a	North Morice Range	Moderate
E 7	Redslide Mountain	Moderate
E 11	Sibola Range	Moderate

7.6.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.6.3.1 MARKETS

The market for air tours appears to have considerable potential, particularly as the North American and European population ages and as travellers continue to be interested in viewing unique scenery and features in an exciting way.

There is no market profile available for helicopter of airplane supported activities. Anecdotal evidence suggests that clients are generally FIT (free independent travellers), and often couples with high levels of disposable income, as air tours have among the highest per diem charges of any outdoor activity. Generally speaking, long-haul visitors, who are known to have higher average spending that short-haul or regional visitors, are likely to be clients.

Supported activities include sightseeing, hiking, trekking/backpacking, trail riding, ATV riding, mountain biking, fishing, skiing and snowmobiling. Helicopter and fixed-wing touring is not confined to the conventional – for example, BC Golf Safaris (Whistler) flies golfers into the alpine for high-altitude golfing. In all cases, the helicopter or fixed-wing aircraft is the primary mode of access to and from a central staging area.

There is existing competition in the Morice for this activity as several companies are based in and operate out of Smithers airport. Companies include Canadian Helicopters Ltd. and Alpine Lakes Air both of whom conduct flight seeing, mountaintop picnics and heli-hiking. There are also charter opportunities out of Francois and Ootsa Lake.

7.6.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

There is very strong pressure in prime US wilderness areas such as Hawaii and Alaska to reduce or eliminate helicopter tourism, particularly in park areas. Increased noise and access are considered the prime culprits in generating negative environmental impacts. So far, this has not been a significant issue except on the south coast.

In BC, the BC Wildlife Federation has often called for a halt to the issuing of CR tenure that involve the use of helicopters in the alpine because of negative impacts on wildlife, their habitats, and also existing recreational users. US studies have shown that in western North America helicopter disturbance of mountain goats and mountain sheep extends to distances up to 2 kilometres. Grizzly impacts appear to be of most concern as it is believed that summer activities in which participants are dropped off in the alpine have been increasing the risk of grizzly/human conflicts, thereby increasing the probability grizzlies being destroyed for public safety.

7.6.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

Considering that many high capability areas have Commercial Recreation tenures issued, or have tenure applications pending, in addition to the capital-intensive nature of this activity, the potential for expansion may be limited to existing tenure holders. Alternatively, an operator specializing in a core activity such as hiking could charter helicopter use on an as-needed basis.

Since the helicopter or airplane becomes the main mode of transportation to the staging area, the need for on-the-ground transportation infrastructure is considerably lessened. Once at the staging area, activity infrastructure is still required.

7.6.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

The potential for flight-related outdoor activities in the Morice is average because of the area's highly altered terrain due to timber harvesting. There are good opportunities for short-duration tours out of Houston to key recreational features like Nadina and Nanika mountains. The outstanding features of the extreme southwest are too distant to access from Houston but could be a viable product for a lake-based fixed wing operator on Ootsa or Francois lake. The south lakes have good potential because of their relative remoteness and lack of development.

There are some constraining factors, however. First, the overall low tourism volumes into the area will limit the potential. Second, flight-seeing and air tours are expensive products and only affordable for the higher-spending visitors. Finally, from a business development perspective, air tours are capital intensive. An operator could not justify the purchase of equipment for tourism-only use. Business would have to be based on catering to other resource users, such as forestry or mining, and then supplemented with tourism. Competition from Smithers-based operators and charter outfits on Ootsa and Francois lakes will have the edge in developing this product.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		Babine (A&B)	Houston (C&D)	Southwest (E)
Markets	Demand	Low	Low	Low
	Competition	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Overall potential	Low	Low	Medium
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Low	Low	Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Development Needs	Crown tenure	Low	Low	Low
	Infrastructure	Low	Low	Medium
	Capital	High	High	High
Employment opportunities		Low	Low	Low
	Opportunities	• Limited opportunities but some potential for air access to features from lodges in Topley Landing and Granisle	• Opportunity for quick access out of Houston to prime hiking routes to nearby mountains (China Nose, Nadina and Morice). • Air tours of these same features.	• Air tours of the southwest lakes, linked with Nechako reservoir, North Tweedsmuir and dam.

A map showing air touring suitability can be found on the next page (Exhibit 23).

Air Touring Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

Air Touring Ranking

▨ High Suitability

(Please note: Air Destination polygons are not included on this map)

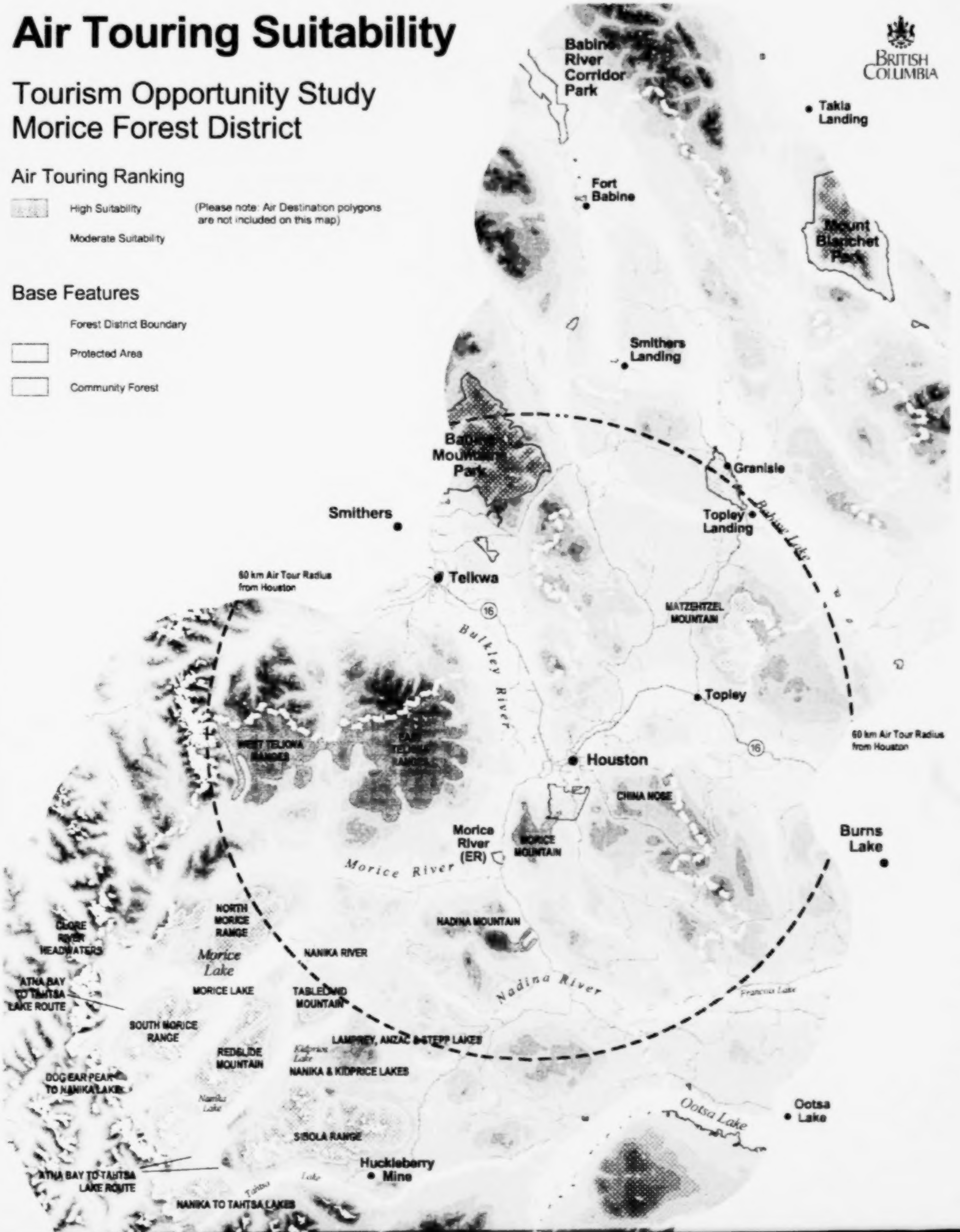
Moderate Suitability

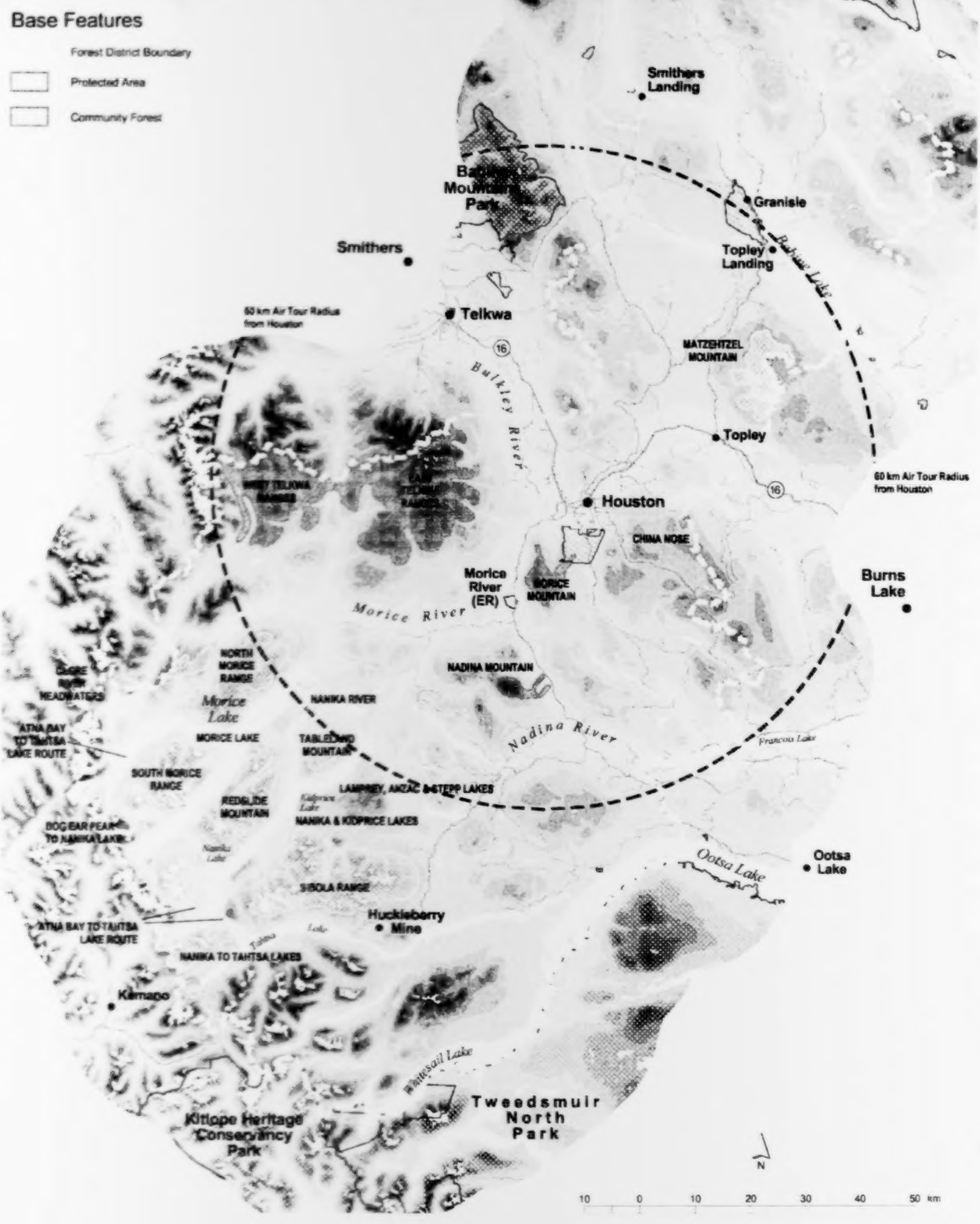
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest


British Columbia
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
Mount Blanchet Park
Smithers Landing
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Babine Lake
Topley Landing
Smithers
Telkwa
60 km Air Tour Radius from Houston
16
Bulkley River
Matzehtzel Mountain
Topley
60 km Air Tour Radius from Houston
16
West Telkwa Ranges
East Telkwa Ranges
Houston
China Nose
Morice River (ER)
Morice Mountain
Burns Lake
Morice River
Clore River Headwaters
North Morice Range
Nadina Mountain
Morice Lake
Nanika River
Atna Bay to Tahtsa Lake Route
Morice Lake
Tableland Mountain
Nadina River
Francois Lake
South Morice Range
Lamprey, Anzac & Stepp Lakes
Redslide Mountain
Kidprice Lake
Nanika & Kidprice Lakes
Dog Ear Peak to Nanika Lakes
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Sibola Range
Huckleberry Mine
Atna Bay to Tahtsa Lake Route
Tahtsa Lake
Nanika to Tahtsa Lakes


Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
Smithers Landing
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Babine Lake
Topley Landing
Smithers
Telkwa
50 km Air Tour Radius from Houston
16
Bulkley River
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
16
60 km Air Tour Radius from Houston
CHINA NOSE
Morice River (ER)
MORICE MOUNTAIN
Burns Lake
Morice River
NORTH MORICE RANGE
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
NADINA MOUNTAIN
Morice Lake
NANIKA RIVER
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
MORICE LAKE
TABLELAND MOUNTAIN
Nadina River
Francois Lake
SOUTH MORICE RANGE
LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES
REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN
Kidprice Lake
NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SIBOLA RANGE
Huckleberry Mine
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Tahtsa Lake
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
Kemano
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10 0 10 20 30 40 50 km

7.7 Lake Touring

7.7.1 Description

The lake cruising product encompasses a range of vessels, from larger vessels carrying dozens of tourists to smaller boats carrying less than a dozen passengers. The focus of this resource evaluation is on vessels with linkages to a large lake such as Babine Lake with lakeside communities, accessible features and high level scenery. Cruising in large lake settings has several distinct segments:

5. A *large vessel cruise* that can provide a sightseeing tour of the lake or provide access to the larger lakeside communities and accessible features. Generally, these operators carry over 50 passengers and may be scheduled runs or associated with bus and other tour packages.

6. A *small vessel cruise* allows for the potential of a scheduled or unscheduled link to various lakeside communities as well as providing custom tours to accessible features.

7. The *mothership kayaking* segment, which involves kayak touring based on a live-aboard vessel which transports the kayaks and passengers from destination to destination. This expands the range visitors can travel and allows for more luxurious amenities while decreasing land-based campsite needs/impacts and vulnerability to declining weather conditions. Associated with large lakes with complex shorelines.

8. The *houseboat* segment is a self-guided adventure on a fully furnished small vessel. Typically houseboats have all the modern conveniences and are available in models that sleep from six to sixteen people. Boats may be equipped with swim slides & ladder and all have complete kitchen, sleeping and bathroom facilities.

The success of a diverse regional pocket cruise requires:

- Scenic with a variety of shoreline features such as islands, points, bays, marshes, cliffs, complex shoreline
- Beaches, preferably sand, suited to beach activities and for houseboats - a place to beach for the night.
- Suitable anchorages and protected waters, for overnight stops and safety during storms
- Suitable climate and weather, warm with limited wind.
- Lakes large enough to allow a circuit or linear tour with one or more overnight stops
- The opportunities for a variety of recreational activities, such as fishing, water skiing, hiking, wildlife viewing
- The development of infrastructure (fuelling, pump-out stations, fresh water supplies, etc.),
- Agreement and coordination of lakeside communities,
- Community involvement; historical and cultural exposition, archaeological exhibition and interpretation; and linkages to other tourism products, such as air or bus circuit tours with a lake cruising component.

- Cultural interest, 1st nations, early settlement or mining history.

7.7.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Large lakes with portions of high feature values, circuit tour opportunities accessibility to communities and amenities. Sport fish.
Weaknesses	Scenic values in key areas are affected by poor cutblock design or over harvesting. Cool climate limits water activities.
Concerns	Quality of the infrastructure. Scenic management of timber harvesting. Tenures

7.7.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

The Morice Forest District has numerous lakes that may be suitable for lake touring opportunities but the limitations of remoteness, cool weather, low regional population base, and high investment costs limit the opportunities to only those lakes that are closest to amenities and access and are large enough and varied enough to provide for recreational diversity.

The lakes in the region are best suited for the small vessel cruise (custom) and houseboat segments. Small vessel cruising are linked closely with sport fishing. General limitations for boating include the cool summer's characteristic of the area, the potential for strong winds and inclement weather.

7.7.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

Only three lakes within the Morice District are potentially suitable for cruising or houseboats: Babine Lake, Francois Lake and Morice Lake.

The criteria to determine a lake's suitability for touring and houseboating include:

- Size – preferences are lakes large enough to allow a circuit or linear tour with one or more overnight stops.
- Accessibility – good access and proximity to service centers.
- Scenery – scenic with a variety of shoreline features with a focus on islands, bays, cliffs, beaches and interesting and complex shorelines.
- Beaches – preferably sand, suited to beach activities
- Climate and weather – warm with limited wind is best
- Anchorages & protected waters – suitable anchorages and protected waters, for overnight stops and safety during storms
- Recreation activities – a wide range of activities including fishing, water skiing, swimming in shallow bays, beach activities, sailing, and wildlife viewing.
- Cultural Interest – Cultural interest, 1st nations, early settlement or mining history.

7.7.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

Each of the three lakes identified as having potential is assessed for these characteristics.

B2 BABINE LAKE – EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS B4 & MORRISON ARM

- Size – Approximately 50 km from South to North and 2-3 km in width
- Accessibility – Accessible from launch sites at Granisle and Topley Landing
- Scenery – Islands, Bays, Inlet streams and marsh areas, mixed deciduous and coniferous forest
- Beaches – variety of beaches including sand, pebble and cobble
- Climate and weather – SBSmc & SBSdk, includes the drier and sunnier areas of Babine Lake
- Anchorages & protected waters – many good bays, islands also protect boaters from the wind
- Recreation activities – fishing, water skiing, swimming in shallow bays, beach activities, sailing, wildlife viewing
- Cultural Interest – Number of Nadooeten cultural sites, abandoned mine, Old Fort 1st nations village
- **Potential for lake touring – HIGH**
- **Rationale –** Has all the characteristics of a good touring lake environment, drawbacks include periods of cool weather during the summer, water is cold except in shallow bays and existing and potential and existing disruption of viewscape by timber harvesting

B1,3 BABINE LAKE – NORTHWEST ARM, WESTERN SIDE

- Size – Very large lake, 177 km from North to South
- Accessibility – accessible from launch sites at Granisle, Topley Landing, Smithers Landing and Fort Babine
- Scenery – Some bays, few islands, mostly coniferous forest
- Beaches – occasional sand beaches, mostly pebble or cobble
- Climate and weather – SBS mc - somewhat wetter than the eastern shore, large waves build up over long reaches on much of this part of the lake
- Anchorages & protected waters – some but fewer than the eastern bays and islands
- Recreation activities – fishing, sailing
- Cultural Interest – likely some 1st nations cultural sites, particularly around creek mouths
- **Potential for lake touring - MODERATE**
- **Rationale –** Exposed shoreline, less scenic that east side of lake, fewer potential recreation activities

C 19 FRANCOIS LAKE - (NETAIBUHN)

- Size – large lake
- Accessibility – accessible via paved road south of Burns Lake or via the Morice-Owen forestry road south of Houston (approximately 65 km)
- Scenery – rolling hills with mixed wood forests, natural clearings on south facing areas, ranchland, shoreline is fairly linear
- Beaches – few beaches, mostly pebble or cobble
- Climate and weather – SBSdk, warmest and driest summers in the Morice district
- Anchorages & protected waters - some
- Recreation activities – fishing, sailing, beach activities, swimming in shallow bays
- Cultural Interest – early ranching history, 1st nations culture
- **Potential for lake touring - MODERATE**
- **Rationale –** The relative lack of interesting shoreline features makes this lake less interesting than Babine Lake to the North

E14 MORICE LAKE (WETZINBIN)

- Size – Large lake, approximately 18 kms from launching site to Atna Bay
- Accessibility – Approximately 80 km south of Houston on the Morice River Forestry Road
- Scenery – Scenic peaks of the coastal ranges, more scenic further down the lake
- Beaches – Some sand beaches
- Climate and weather – SBSmc and ESSFmk, dry but cool summers, strong winds often build up large waves, particularly during the afternoons
- Anchorages & protected waters – Atna Bay provides one of the few well protected areas and anchorages on the lake
- Recreation activities – fishing, sailing, wildlife viewing, scenic viewing
- Cultural Interest – known Wet'suwet'en sites in the Atna Bay area
- **Potential for lake touring - MODERATE**
- **Rationale –** length of access route, few protected areas and strong winds contribute to a moderate rating

7.7.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
B 1	Babine Lake – Northwest Arm	Moderate
B 2	Babine Lake – Eastern Bays and Islands	**HIGH**
B 3	Babine Lake - Western Side	Moderate
B 4	Morrison Arm	**HIGH**
C 19	Francois Lake	Moderate
E 14	Morice Lake	Moderate

7.7.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.7.3.1 MARKETS

There is some difficulty in accurately determining participation rates and boat ownership in Canada since this data is not often counted. The last comprehensive survey was 1994. Although not a striking trend, estimates generated from this survey reveal a growth in pleasure craft ownership in Canada from 1978 through 1994. Since that time, shipment data from Statistics Canada suggests that while shipment values have increased appreciably, the actual number of units has grown at a rate less than population growth. The same phenomenon can be seen in the US, where the number of boating units grew only four percent between 1990 and 2000. Boating registrations have grown at a similar low rate. A major survey of US outdoor participation rates confirms this lack of growth – between 1994 and 2000, the percent of the US population participating in motor boating declined from 10% to nine percent.[61]

As with other pleasure boating categories, power boating has both active and passive participants. The former get involved in actual operations of the craft while the latter is usually seeking a comfortable cruise as a passenger.

A 1995 survey of North America travellers showed a significant market interest in lake tour products that combined nature, adventure and culture. The market segment with the greatest potential is very similar to the ocean cruise market - well-travelled couples in a mid-to-high income bracket. Those most likely to seek out a small vessel lake cruise are generally individuals or families of all ages seeking new and interesting experiences, although the tours can be customized to appeal specific market niches. The aging of the Baby Boom generation coupled with a corresponding increase in disposable income will continue to fuel the growing market for smaller cruises which mix the elements of wilderness experience, learning, low stress activities, and comfort.

There are presently no guided lake tours offered in the Morice Forest District. Even popular houseboating destinations like Shuswap Lake has no guided touring, although there are rental and charter operations. Marine cruises are common on the BC Coast, but are not a widely-seen product inland. There are numerous operators in the Greater Vancouver (Starline Tours offers tours of the Fraser River while Harbour Cruises provides the sea-going leg of the Royal Hudson rail-sea tour) but they generally combine sightseeing with a variety of on-board amenities and attractions.

---

[61] Roper Starch, Outdoor Recreation in America: Addressing Societal Concerns, The Recreation Roundtable, September 2000

7.7.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

User conflicts are rarely an issue for power boaters such as houseboats, but they may be for non-motorized users in canoes and kayaks.

Some areas with capability for commercial boating are also areas where existing lodges and resorts or native communities exist. The noise and frequency of commercial craft use may be an issue of concern for these residents. Commercial boating can provide access to areas of high quality hunting and fishing and thus, in essence, act as a guide for these activities - though they are not licensed for them. This could lead to conflicts with licensed fishing and hunting guides.

7.7.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

- Commercial power boating may require foreshore leases or licences of occupation to accommodate use of picnic sites, overnight campsites and/or cabins (or other roofed structures).
- Infrastructure requirements include marina or at least docking facilities, preferably with transient moorage or guest berthing for visiting boat owners with reasonable access to other visitor services or facilities. Obviously, the existence of a network of harbours/marinas adds to the marketability of this product. Reliable marine weather information is also important, especially on the larger lakes where weather may be an issue.
- Activities which match the customer's desires would also be beneficial so that boaters are not always confined to the boat itself. Nature and wildlife viewing; hiking, biking and other shore excursion opportunities add to the marketability of the product.
- The primary investment is a boat suitable for marine viewing. The boat can range in size, although smaller boats (28 or 32 feet in length) are fastest. Aluminium or fibreglass-hulled transport boats with passenger seats are suitable, as are fishing boats retrofitted to accommodate passengers. For tours that may involve a long trip or overnight stay, a boat with a cabin is desirable. However, in some cases boats with cabins are not necessarily the most suitable for viewing. For scheduled tours (e.g., passenger service), a small boat that holds 12 passengers may be the best option.
- The required initial investment for a lake cruise vessel varies according to ship size and features. Where there is already a boat available, some expenditure may be required for upgrades or conversion to a tour boat. Where a new boat must be purchased, capital requirements are relatively high.
- A commercial vessel used for lake tours would also be subject to Transport Canada's small vessel monitoring and inspection program, which is presently being revised. There is some question whether a lake tour operation would be economically viable, given that it would not run throughout the entire year. Compliance with Transport Canada construction and monitoring regulations means certain costs will be incurred, however the actual magnitude of these costs can only be determined by carrying out a feasibility or cost assessment of a guided lake cruise operation.

7.7.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

The potential for motorized boat tours of the region's lakes is modest, with the best opportunities on Babine Lake. Tours that link together outstanding features, quality activities, shore excursion possibilities and historical cultural viewing would create the most market interest. To target the largest possible market the tours should be linked to other activities on water or land. For example lake cruises could be included among activities offered at lodges, hotels, etc., and be linked to road or bicycle tours. Vessels could also be used for charter tours -- e.g., dinner cruises, barbeque and luncheon cruises, weddings, etc. If accompanied by good waterfront development, lake cruises could be instrumental in drawing tourism interest to communities such as Granisle.

Prior to investing in such a venture, the economic feasibility of a lake tour needs to be considered, taking into account such factors as projected volumes, construction and operation costs, pricing, and marketing strategy. Revenues need to be high enough to compensate for the fact that these tours cannot operate through the winter months.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		Babine (A&B)	Houston (C&D)	Southwest (E)
Markets	Demand	Low	Medium	Medium
	Competition	High	High	High
	Overall potential	Medium	Low	Low
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Low	Low	Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Development Needs	Crown tenure	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Infrastructure	Low	Medium	Medium
	Capital	High	High	High
Employment opportunities		Medium	Low	Low
Opportunities		Opportunities for lake tours based out of Granisle with links to quality features and activities, including a number of historical sites.		

A map showing Lake Touring suitability can be found on the next page (Exhibit 24).

Lake Touring Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

Lake Touring Ranking

▨ High Suitability

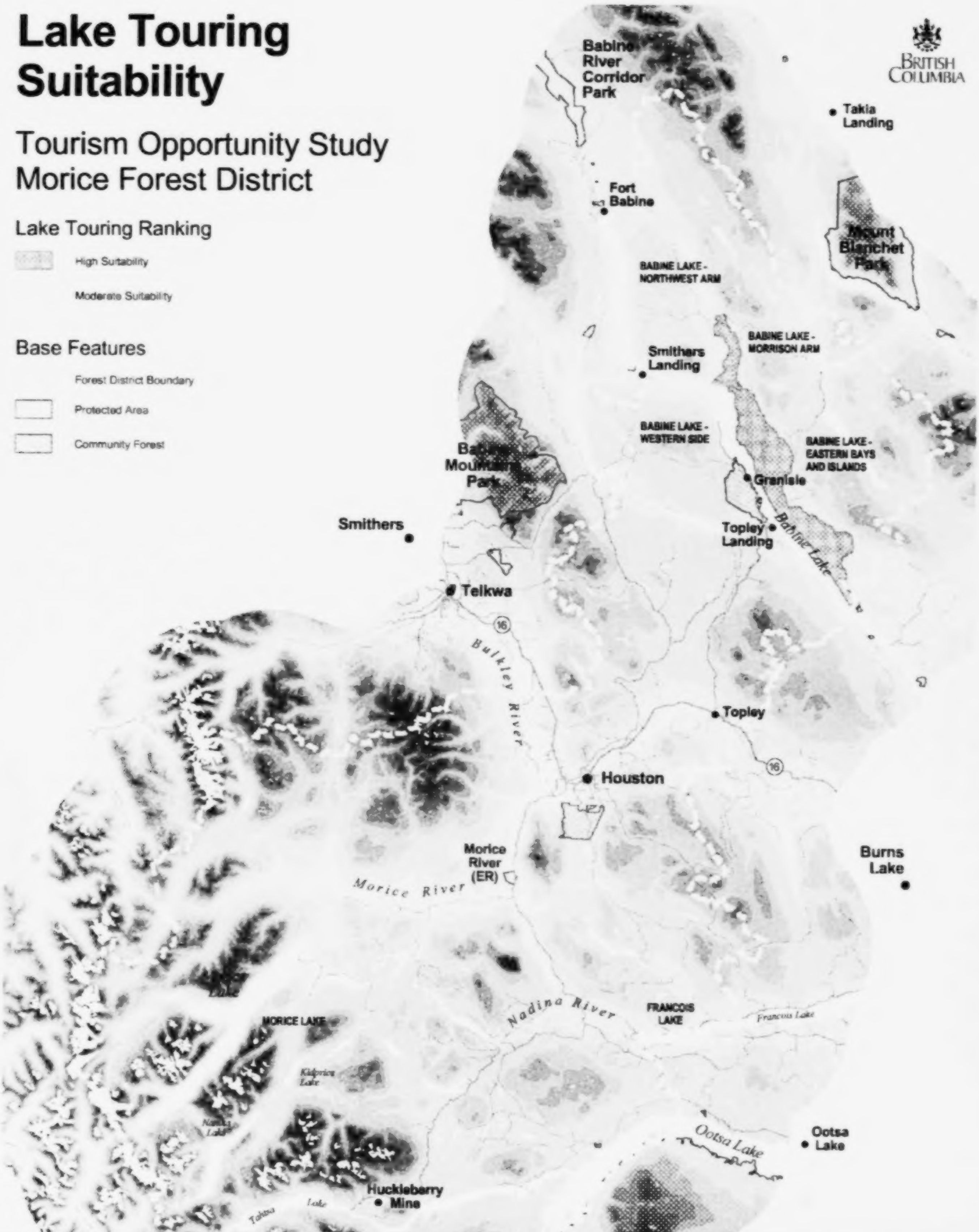
Moderate Suitability

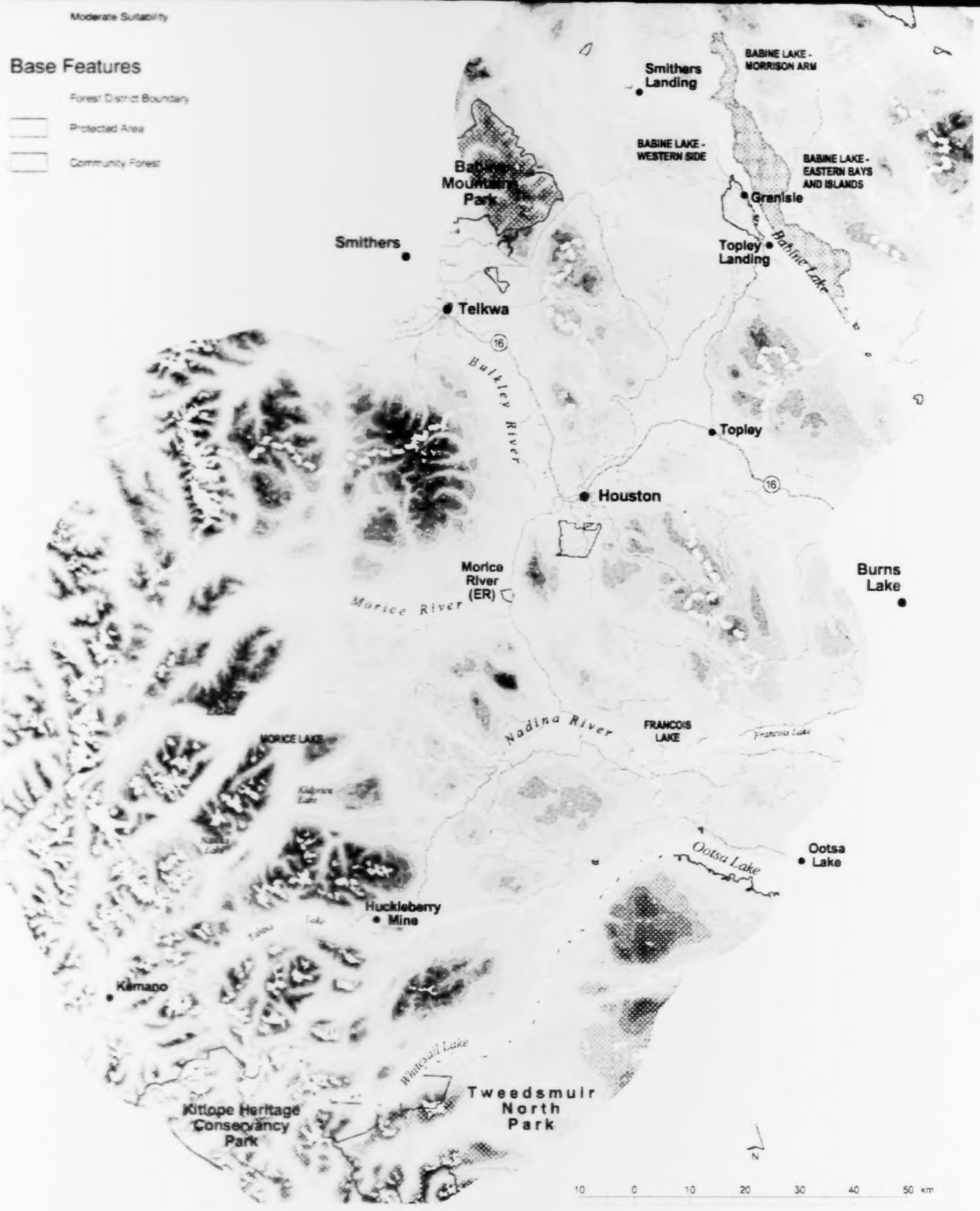
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest


British Columbia
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
Mount Blanchet Park
BABINE LAKE - NORTHWEST ARM
BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM
Smithers Landing
BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
16
Houston
Morice River (ER)
Morice River
Burns Lake
Lake
MORICE LAKE
Nadina River
FRANCOIS LAKE
Francois Lake
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake


Moderate Suitability
Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
Smithers Landing
BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM
BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
16
Houston
Morice River (ER)
Burns Lake
Morice River
Nadina River
FRANCOIS LAKE
Francois Lake
MORICE LAKE
Kidprice Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
Huckleberry Mine
Tahtsa Lake
Kemano
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10 0 10 20 30 40 50 km

7.8 Destination Lodge ('it tziwit ii)

7.8.1 Description

Destinations Lodges offers private accommodations through separate rooms or cabins. Destination lodges or resorts perform the function of a regional anchor that can support a variety of outdoor adventure tourism products. Traditionally these activities have cantered on fishing and hunting, but resorts are now focusing on non-consumptive activities such as Nordic skiing, hiking, wildlife viewing and cultural interpretation (components of ecotourism). Activities associated with the lodge can be self-guided or guided with the lodge providing the guides or drawing on the services of local tourism entrepreneurs. Lodges can be accessed from the fly-in backcountry or the paved road frontcountry. The facility can be rustic with only the most basic features or offer full service amenities.

There are two different types of resort locations:

- a ***mid-country resort*** which is off the main travel corridors but road accessible and generally fairly close to area communities.
- a ***wilderness resort*** which is generally off the highway system and requires access either by boat or air.

Opportunities and potential locations for the Destination Lodge are closely linked to the following criteria:

- scenery, aspect, climate (biogeoclimatic zone), associated lake or water features, proximity of operable forest area, proximity/availability of existing resort, existing fishing and guiding use of the area, access type and distance, availability of local labour pool, available recreation opportunities (including hiking, canoeing, rafting, fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, lake touring, heritage interpretation, climbing/mountaineering), cultural features.

The Destination Lodge product can be linked to the culture and heritage of the region through interpretation and awareness building. The Wet'suwet'en First Nations people have historically derived their sustenance from the bounty of the land. The abundance allowed time for arts and ritual. The First Nations continued presence as a people and the subtle historical evidence of their relationship to the natural surroundings can heighten the feeling of mystery and wonder for the recreationist.

The Morice District has a number of high and moderate potential locations for each of the two resort types.

7.8.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	High wilderness value areas that provide excellent wilderness interpretation, hunting and fishing opportunities. Strong potential to provide in-depth learning or training in various natural and cultural resource fields
Weaknesses	Repeatability of product, cost to access region.
Concerns	Increased recreation use affecting "remote" experience. Wildlife disturbance and habituation. Impact of timber harvesting on the visual landscape. The development of traditional territories without consultation

7.8.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

The Morice Study Area has many locations possible which have characteristics amenable for the development of Destination Lodges. The terrain includes rivers, lakes, good fishing, open sub-alpine and alpine ridges. Optimal snowfall and the ready access from communities enhance the product viability in the region. A wide range of both winter and summer recreation pursuits are available at many potential locations. Seven mid country locations and 8 wilderness locations are evaluated.

7.8.2.2 EXISTING LOCATIONS

Some of the more likely locations already have small resorts developed. Babine Lake has numerous resorts including: Char Bay Resort, Tukii Lodge, Ookpik Lodge, Fort Babine Lodge, Babine Norlakes Lodge, The Resort Hotel at Granisle, Spindrift Lodge and Coyote Lodge. Other resorts include Nora Lee Resort and Wild Rose Camp on Francois Lake, Nadina Lake Lodge on Nadina Lake, Nadina Mountain Wilderness Lodge on Owen Lake.

Guide Outfitters, fishing and mountaineering guides also have numerous camps spread throughout the Morice District. Some of these include: Bear Mountaineering's cabin in the Burnie Lakes area, Nanika Guiding who have cabins on Kidprice, Nanika, Newcombe and Atna Lakes, Hugh Wright who has a fishing lodge on Troitsa Lake, Carl Selzinger who has a cabin and camps on Coles Lake and Stewart Berg who has a number of cabins and camps through his guiding territory, Sunny Perkinson whose guiding interests include the Parrott Lake region.

7.8.2.3 FUTURE OPPORTUNITIES

A "high-potential" resort location in the Morice Forest district would have the following characteristics:

Scenery

- ❖ A very scenic location – enjoying the scenery is generally one of the top reasons for taking a holiday
- ❖ A location where no logging is visible or will be in the future – the highest quality scenery is usually considered to be that in which there is minimal sign of civilization
- ❖ For mid-country resorts - A location away from highway and railway noise but preferably within 15 – 20 minutes of a paved road – this is important for staffing and supply requirements but also because you want to minimize the time guests spend traveling on a gravel road

- For wilderness resorts – A remote locations with few other users but where access by boat or plane is easily available

Aspect and Climate

- The sunniest and driest climate available with a SE to SW aspect – a pleasant time in the sun will bring people back and spread knowledge through word of mouth references.

Water features

- Every potential location that was examined is associated with either a lake or river.
- Lakes, a wide river; waterfalls and other water features enhance the setting and view as well as increase the recreation opportunities by potentially expanding the available activities, with a focus on high quality fishing inherent to the Morice District.

Operable forest proximity

- The proximity of operable forest increases the likelihood of timber harvesting in the area, with the potential for alterations to the landscape affecting the natural views and with the entry of roads and access into an area.

Nearby resorts

- The presence of nearby resorts may enhance an opportunity of other resorts by drawing attention to a region unless the carrying capacity for the setting or for a particular activity has been reached.

Existing fishing/guiding use

- A resort that is dependent on fishing or hunting as an activity must utilize the services of guides who are allocated a number of rod days or an area for guided hunting or fishing.

Access

- Backcountry sites require either a body of water or an airstrip for fixed wing access. The more costly helicopter access requires an opening.
- Road access for a mid-country lodge is a requirement although minimal sounds or road visibility is an asset..

Labour pool

- The costs and management of a labour pool increases with remoteness.

Recreation opportunities

- The following activities should be available within the vicinity of the resort (or the capability of developing them) – These activities are those most widely distributed and with the highest qualities in the district:
    - Hiking/walking
    - Fishing/ice fishing

  - Snowmobiling trails, cross-country skiing
  - Canoeing/rafting
  - Activity related to Wet'suwet'en culture
- The following activities would be desirable but could be located at some distance from the resort – good opportunities to experience these activities exist in the district but they may be few in number or relatively un-developed:
  - Lake tours
  - Trail riding
  - Rock climbing
  - Golf course
  - Mountain biking

Cultural features

- The presence of Wet'suwet'en, Nadooeten or early European cultural features enhances a lodge experience by providing a sense of history and continuity to the landscape. Authentic foods and cultural experiences provides a differential advantage.

7.8.2.4 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

LAKES

B 1 BABINE LAKE - NORTHWEST ARM (OLD FORT)

- Scenery – large lake with forested hills in the background
- Aspect/climate – East, west and south, SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – main body of lake to south, narrow arms to west and north east
- Operable forest proximity – within operable forest, visual management of forest harvesting is a concern
- Nearby resorts – Ookpik Lodge on Morrison arm of Babine Lake
- Existing fishing/guiding use – fishing parties from Ookpik Lodge, Nadooeten people use Old Fort on a seasonal basis for fishing, berry gathering and hunting.
- Access – by boat from Granisle or via floatplane from the base at Tyhee Lake
- Labour pool – Nearby communities of Granisle, Tatchek and Fort Babine
- Recreation opportunities - fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, hiking, berry picking, snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, numerous Nadooeten cultural sites located on the lakeshore, opportunity to interpret mining history of Bell Copper Mine

- Cultural features – Old Fort Village, Bell Copper Mine, other Wet'suwet'en cultural sites
- **Wilderness Resort Potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – the presence of the Old Fort Village is valuable, the site, however, is highly exposed to the strong winds which typically build up on this large lake from time to time. This site would be ideal for interpreting Wet'suwet'en culture and has a good variety of recreation opportunities available.

B 1 BABINE LAKE - NORTHWEST ARM (FORT BABINE)

- Scenery – Forested lakeshore
- Aspect/climate – South, SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – Narrow northwest end of Babine Lake
- Operable forest proximity – Within the operable forest, visual management of timber harvesting would be a concern
- Nearby resorts – Fort Babine Lodge operated by local Nadooeten people
- Existing fishing/guiding use – nearby Rainbow Alley is world renowned for fishing opportunities
- Access – two and a half to three hour drive by rough forest road from Smithers or float plane from Tyhee Lake float plane base
- Labour pool – Potential for local labour from Ft Babine reserve
- Recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, hiking on Grease trail to Takla lake to east or Suskwa valley to west, lake touring, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, canoeing, heritage interpretation
- Cultural features – village of Ft Babine, Nadooeten Grease trading trail
- **Wilderness Resort potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – proximity to world class fishing, 1st nations culture and lake touring opportunities are valuable. However, poor access is a drawback. Although local labour is available, work would be required to develop local expertise capable operating a large resort.

B 2 BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM

- Scenery – Large lake and forested hillsides
- Aspect/climate – East or west facing, BioGeoClimatic Zone – SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – remote arm of Babine Lake, largest natural lake in BC, complex shoreline
- Operable forest proximity – within the operable forest, concerns regarding visual landscape management related to timber harvesting
- Nearby resorts – Ookpik Resort

- Existing fishing/guiding use – good fishing but limited use because of distance from nearest boat launch
- Access – Boat from Granisle or fly-in from Tyhee Lake floatplane base
- Labour pool – Some labour available from Granisle, Tatchek Reserve and Topley Landing, otherwise from Topley or Houston
- Recreation opportunities - fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, numerous Nadooeten cultural sites located on the lakeshore, opportunity to interpret mining history of Bell Copper Mine
- Cultural features – Bell Copper Mine, Nadooeten village of Old Fort, Babine Fish Hatchery on Morrison Lake
- **Wilderness Resort Potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale** - if the potential visual impact of harvesting can be managed. Although the location is remote the scenery, fishing and historical interest values are high. Potential for a package of winter activities exists as well

B 3 BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE (GRANISLE)

- Scenery – large lake with forested islands, extensive timber harvesting visible on the east side of the lake
- Aspect/climate – North, east and south, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – Central Babine Lake, numerous islands, beaches, complex shoreline on the far side of the lake
- Operable forest proximity – Granisle is located within a community forest, most of the area has been harvested, although little of the harvesting is visible from the community
- Nearby resorts – Granisle resort Inn
- Existing fishing/guiding use – local marina and boat launch is used extensively by regional fishing parties
- Access – paved road access from Highway 16 at Topley
- Labour pool – Granisle community, which is mainly a retirement community at the present time
- Recreation opportunities – Trails in community forest and along lake shore, fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, Nadooeten heritage interpretation, hiking, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, mountain biking
- Cultural features – Nadooeten cultural sites, Bell Copper Mine
- **Mid country Resort potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale** - if a shoreline site could be developed (the community of Granisle is not visually attractive at present) A good variety of recreation opportunities exist, paved access is valuable, local labour is available. A continuing concern would be the visual effect of forest harvesting.

B 3 BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE (TOPLEY LANDING)

- Scenery – Large lake to the east, extensive timber harvesting visible on the east side of the lake
- Aspect/climate – North east to South east, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – Central Babine Lake, largest natural lake in BC
- Operable forest proximity - within the operable forest, although considerable harvesting has occurred nearby very little of it is recent
- Nearby resorts – Coyote Lodge Topley, Spindrift Lodge a few km to the south
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Babine Lake is very popular as a regional fishing opportunity
- Access – paved road from Highway 16 at Topley
- Labour pool – local residents in Topley Landing, Granisle and the Tatchek Reserve
- Recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, house boats, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, opportunity for Nadooeten heritage interpretation
- Cultural features – Nearby Tatchek village, Fulton River spawning channels and interpretive features
- **Mid Country Resort Potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale** - good road access is valuable but more attractive landscape on the east shore of the lake, scenery has no dramatic features, nearby streams have sockeye runs, a good beach is reported on Tachek Island just offshore, community of Topley Landing is not visually attractive

B 4 BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS

- Scenery – Large lake to the north, south and west, generally natural appearing landscape, beaches in Wilkinson Bay and Wright Bays, protected bays, small islands, open mixed wood forest along the shoreline, shoreline lagoons and marshes, several in-flowing creeks with salmon runs
- Aspect/climate – North west to South east, BioGeoClimatic Zone SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – central Babine Lake, nearby complex shoreline with a number of islands and beaches
- Operable forest proximity – within the operable forest, extensive forest harvesting to the east of this location, actual lakeshore mainly un-disturbed
- Nearby resorts – Char Bay Resort
- Existing fishing/guiding use - the sheltered areas within the islands and bays on the east side of the lake are popular with local fishermen, within the guiding territory of Double Eagle Guides and Outfitters (608G006)
- Access – Boat across the lake from Topley, or fly in from Tyhee Lake float plane base near Smithers

- Labour pool – potential for local labour from nearby communities of Topley, Tatchek and Granisle
- Recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, numerous Nadooeten cultural sites located on the lakeshore, opportunity to interpret mining history of Bell Copper Mine
- Cultural features – Copper Mine and numerous Nadooeten sites
- **Wilderness Resort Potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – could potentially rate as high, depends very much on reducing the visual impact of extensive timber harvesting, very good fishing, varied lake touring opportunities, cultural and historical interest in the area

C 15A TAGETOCHLAIN (POPLAR) LAKE

- Scenery – south facing aspen parkland overlooking a large lake
- Aspect/climate – Southern aspect, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS moist cold, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – Poplar (Tagetochlain) Lake - a large lake with a complex shoreline, islands and good fishing
- Operable forest proximity – Within operable forest, considerable harvesting on the south shore of the lake, other harvesting within the vicinity of the lake but the shoreline is mostly un-disturbed
- Nearby resorts – Nadina Lake Lodge about 20 km to the south
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Within the territory of Nanika Guiding (609G006)
- Access – Either fly-in or Forest roads from Houston. Two access roads both come from the Huckleberry Mine road, both are rough gravel roads
- Labour pool – would likely drive in from Houston
- Recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, potential for interpretation of Wet'suwet'en culture, canoeing on lake and Nadina River, potential for climbing at nearby Owen Hat
- Cultural features – reported as located on a Historic Wet'suwet'en trail
- **Mid country Resort potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** scenic with a good range of recreation opportunities, but some concern regarding potential impact of intensive timber harvesting on the viewscape, access road would probably require upgrading

C17 OWEN LAKE (BIWANII)

- Scenery – Dramatic Nadina mountain, rural landscape, lake
- Aspect/climate – West or east facing, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS dry cool, driest and sunniest zone in the Morice Forest District

- Water features – long narrow Owen Lake
- Operable forest proximity – within operable forest, but viewscape from the lake shows little impact from harvesting at present
- Nearby resorts – Two resorts on Owen Lake –BOTH OPERATING??
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Within the territory of Grizzly Lake Outfitters (609G003), popular fishing lake for Houston residents
- Access – Good gravel forest road from Houston, also possible to fly in to the lake by floatplane
- Labour pool – 20 minute drive from Houston
- Recreation opportunities – hiking, fishing, ice fishing, canoeing, cross-country skiing, Snowmobiling, horseback riding, climbing at nearby Owen Hat
- Cultural features – Early 1st nations ranching in this area, trapping, heritage trails, campsites, hunting & gathering, fishing
- **Mid country Resort Potential** – MODERATE
- **Rationale:** proximity to highly used travel corridor decreases the wilderness potential of this area, good variety of recreation opportunities, lake is fairly small and could become crowded if local use was combined with resort use

C 19 NORALEE/FRANCOIS LAKE (TATL'AAT)

- Scenery – Aspen parkland, pastoral grazing, forested hills, large lake
- Aspect/climate – Southern, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS dry cool, driest and sunniest zone in the Morice Forest District
- Water features – Francois Lake, one of larger lakes in the Morice and Burns Lake districts
- Operable forest proximity – within the operable forest but limited harvesting in the nearby areas
- Nearby resorts – Noralee Resort and Wild Rose Camp
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Eleven fishing guides are licensed for Francois Lake
- Access – Good forest road from Houston, Mostly paved road from Burns Lake, gravel road along north shore of Francois Lake
- Labour pool – Some labour available from rural community along north shore of Francois Lake, otherwise from Houston or Burns Lake
- Recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, canoeing on lake and Nadina River, Snowmobiling, climbing at Owen Hat, short hikes, horse back riding, potential to interpret early ranching history of the area
- Cultural features – settlements, gravesites, hunting, fishing and food gathering, archaeological features, early ranches
- **Mid country Resort Potential** – HIGH
- **Rationale:** Sunnier and warmer climate than many locations, scenic, a good variety of potential recreation activities, reasonably good road access for a relatively remote location

C 20 WHITESAIL (THAT'LA)

- Scenery – Snow capped Whitesail Range to the west, the peaks of the Tweedsmuir range to the south, Ootsa Lake, Whitesail Lake and Tahtsa reach surround this point of land
- Aspect/climate – North, east and south, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS moist cool, wetter than the Bulkley Valley and Francois Lake areas
- Water features – All lakes are part of a huge man-made reservoir. Ootsa Lake and Whitesail Lake are flanked by drowned forest in many places. Tahtsa Lake with its steeper shorelines has more beaches and a more natural appearance.
- Operable forest proximity – Within the operable forest with on-going active harvesting around the base of the Whitesail Range. Major Mountain Pine beetle infestations may accelerate harvesting in this area
- Nearby resorts – None
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Local residents fish Ootsa Lake but little fishing occurs on Tahtsa Reach
- Access – By air from Tyhee Lake or Burns Lake
- Labour pool – may be some local labour available in the rural Wistaria and Southside communities south of Burns Lake
- Recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, lake touring on Tahtsa Lake and possibly Whitesail Lake, Snowmobiling, ice fishing
- Cultural features – settlements, gravesites, archaeological features, heritage trails, early ranching history of Southside area, reservoir created by the Alcan/Kemano electricity generating scheme
- **Wilderness Resort Potential – MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** long distance required for access and potential for major visual impact caused by timber harvesting are major reasons why this location wouldn't rate as high. A good variety of recreation opportunities does exist.

E 14 ATNA LAKE (CENEELEE BEN)

- Scenery – Very High quality, Snow covered and glaciated peaks, wilderness lake, periglacial flood plain with braided streams, waterfalls, forested slopes with coastal influences, cedar and hemlock
- Aspect/climate – South facing, BioGeoClimatic zone - Coastal Western Hemlock, wet submaritime (wettest zone in the Morice District)
- Water features – Morice Lake, Atna Lake and joining creek (with water fall)
- Operable forest proximity – A narrow band of operable forest runs from the west shore of Morice Lake to the vicinity of Atna Lake. No harvesting has occurred nearby but there are forest health concerns with pine beetles in this area
- Nearby resorts – Nanika Guiding has a cabin on Atna Lake

- Existing fishing/guiding use – Nine fishing guides are licensed for Morice Lake, Morice Lake is within the territory of Nanika Guiding (609G006). Atna Lake is preferred to Atna Bay because Atna Bay receives considerable use by local anglers who travel down the lake from the MOF Recreation Site at the north end of Morice Lake
- Access – Either fly in or drive from Houston to the north end of Morice Lake and boat in from that point. Harvesting directly north in the Gosnell drainage may eventually bring roads near this point
- Labour pool – would have to be brought in from Houston or Smithers
- Recreation opportunities – Fishing, ice fishing, hiking, Snowmobiling, canoeing, lake touring, viewing salmon run, wildlife viewing, 1st nations cultural heritage
- Cultural features – archeological sites known on Atna Bay and Atna Creek, heritage trails, settlement, hunting and gathering.
- **Wilderness Resort Potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale:** the scenery is magnificent, the climate is quite wet, there is some potential for conflict with the local guide outfitter who has a cabin nearby, hiking opportunities would require some development – potential for Heli-hiking with many different opportunities within a short distance of Atna Lake – potential to develop a unique hiking product (hut to hut with boating segments and potentially heli-pick up or drop off at different locales) Also high potential for a unique fly-in snowmobile product with few if any other users in the area

RIVERS

D 3 EMERSON CREEK/BULKLEY RIVER (CIDI TOSTAN)

- Scenery – Bulkley Valley rural landscape, pastoral, scenic river
- Aspect/climate – open in all directions, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS dry cool, driest and sunniest zone in the Morice Forest district
- Water features – Bulkley River, high fishing values
- Operable forest proximity – On the border of the Agricultural Land Reserve and the operable forest
- Nearby resorts - None
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Many fishing guides operate on the Bulkley River, a popular steelhead fishery exists on the river
- Access – Gravel road access from the Houston/Telkwa back road
- Labour pool – Some labour from nearby rural community, short 20 minute drive from Houston
- Recreation opportunities – canoeing, rafting, fishing, cultural heritage interpretation, cross-country skiing and Snowmobiling nearby
- Cultural features – reported as an important Wet'suwet'en cultural site
- **Mid country Resort Potential – MODERATE**

- **Rationale -** scenic rural landscape, good potential to tie in with rafting/canoeing/fishing on the river, difficult to achieve a wild experience with the close proximity to CN Railway tracks

C 12B LOWER MORICE RIVER – (TS'IN K'OZ'AY)

A specific location has not been identified

- Scenery – Wilderness river views, selected locations with mountain peaks in the distance
- Aspect/climate – West to East aspects available, BioGeoClimatic zone – SBS dry cool, driest and sunniest zone in the Morice Forest district
- Water features – Blue-green Morice River, Klinger Lake within short distance on Houston/Telkwa back road
- Operable timber – Within the operable timber forest base, however some protection under the Morice River LRUP
- Nearby resorts - none
- Existing fishing/guiding use – extensive guided and non-guided fishing use on the Morice River, Class 2 water under the provincial fishing regulations, Within the Guiding territory of Grizzly Lake Outfitters (609G003)
- Access – Within 15-20 minutes of Houston
- Labour pool – available in Houston
- Recreation opportunities – Fishing on river, ice fishing opportunities within 30 minutes, close to Telkwa Range snowmobile trails, cross-country ski trails in nearby Community Forest, canoeing & rafting on the river, golfing nearby, potential for trail riding and mountain biking
- Cultural features – not known
- **Mid country Resort potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale -** meets many of resort location requirements, biggest drawback is lack of hiking and ski trails on site. The Morice LRUP requires any development be set back ….. meters from the river, depending on the proposed location this could be an issue which would need to be addressed in the LRMP.

LANDBASED

E 1 MOOSESKIN JOHNNY (NELGI'L'AT)

(Actually within the Bulkley/Cassiar Forest District: Bulkley Plan Area)

- Scenery – mountain and lake views, historical mineral exploration roads cross landscape
- Aspect/climate – west facing, BioGeoClimatic – ESSF continental
- Water features – Moose skin Johnny Lake

- Operable forest proximity – The lake is outside the operable forest but parts of the viewscape from the lake is within the operable forest
- Nearby resorts – Existing resort on the lake
- Existing fishing/guiding use – Resort has boats for rent for fishing
- Access – via air from Smithers or Hiking/horseback access fm Telkwa River Forest road
- Labour pool – Any labour would have to fly-in from local communities
- Recreation opportunities – Hiking, fishing, ice fishing, canoeing, cross-country skiing, mineral exploration/historical interest, located near traditional Wet'suwet'en travel route
- Cultural features – mineral exploration, Wet'suwet'en route.
- **Wilderness Resort potential – HIGH**
- **Rationale:** Good fishing, range of hiking opportunities, skiing opportunities, scenery, historic mining features, good potential for multi season use and because area is outside of the operable forest. One concern would be how caribou management might impact on a resort operation - For instance it is uncertain that any motorized tourism products in the surrounding ranges would be approved by BC Land and Water Inc.

E3 BURNIE LAKES (TALDZEE WEYEEZ)

- Scenery – dramatic glaciated peaks, glacial lakes, forested valley
- Aspect/climate – east or west facing, BioGeoClimatic – ESSF subcontinental (more maritime influence – wetter than Mooseskin Johnny)
- Water features – two glacial lakes
- Operable forest proximity – within a PAS study area, likely to become a park
- Nearby resorts – Bear Mountaineering Cabin north of Burnie Lakes
- Existing fishing/guiding use – none known, Within the guiding territory of Robert Milligan (610G001)
- Access – Fly in access only from Smithers or Houston
- Labour pool – Labour would have to fly in
- Recreation opportunities – climbing, mountaineering, canoeing, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing
- Cultural features – none known
- **Wilderness Resort potential - MODERATE**
- **Rationale:** Although the scenery is spectacular there are fewer recreation opportunities than may be found in other areas, the climate is less conducive to outdoor recreation and all access would be fly-in which would significantly increase operating expenses

7.8.2.5 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
	LAKES	
B 1	Babine Lake - Northwest Arm (Old Fort)	Moderate
B 1	Babine Lake - Northwest Arm (Fort Babine)	Moderate
B 2	Babine Lake - Morrison Arm	**High**
B 3	Babine Lake - Western Side (Granisle)	**High**
B 3	Babine Lake - Western Side (Topley Landing)	Moderate
B 4	Babine Lake - Eastern Bays And Islands	Moderate
C 15A	Tagetochlain (Poplar) Lake	Moderate
C17	Owen Lake	Moderate
C 19	Noralee/Francois Lake	**High**
C 20	Whitesail	Moderate
E8A	Atna Lake	**High**
	RIVERS	
D 3	Emerson Creek/Bulkley River	Moderate
C 12B	Lower Morice River	**High**
	LAND BASED	
E 1B	Mooseskin Johnny	**High**
E3	Burnie Lakes	Moderate

7.8.3 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.8.3.1 MARKETS

The lodge/resort product has broad appeal to the outdoor adventure and ecotourism markets. The ecotourism market in particular is attracted to smaller, intimate, adventure-type accommodations, including cabins and lodges.[62] Experienced ecotourists cite a strong preference for this type of accommodation and will pay to obtain the high quality amenities and experience.

Soft Adventure Traveller versus Activity Enthusiast - The soft adventure traveller looks for a lodge that will provide the best overall "experience". This includes a combination of the accommodation, food and activities offered that are high-end and/or unique. The activity enthusiast will select a lodge based on its location and support for a particular activity. This is particularly relevant for activities such as fishing or backcountry skiing, that are highly dependent on having particular resources, features and conditions.

General Consumer versus Experienced Ecotourist[63] - Lodges are generally preferred by the experienced ecotourist, with 66 percent stating cabins as their preferred choice of accommodation, followed by lodges/inns at 60 percent and tent/camping at 58 percent. In contract, the general consumer prefers to stay in hotels/motels (56 percent), although as lodges become more upscale and comfortable, they will gain increasing popularity with the general consumer as well.

Corporate versus Personal Traveller - Corporate travellers use lodges either for meetings with their own management teams and with clients and for incentive travel which is used as a means to

---

[62] Catalogue of Exemplary Practices in Adventure Travel and Ecotourism. Pamela Wight and Associates. March 1999.

[63] Greening of Remote Tourism Lodges. Pam Wight & Associates, 1994.

reward/motivate employees. This segment looks for amenities such as meeting and conference rooms, fully equipped with telephones and Internet access. Individual rooms may also be required to have data access. As well, they will look for activities that promote interaction between people, particularly if the purpose of the trip is for team-building for managers or with clients. The personal traveller is looking for a unique location and activities to do with friends and/or family. This segment values the overall ambiance of the location as well as opportunity to have both privacy as desired and opportunity to meet and share experiences with other guests in common areas.

Regional competition for the lodge/resort market is intense as there is extensive development in the Canadian Rockies (Alberta and BC), Kootenays and Coastal regions. The icon status of the Rockies and the Pacific are key advantages of destination resorts in these areas. In the region, there is also competition from the existing inventory of lodges which focus on the fishing/hunting market and the highway touring traveller. Backcountry accommodation is not well developed in the region, except for the steelhead lodges in the Kispiox.

The demand for the lodge product in the Morice region is reasonable, but it is not targeted on the outdoor adventure market as much as it is on the sport fishing market and the highway touring market. The lodges on Babine Lake feature hunting and fishing products, while Southside resorts are oriented more toward the summer rubber-tire trade. The ecotourist seeking a unique outdoor wilderness adventure within a lodge/resort setting has some opportunity on Babine Lake but this visitor is not really represented elsewhere in the study area.

The excess room capacity at existing lodges, especially in the off-season, suggests that future potential is in raising occupancies rather than constructing new inventory. The real problem for the area is in marketing – it is not that well known as a destination, except in regional markets like Prince George and Terrace/Prince Rupert, and there is very little packaging between resorts/lodges and outdoor adventure operators.

7.8.3.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

Resorts/lodges usually involve an expensive and time-consuming development process. Where they are situated in the front or mid-country, with highly altered landscapes and on private land, development issues tend to be more conventional in nature – access to municipal services, road transportation and building and zoning bylaws. Where they occur in the backcountry, the focus shifts to issues around multiple-use of natural resources and sustainability. Key issues include:

- Visual quality is a critical component of the destination lodge experience. Visitors invariably expect a wilderness experience and the visual impacts of timber harvesting can have a negative impact on business. There is an expectation of wilderness by lodge visitors, particularly among the international market. This puts lodge development in direct conflict with forest harvesting activity. This situation is likely to be tested in the years ahead as the beetle-kill harvest ramps up in the forest district.
- Conflicts on trails, waterways and at key features may become an issue if the resort/lodge results in a significant increase in use. The carrying capacity of trails and sensitive sites may be a problem, although in the Morice we are not aware of such concerns as yet.

7.8.3.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

Lodges/resorts are a capital-intensive tourism development and for this reason they require favourable development conditions so investment and business risk are minimized. The following factors should guide the development process:

- Sit selection has to provide access to high quality resources and features. A remote, uncrowded, scenic location that has controlled access is preferred for accommodation development. Adding amenities that add to the enjoyment of the overall experience would improve marketability.
- Infrastructure needs for front/mid-country lodges include road access and access to municipal services such as water, sewer and garbage. For the back-country facility, fly-in or boat-in capabilities would likely be required and the ability to be self-sufficient important.
- Resorts/lodges require a significant investment in "human capital" for hospitality services (i.e. food and lodging), interpretation and guiding. Access to quality personnel is therefore an important consideration. This means well-trained hospitality staff but also certified and professional guides. For the backcountry lodge, this may represent a major challenge.
- The trend toward a more full-service experience will favour more packaging as well as the lodge/resort style of holiday where the visitor does not have to make a series of purchase decisions once they have arrived. Spas, Elderhostel's and retreats that focus on niche visitor and business markets have good potential. First Nations interpretation is virtually untapped by lodges and resorts and could significantly enhance the current profile.
- The business is capital intensive, meaning market entry will be limited. But there already is a good deal of competition for the lodge/resort visitor in BC. A successful facility in the study area will be based on developing a specialized product and taking full advantage of all-season potential. By being multi-activity and multi-season, lodges are in a better position to manage their cash flow and staff.
- One way to differentiate the resort/lodge product is to conform to sustainability principles. This could include anything from building a minimum-impact development with buildings that use of recycled materials to controlled-use facilities with on-site electrical generation capacity using water, wind or sun. Eco-certification is becoming more prevalent and is virtually untapped in the region.
- A lodge's impact on community and economic development can be very favourable for several reasons. First, they are primarily land-based, generating job and income opportunities for nearby communities through site development, investment and ongoing operations. Second, they increase the capacity for increased visitation to the region by adding to the facilities inventory. Third, they target market and draw in new visitors thus diversifying the local tourism market profile. Finally, they can extend partnership opportunities to existing operators for guiding or other services, thereby enhancing the viability of small businesses in the region.

7.8.3.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

The backcountry lodge potential in the Southwestern Lakes is particularly good. There are some outstanding lake and mountain features in the unit, which could be built around fishing, river/lake activities, wildlife viewing, nature observation and air tours. However, this potential may be limited by beetle-kill harvesting that will likely take place over the next 10 years. The potential in the front and mid-country areas relates more to raising the occupancies of existing lodges and resorts. Currently, this inventory is under-utilized and could be more involved in packaging outdoor adventures as a way of developing their own markets.

New and existing facilities should be taking a closer look at themed resorts. Major resorts in BC in Tofino (storm watching), 100 Mile House (dude ranching) and the Rockies (parks, wildlife viewing) are built around themes and similar strategies could generate a more attractive product in the Morice.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		Babine (A&B)	Houston (C&D)	Southwest (E)
Markets	Demand	Medium	Low	Medium
	Competition	High	High	High
	Overall potential	Low	Low	Medium
Impact/ Conflict	Use	High	High	High
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Development Needs	Crown tenure	High	High	High
	Infrastructure	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Capital	High	High	High
Employment opportunities		Medium	Low	High
	Opportunities	• The opportunities are focused on the existing resorts and a diversification into the other products listed in this report. • New facilities around Babine Lake.	• The opportunities are focused on the existing resorts and a diversification into the other products listed in this report. • Potential for new facilities on Francois Lake, Lower Morice and Mooseskin Johnny.	• Backcountry lodge featuring lake and mountain-based activities.

A map showing Destination Lodge suitability can be found on the next page (Exhibit 25).

Destination Lodge Suitability

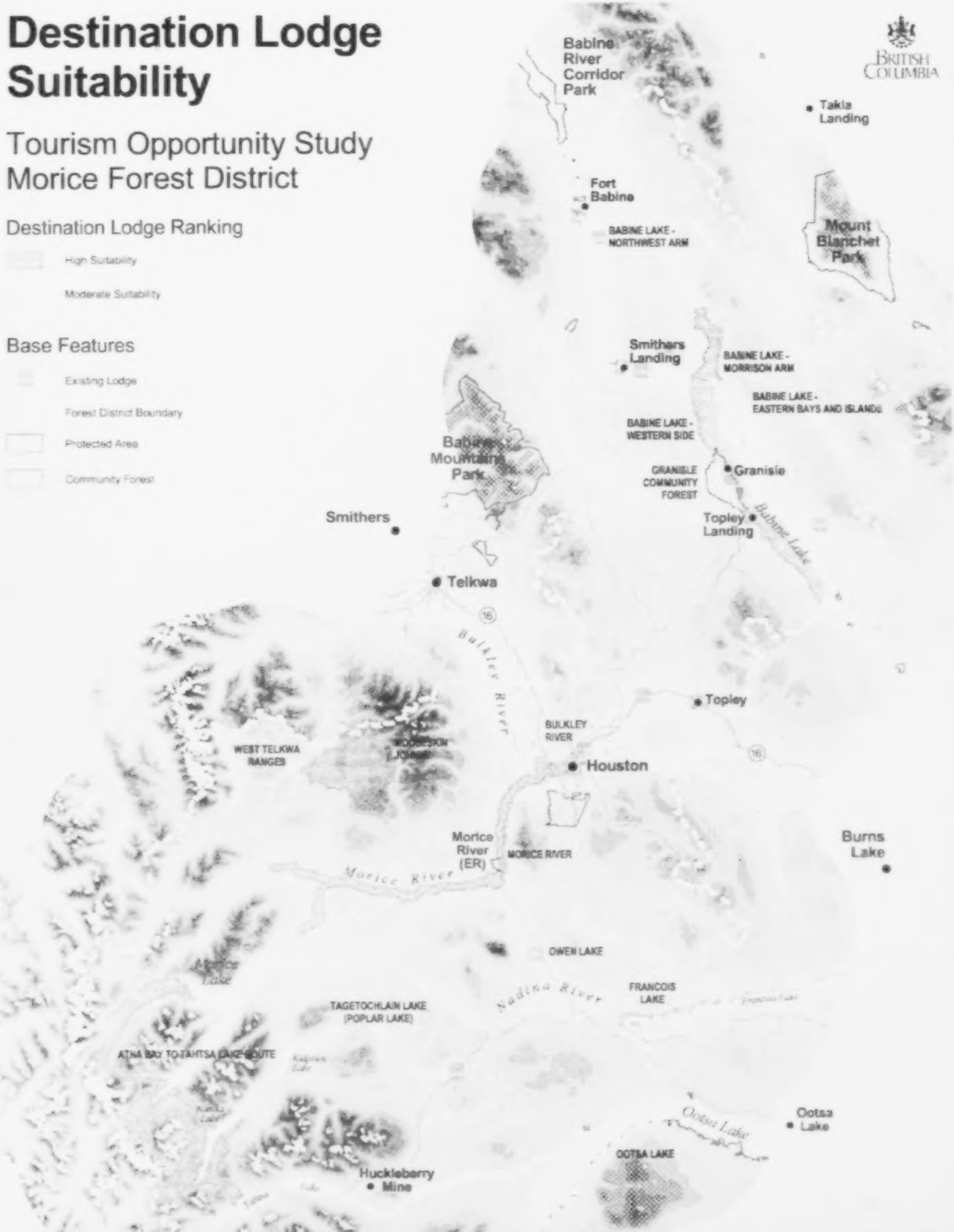
Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

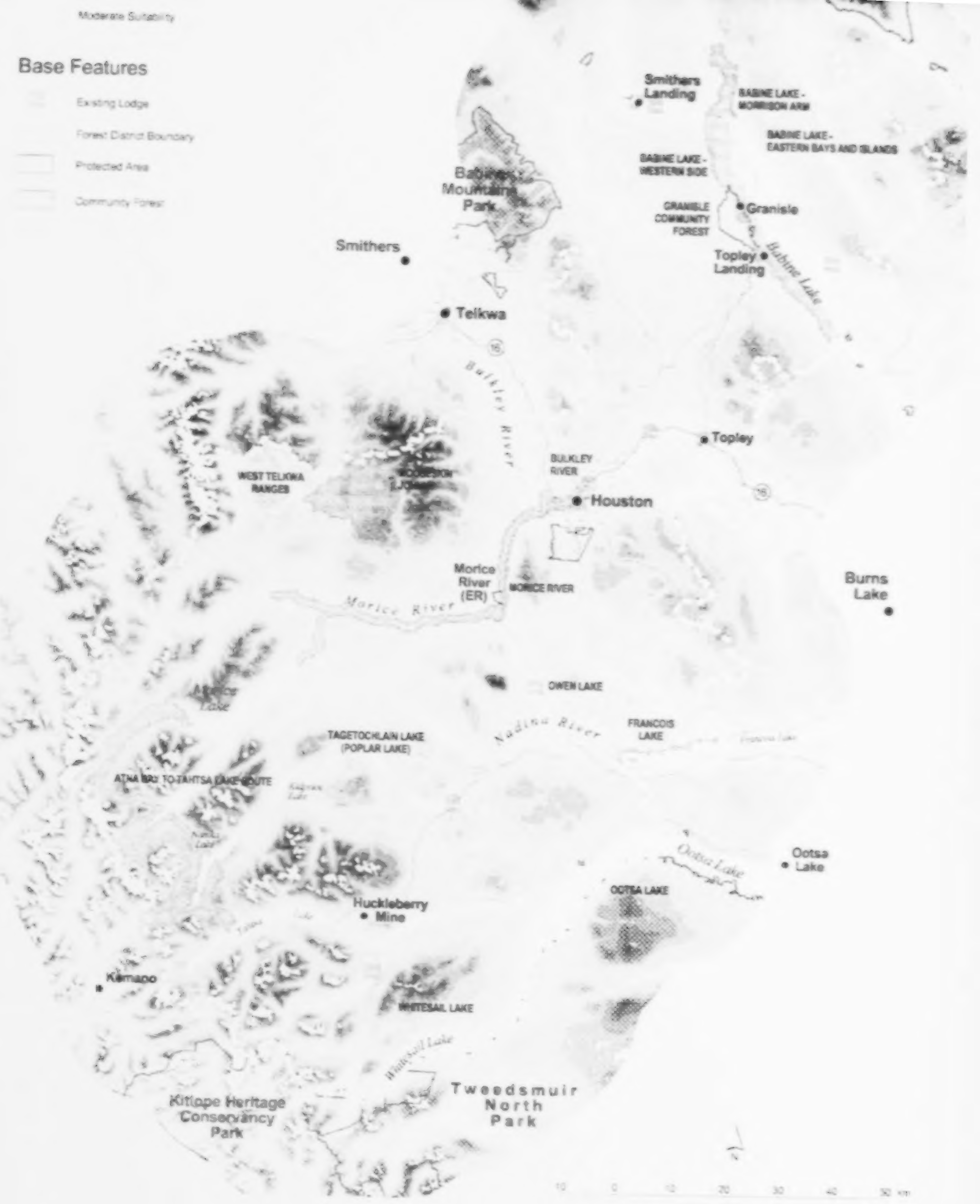
Destination Lodge Ranking

- High Suitability
- Moderate Suitability

Base Features

- Existing Lodge
- Forest District Boundary
- Protected Area
- Community Forest


BRITISH COLUMBIA
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
Fort Babine
BABINE LAKE - NORTHWEST ARM
Mount Blanchet Park
Smithers Landing
BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE
Babine Mountains Park
GRANISLE COMMUNITY FOREST
Granisle
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Smithers
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
Topley
BULKLEY RIVER
16
WEST TELKWA RANGES
GOOSESKIN JOHNNY
Houston
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Burns Lake
Morice River
OWEN LAKE
Morice Lake
Nadina River
FRANCOIS LAKE
Francois Lake
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
OOTSA LAKE
Huckleberry Mine


Moderate Suitability
Base Features
Existing Lodge
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
Smithers Landing
BABINE LAKE - MORRISON ARM
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
BABINE LAKE - WESTERN SIDE
Babine Mountains Park
GRANISLE COMMUNITY FOREST
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
WEST TELKWA RANGES
BULKLEY RIVER
Topley
Houston
16
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Morice River
Burns Lake
OWEN LAKE
Morice Lake
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Nadina River
FRANCOIS LAKE
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
OOTSA LAKE
Huckleberry Mine
Kemano
WHITESAIL LAKE
Whitesail Lake
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
Tweedsmuir North Park
N
10
0
10
20
30
40
50 km

7.9 Hut System (Tahadak yikh khozlii)

7.9.1 Description

Wilderness huts are generally built to support outdoor activities in a given area as opposed to being a tourist destination unto themselves. Originally, these huts were used to provide safe refuge for climbers in high alpine areas, who needed a base to climb from or in the case of inclement weather, emergency shelter. More recently, huts are being designed and built to provide greater access to the backcountry, particularly to the soft adventure market. The key advantage of huts is eliminating the need to carry equipment such as tents and cooking supplies. Within the spectrum of accommodation in the outdoors, huts fall within the "rustic" category.[64] Huts can be a single destination hut or a hut-to-hut system. The activities supported by the hut product can include hiking, climbing/mountaineering, mountain biking, backcountry skiing, cross-country skiing, snowshoeing, snowboarding, canoeing and boating,

The hut product can be either an individual destination hut or a system of huts. They can be big accommodating large groups or small. Generally they are single room structures that may be high end or rustic. There are a number of single or system hut product types each with a particular set of unique attributes. These are the *Lake, Trail* and *River Huts*. These hut product types have both different and common criteria.

Common Criteria:

- Huts should not be accessible via public roads except perhaps those huts at the start or end of a system, however they should not be so remote that access becomes lengthy for clients and expensive for the operator
- Sunny locations with a good water supply are preferable
- Areas with low local use are preferable to avoid conflict with public users
- Many clients prefer natural locations and wilderness areas
- Opportunities to interpret cultural heritage are beneficial
- Huts for non-motorized travellers are best located where no motorized use occurs.
- Relatively large areas or corridors are best suited for hut systems

Unique Criteria

Trail Huts – The best locations for trail huts are on established trails systems or routes.

- Loop systems are desirable however linear systems work where suitable drop-off and pick up arrangements can be made

---

[64] "Greening of Remote Tourism Lodges", Pam Wight & Associates, 1993.

- A destination hut can be at the end of a trail in an area with significant features or high recreation potential.
- The hut systems can be clustered around outstanding features such as lakes or can be a string that provides shelter along a developed trail. Hut locations should be scenic
- Trail hut systems can be used in summer and winter for a variety of activities including hiking, ski touring and snowmobiling.
- Trail huts are best located where there is the presence of an established trail and is a suitable distance from population.

Lake Huts - Suitable lakes are those with outstanding scenery and the presence of beaches and lakes that are large enough to contain a string of huts.

- Lake chains with portages provide variety and are desirable.
- The lake cannot have a road at it's perimeters and the huts must only be accessed by boat, trails or by air.
- Many of the lakes can only accommodate a single hut accessed by air. Protected locations out of prevailing winds are desirable.

River Huts - The approach is generally in a down river direction and the route is linear.

- Access points along the route provide options.
- Huts should not be accessible by road (or trail, unless it is part of a trail hut system), preferably perched on high ground, and readily viewed to prevent canoeists or kayakers into being forced to return upriver.
- A sandy beach is beneficial.
- This product is preferable in areas identified for non-motorized use.
- Locations should be easily visible from the water

Opportunities for all huts can be affected by the cost of maintaining trails, repeatability elsewhere, high potential for vandalism and difficulty in maintaining the site.

7.9.2 Regional Overview

Strengths	Remoteness, scenery, some significant recreation features, optimum topography in the west.
Weaknesses	Vandalism, repeatability of product potential throughout the Rockies, and parts throughout the Wet'suwet'en Territory, minimal support infrastructures (trails), compliance and enforcement.
Concerns	Increased recreation use affecting "remote" experience. Forest harvesting. Access to tenure. Continued vandalism of cultural/heritage sites, and associated infrastructure.

7.9.2.1 RESOURCE ASSESSMENT

Existing situation

A number of huts or hut systems exist throughout the Morice District:

- Nanika Guiding has huts on several lakes in Nanika/Kidprice and Atna Lakes area

- Karl Seizinger, a guide outfitter, has huts on the Coles Lake chain
- Top of the Hill Tours has a hut in the Sibola Range
- The Ministry of Forests has a public cabin on McBride Lake
- Bear Mountaineering has a hut near upper Burnie Lake
- Back country skiers have a cabin in the Starr Creek area of the West Telkwas
- The Houston Snowmobile Club has huts in the Sibolas, the East Telkwas and Dungate Meadows
- The Smithers Snowmobile Club has huts on Dome Mountain
- The Morice Mountain Ski Club has a ski cabin in the community forest and another on Morice Mountain
- Double Eagle guiding has huts in the Nez Lake area and on Babine Lake
- Skeena Air has huts for fly-in fishing on remote lakes east of Babine Lake

Sonny Perkins has infrastructure on Parrot Lakes

7.9.2.2 POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES

The Babine Forest District has a number of areas that are suitable for the trail, lake and river hut product types. An analysis of the trail systems utilizes the following set of criteria to describe the opportunity and to determine the level of suitability.

- Established trail or route -
- Loop or Linear - a loop route with a reasonable distance is more attractive than a linear route.
- Access – access has to be far enough from road access to allow for solitude but close enough to facilitate.
- Scenery – good or better scenery is a primary criteria for a successful hut location.
- Area Size – relatively large areas are best suited.
- Biogeoclimatic area – a warm location is preferred.
- Water supply? – good, close water supply is an asset.
- Existing use – level of recreation use. Is there local use?
- Other recreation opportunities – what other activities are available?
- Naturalness? – The more natural, the more appealing.
- Location by water - for lakes and rivers, is there a setback required?
- For the lake and river huts, the presence of complimentary features such as beaches
- Cultural Heritage – The greater the significance the more attractive, however this is tempered by sensitivity of the features or inherent significance of the area.
- Motorized/non motorized- motorized presence can affect the wilderness setting while providing ease of access.

7.9.2.3 SIGNIFICANT AREAS

A6 FT BABINE TAKLA GREASE TRAIL

- Established trail or route? - Yes
- Loop or Linear? - Linear
- Access – 2 to 3 hr drive north of Smithers or fly-in, boat or fly-out from the east end
- Scenery – Mostly forested, several lakes and creeks
- Area Size – Approximately 50 km in length
- Biogeoclimatic area – SBSmc, ESSFmc, cool, cloudy summers
- Water supply? – lots of available water
- Existing use – very little
- Other recreation opportunities – could snowmobile or ski tour in winter
- Naturalness?- trail in natural landscape but power line along much of it
- Cultural Heritage – Nadooeten Grease trading trail
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – 1st nations culture counterbalance the length of access to both ends of the trail and the adjacent power line.

C2 MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN

- Established trail or route? – Established trails
- Loop or Linear? - Both
- Access – Trail access form Topley
- Scenery – Subalpine peaks, lakes and ponds
- Area Size – moderate, approximately 80 square kms
- Biogeoclimatic area – Mainly ESSF with Alpine tundra near top of Matzehtzel
- Water supply? Lots of ponds, 1 lake
- Existing use – low use by Topley residents, Important use are for Double Eagle guiding
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling in the winter
- Naturalness? – mostly natural with exception of trails and outfitter camps
- Cultural Heritage – mineral exploration in area
- Motorized/non motorized – Snowmobiling in winter, atv use of access trail
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – The scenery is less dramatic than that found in the SW Ranges and lakes, motorized uses would detract from non-motorized products

E1 & E3 TELKWA RANGES EAST AND WEST

- Established trail or route? – Some trails exist, cross-country alpine routes also possible
- Loop or Linear? - Both
- Access – One trail access up Emerson Creek, most foot access is via trails in the Bulkley Forest district. Close to both Houston and Smithers for fly-in access
- Scenery – Very scenic, valley views, mountain views, ponds, glaciated peaks
- Area Size – Very large 400 square km
- Biogeoclimatic area – Mostly AT, alpine tundra surround by ESSF, cool, windy, dry summers, cold snowy winters
- Water supply? – water is available but large dry areas
- Existing use – popular locally in both summer and winter
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling in some areas, wildlife viewing, cross-country skiing
- Naturalness? – mostly natural, some mineral exploration roads, logging on forested slopes surrounding the alpine area
- Cultural Heritage – historic mineral exploration, rich with cultural and heritage values and historic trails network; traditional use areas for hunting, fishing and food gathering, heritage villages sites, gravesites.
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized in the summer, much of area is used by snowmobilers in the winter although a large portion is zoned non-motorized in the Caribou Recovery plan
- **Suitability for Huts- HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Large area, scenic, wildlife viewing, good foot and air access

E4 HERD DOME (WO'BETL'EET)

- Established trail or route? – No, exploration only
- Loop or Linear? – Both possible
- Access – informal access from Gosnell Forest Road
- Scenery – very scenic, views to all points of the compass, glaciated peaks, braided river
- Area Size – medium, approximately 40 square km
- Biogeoclimatic area – AT surrounded by ESSF
- Water supply? – limited water
- Existing use – very low, used by Hungry Hills Adventures
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing

- Naturalness? Mainly natural, harvesting to the east
- Cultural Heritage – common trails serving as trade route between Bella Coola, Haisla, and Nis'gaa nations. Area is rich and abundant with hunting, gathering, fishing.
- Motorized/non motorized – summer non-motorized, winter motorized
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – relatively small area would likely be suitable for only one hut rather than a hut system

E5A NORTH MORICE RANGE (LHO'KWAH)

- Established trail or route? – No, exploration only
- Loop or Linear? – both possible
- Access – Old fire lookout trail or informal access from nearby forest roads
- Scenery – very scenic, views Morice Lake, rolling alpine ridge, glaciated landforms
- Area Size – large, approximately 100 square kms
- Biogeoclimatic area - AT surrounded by ESSfmc, cool dry summers, cold snowy winters
- Water supply? – numerous small creeks, may be dry in late summer
- Existing use – very low
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing
- Naturalness? – natural but some logging in Gosnell valley to the west
- Cultural Heritage – heritage/archaeology sites, camps, heritage trails, rich and abundant hunting, fishing and food gathering areas. Other areas of interest include c'eneelee Bin, Klotts wani bin, hles besh
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized in summer, limited Snowmobiling in winter
- **Suitability for Huts- HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Relatively easy to access by foot, within flying distance of Houston, scenic, large area, very little existing use

E7 REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN

- Established trail or route? – No, exploration only
- Loop or Linear? – Possibly both, no known
- Access – Foot access from nearby forest roads, fly-in access from Houston
- Scenery – Very scenic, Nanika Kidprice Lake chain to east, Morice Lake to West, glaciated peaks, rolling ridges
- Area Size – large, approximately 100 square km

- Biogeoclimatic area – AT surrounded by ESSF
- Water supply? Glaciated peaks mean plenty of water
- Existing use – very low
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing
- Naturalness? – wilderness area
- Cultural Heritage - unknown
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized summer, limited Snowmobiling in winter
- **Suitability for Huts- HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Relatively easy to access by foot, within flying distance of Houston, scenic, large area, very little existing use

E8 ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE (C'INIGGIT NENIKEKH)

- Established trail or route? – No, potential route only
- Loop or Linear? - linear
- Access – Boat access on Morice and Tahtsa Lakes, otherwise fly-in access
- Scenery - Dramatic
- Area Size – Large, 160 to 200 square kms in a linear corridor
- Biogeoclimatic area – ESSFmk and CWHws2, cool dry summers, warm snowy winters
- Water supply? - everywhere
- Existing use – some use by Nanika Guiding
- Other recreation opportunities – heli-hiking, canoeing, wildlife viewing, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing
- Naturalness? - wilderness
- Cultural Heritage – reported as a Wet'suwet'en trading route, rich and abundant cultural and heritage values including hunting/gathering, fishing, village sites, gravesites and heritage trails, legends.
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized
- **Suitability for Huts- HIGH**
- **Rationale** – Extremely scenic, wildlife, little existing use, linear route with extensive variety, high potential for both summer and winter use

E5B, E9, E10A,B SOUTH MORICE RANGE, CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS, COASTAL DIVIDE RANGES

- Established trail or route? – no, exploration only
- Loop or Linear? - both

- Access – Fly-in only
- Scenery – very scenic coastal peaks, small ponds, lakes, wetlands, creeks and rivers
- Area Size – very large, mainly linear in nature following the coastal divide
- Biogeoclimatic area - mostly AT with ESSFmk at lower elevations, cool summers, very snowy winters
- Water supply? – extensive throughout
- Existing use – almost none
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing
- Naturalness? - wilderness
- Cultural Heritage – , Kemano hydro electric tunnel at the west end of Tahtsa Lake otherwise not known
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized, although the Kitimat snowmobile club may occasionally use the Clore headwaters
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Remote, travel not as easy as the adjacent Atna to Tahtsa Lake route

E11 SIBOLA RANGE (NDE DETEEST'AY)

- Established trail or route? – some mineral exploration roads, otherwise exploration
- Loop or Linear? – both possible
- Access – Mining exploration roads on both north and south sides of the range
- Scenery – scenic rolling alpine, permanent snowfields, dramatic peaks, cirque basins views of mountains to west and south
- Area Size – large, approximately 200 square kms
- Biogeoclimatic area – AT with ESSFmc & mk
- Water supply? - widespread
- Existing use – moderate local use, snowmobile cabins, popular drive to alpine for local residents
- Other recreation opportunities – Snowmobiling, camping, skiing, ATV
- Naturalness? – Disturbed by mineral exploration
- Cultural Heritage – mineral exploration, village site, heritage trails, archaeology sites, hunting & food gathering sites, esttse'leegh, Ustsa, Esay'en cox.
- Motorized/non motorized – motorized both summer and winter
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Existing use, less appealing for non-motorized users

E13 WHITESAIL RANGE (C'ELE'LEGHEEL DZEL)

- Established trail or route? – no, exploration only
- Loop or Linear? – both possible
- Access – Mineral exploration trails from Tahtsa Reach
- Scenery – snowcapped peaks, Lakes to North, East and South
- Area Size – Medium, approximately 80 square kms
- Biogeoclimatic area - AT surrounded by ESSFmc & mk
- Water supply? – snowfields provide water throughout
- Existing use – very low
- Other recreation opportunities – camping, wildlife viewing, Snowmobiling, skiing
- Naturalness? – natural although extensive timber harvesting is occurring on slopes to the east
- Cultural Heritage – mineral exploration, heritage camps, settlements, hunting fishing and food gathering, heritage trails.
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized at present
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – not a great deal of variety, less scenic than areas to the west

E19A,B KASALKA RANGE CIRCUM-NAVIGATION (TSCC'ULH TESDLIZ BIN)

- Established trail or route? – no, route only
- Loop or Linear? - loop
- Access – by boat from Tahtsa Lake or from Troitsa Lake
- Scenery – much of route is forested, lakes along parts of the route
- Area Size – Likely between 60 and 70 kms in total
- Biogeoclimatic area – ESSFmk and CWHws2 cool dry summers, warm very snowy winters
- Water supply? – from creeks and lakes along the route
- Existing use - none
- Other recreation opportunities – wildlife viewing, experience coastal/interior forest zones
- Naturalness? - wilderness
- Cultural Heritage – n/a
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Route is currently undeveloped and remote

7.9.3 Assessment of Lake and River Hut to hut systems

A3 NAKINILERAK/HAUTETE LAKE CHAIN

- Loop or Linear? – linear
- Access – air access, road access requires crossing Lake Babine on forest industry barge
- Scenery – mountain peaks in distance , forest and wetlands around lakes and creek
- Area Size – 30 – 35 km in length
- Biogeoclimatic area – SBSmc cool cloudy summers, cold dry winters
- Water supply? – may required treatment as marshy area
- Existing use – likely almost none
- Other recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, camping,
- Naturalness? – m
- Cultural Heritage –
- Motorized/non motorized –
- Locations by water?
- Beaches?
- Protected locations?
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Route is currently undeveloped and remote

B4 BABINE LAKE – EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS

- Loop or Linear? – mostly linear
- Access – via boat from Granisle or Topley
- Scenery – scenic, bays, beaches, islands, complex shoreline
- Area Size – large
- Biogeoclimatic area – Mostly SBSmc, mk on south facing shorelines south of Wright Bay, (sunnier and drier)
- Water supply? – Good water from lake and inlet streams
- Existing use – popular with local boaters and anglers in the summer
- Other recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, beach activities, camping, wildlife viewing, lake touring
- Naturalness? – timber harvesting visible from much of the area
- Cultural Heritage – Nadooeten cultural sites

- Motorized/non motorized – motorized summer and winter
- Locations by water? – Some Agriculture Land Reserve throughout the area, otherwise crown land and some privately owned land
- Beaches? – Yes, sand, pebble and cobble
- Protected locations? – Yes, numerous
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Attractive area, easy to access from a paved road, relatively low levels of use

C12 A,B UPPER AND LOWER MORICE RIVER WETDZEN KWAH

- Loop or Linear? – linear
- Access – Several access points along Morice River Forest road
- Scenery – scenic blue green river
- Area Size – Length is approximately 100 kms from Morice Lake to Houston
- Biogeoclimatic area – SBSmc and SMSmk on lower river
- Water supply? – Good water from inlet streams
- Existing use – some, particularly during the summer and fall fishing season
- Other recreation opportunities – high quality fishing, camping, beach activities, wildlife viewing
- Naturalness? – surrounding forests have been extensively harvested, little harvesting is visible from the river
- Cultural Heritage – not known
- Motorized/non motorized – motorized
- Locations by water? – Morice River LRUP requires a setback from the river for any development, an amendment of this requirement would be required for a hut system
- Beaches? – many gravel and sand beaches
- Protected locations? - yes
- **Suitability for Huts- HIGH**
- **Rationale** – scenic, fishing opportunities, wildlife viewing opportunities, nice beaches

E15A,B NANIKAKIDPRICE/STEPP/ANZAC/LAMPREY LAKES LUHDIS BIN-C'INNIGGIT NENIKEKH)

- Loop or Linear? – linear
- Access – Morice River Forest road approximately 73 kms from Houston
- Scenery – Scenic lakes and coastal mountain peaks
- Area Size – The most canoed portion is approximately 18 kms in length, accessing the whole chain would add another 30 kms or so

- Biogeoclimatic area – Ranges from SBSmc in the NE to ESSFmk in the central area to CWHws2 at the western end of Nanika Lake
- Water supply? – Good
- Existing use - Moderate on Lamprey, Anzac and Stepp Lakes, very low on Nanika and Kidprice Lakes
- Other recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, skiing
- Naturalness? – mainly wilderness
- Cultural Heritage – Hunting, fishing and food gathering areas, heritage trails, campsites and archaeological sites.
- Motorized/non motorized – summer non-motorized, winter occasional snowmobile use
- Locations by water? - yes
- Beaches? – some, best beaches on Nanika Lake which few people reach
- Protected locations? - yes
- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Route is currently popular with local users and a commercial hut system may not be desirable with existing users

E17 TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN (WESEL BIN)

- Loop or Linear? – linear
- Access – By boat and trail from Tahtsa Lake or by air from Houston
- Scenery – Scenic forest valley and lakes with coastal peaks in the background
- Area Size – 25 – 30 km in length
- Biogeoclimatic area – ESSFmk cool dry summer, warm very snowy winters
- Water supply? – good
- Existing use – very low, fishing lodge at east end of Troitsa Lake
- Other recreation opportunities – fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, cross-country skiing, wildlife viewing, camping
- Naturalness? – wilderness
- Cultural Heritage – heritage campsites, settlements, hunting, fishing, and food gathering areas, heritage trails
- Motorized/non motorized – non-motorized area although lodge owners use motorized vehicles on access trail
- Locations by water? - yes
- Beaches? – not known
- Protected locations? - yes

- **Suitability for Huts- MODERATE**
- **Rationale** – Route is currently undeveloped and remote

7.9.3.1 SIGNIFICANT AREAS SUMMARY

Polygon #	Polygon Name	Rating
	TRAILS	
A6	Ft Babine Takla Grease Trail	Moderate
C2	Matzehtzel Mountain	Moderate
E1	Telkwa Ranges East	**High**
E3	Telkwa Range West	**High**
E4	Herd Dome	Moderate
E5a	North Morice Range	**High**
E7	Redslide Mountain	**High**
E8	Atna Bay to Tahtsa Lake Route	**High**
E5b	South Morice Range,	Moderate
E9	Clore River Headwaters	Moderate
E10a,b	Coastal Divide Ranges	Moderate
E11	Sibola Range	Moderate
E13	Whitesail Range	Moderate
E19a,b	Kasalk Range circum -navigation	Moderate
	LAKES AND RIVERS	
A3	Nakinilerak/Hautete Lake chain	Moderate
B4	Babine Lake – Eastern Bays and Islands	Moderate
C12 a,b	Upper and Lower Morice River	**High**
E15a,b	NanikaKidprice/Stepp/Anzac/Lamprey Lakes	Moderate
E17	Troitsa, Blanket & Seel Lake Chain	Moderate

7.9.4 Market and Socio-economic Assessment

7.9.4.1 MARKETS

An individual hut or hut-to-hut system is an amenity or infrastructure meant to support any number of activity-based products, especially those that rely upon a trail system. Snowmobiling, Nordic skiing, hiking, trail riding, nature observation and wildlife viewing could all be enhanced with the development of a Hut System.

The market for the hut will depend on the activity being targeted and the degree of "rustic ness" of the accommodation. Huts can range from the very comfortable to the very primitive. Generally, the **soft adventure traveller** will value a hut for its comfort, the access that it provides to more remote outdoor area and other amenities such as meals. The **hard adventure traveller** is likely an active enthusiast in the particular activity being performed, and appreciates the proximity and shelter from the elements in the high alpine or wilderness areas, making more challenging routes possible.

Single hut users will select the hut based on its location vis-à-vis a particular destination (e.g. a climbing peak) or an area (e.g. backcountry bowl for skiing) that suits the level of challenge they are seeking. They will also look for a hut that can provide a variety of excursions. Hut-to-hut users, on the other hand, will value a system that can connect a variety of features, activity areas and other experiences within in a circuit or tour. They will rarely spend more than one or two nights at a single hut.

A hut-to-hut system can lower the risk associated with some outdoor activities, thereby broadening the market appeal to the soft adventure market and increasing the viability of guiding operations. Such a system would extend access into more remote areas, opening up the possibility for more multi-day trips and giving operators more options for creating and packaging unique tours, all without adding significantly to capital and operating costs.

Most of the existing huts and hut systems in Western Canada are targeted at backcountry skiers in the winter and hikers, backpackers and mountaineers in the summer. For both these activities the national park huts and others operated by the Alpine Club of Canada are major attractants. Many snowmobile and cross-country clubs maintain warming huts for local recreationists. Internationally, Colorado, Alaska and Europe have destination hut systems.

7.9.4.2 IMPACTS/CONFLICTS

Huts and hut systems are meant to provide outdoor enthusiasts with access to a broad range of activities over an extensive backcountry land base. The creation of access is a key to development and also a challenge to hut and resource management. The following issues are important:

- Most hut facilities in the province were created by local recreation clubs, usually on Crown land. Today, a hut would require a Licence of Occupation or perhaps a Crown lease, depending on the nature of the hut and its use. Commercial tenure can be avoided for huts if the system is owned or managed by a non-profit society. A public system of huts that could accommodate a broad range of user groups would require some form of public investment and community involvement.
- There are a long list of issues concerning who has priority use, the implications of commercial use, ways and means of raising funds to maintain the facilities, and so forth. Fee collection is an ongoing challenge as well. The way around possible use problems is to develop a solution from within the region with the cooperation and participation of the affected parties before facilities are actually developed.
- A related issue is local use of hut facilities constructed by a commercial operator. Where there is no road access, this may not pose a problem, but where unguided users have the opportunity to gain access there may be concerns about unauthorized use and possibly vandalism.
- The development of alpine huts has implications for wildlife usage of an area. As the number of users increases, the impacts of factors such as garbage may be noticed, for example, through more bear problems.
- Beetle kill is now a major resource management issue in the Morice, as it is in the neighbouring Lakes and Vanderhoof districts. Unfortunately, the infestation is encroaching upon the pristine Southwest Lakes unit and affecting the surrounding backcountry landscape. The Ministry of Forests' answer to this problem is to increase the Allowable Annual Cut in support of a highly accelerated harvest program. This will result in major changes to visual quality and other resource uses over the next ten years a may significantly affect tourism quality and use.

7.9.4.3 BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

For huts to be financially viable, they have to create access to the outdoors that would not otherwise be available to users. This aspect is what encourages demand and use. The following factors should guide the development process:

- Sit selection has to provide access to high quality resources and features, including wilderness areas, parks, solitude, wildlife and wildlife viewing. Activity-specific huts should be in close proximity to that particular resource of land base.
- Infrastructure in terms of trails or trail systems, signage, reasonable road access to staging areas and the availability of hospitality and transportation services near visitor centres and staging areas are key. There will be a direct negative correlation between difficulty of access to the hut and demand.
- There are few instances of hut development on Crown land by commercial operators because of problems associated with vandalism and unauthorized use by the public. As huts are likely to be constructed on an existing trail, access would be available to all trail users. Even if a private operator constructed new trails for a hut or hut system, LAWBC is likely to authorize such development through a Licence of Occupation, which would still allow public use of the trails and access to the hut (although the hut itself could be locked). This lack of exclusivity is likely to deter future commercial hut development.
- Activities requiring extra equipment such as canoeing or kayaking will require additional storage space in the hut. For hut-to-hut systems, the activity will influence the distance between the huts. For example, an activity such as skiing or biking can cover more distance in a day than hiking.
- Depending on the type and number of huts planned, capital costs can range from the modest (e.g. $20,000 for a rustic hut) to the expensive. This in turn will be affected by the market being targeted. Huts are rarely developed for exclusive private sector use because of difficulties associated with fee collection and unapproved use. The revenue potential is rarely high enough to justify an on-site attendant or manager so the ability to control use is limited.
- Hut funding is a major issue in BC, in terms of capital and operating costs. Most public or club huts have depended on donations and volunteers to build and operate. For privately-owned huts or refuges, such as those in France, many were previously farmhouses that were converted into huts, thereby reducing the initial capital cost. As well, these huts are in areas that already had well-developed and popular trail systems – in other words, demand preceded the fulfillment of the need. Huts can be developed to some extent through volunteer efforts and "sweat equity", but new facilities will have to demonstrate the ability to be somewhat self-sustaining. This will require careful demand assessment among targeted users. Where public huts are projected to operate on a deficit, the shortfall must be made up through other revenue sources, such as fundraising activities and membership dues.
- Hut operators must establish a clear code of conduct and payment schedules. This information should be made available to users before they embark on their trip to the hut. In terms of enforcement, it may be necessary to employ hut wardens for the peak seasons, if not at all times the hut is open.

7.9.4.4 OVERALL POTENTIAL

There is some potential for hut development in the Morice Forest District, but the lack of development in other outdoor products and uncertainties about ownership and management will exert limitations. On the other hand, hut development would significantly enhance product development in backcountry areas, particularly the Southwestern Lakes. The best hut systems are usually associated with access to some outstanding outdoor recreation feature or activity for which there is untapped market potential. The 10th Mountain hut system in Colorado, the marine hut system in Alaska and the alpine hut system in the southern Canadian Rockies have all been successful because they have enhanced an existing product (e.g. ski touring/mountain biking, ocean kayaking, mountaineering, respectively). In the Morice, huts could improve a high-potential lake/river product in the Southwestern Lakes. All three of the above-mentioned hut systems were developed with public capital, in part because they occurred on Crown/public land. The involvement of multiple stakeholders and associated communities will be critical to hut development because of its multi-use character and potential to benefit a spectrum of products.

MARKET & SOCIO-ECONOMIC CRITERIA				
UNITS:		**Babine (A&B)**	**Houston (C&D)**	**Southwest (E)**
Markets	Demand	Low	Low	Medium
	Competition	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Overall potential	Low	Low	Medium
Impact/ Conflict	Use	Low	Low	Medium-Low
	Community / Social	Low	Low	Low
Business Development Needs	Crown tenure	High	High	High
	Infrastructure	Medium	Medium	Medium
	Capital	Low	Low	Low
Employment opportunities		Low	Low	Low
	Opportunities	• Potential for linking hut development to non-conventional products such as dog-sledding and ice fishing.	• Potential for linking hut development to non-conventional products such as dog-sledding and ice fishing. • River hut potential on the Morice.	• Mountain huts (Telkwa, North Morice) focused on summer and winter trail based activities. • Lake huts (Nanika/Kidprice, Troitsa/Seel). • Forest company collaboration on facility planning in remoter areas.

A map showing Hut System suitability can be found on the next page (Exhibit 26).

Hut System Suitability

Tourism Opportunity Study
Morice Forest District

Hut System Ranking

▨ High Suitability

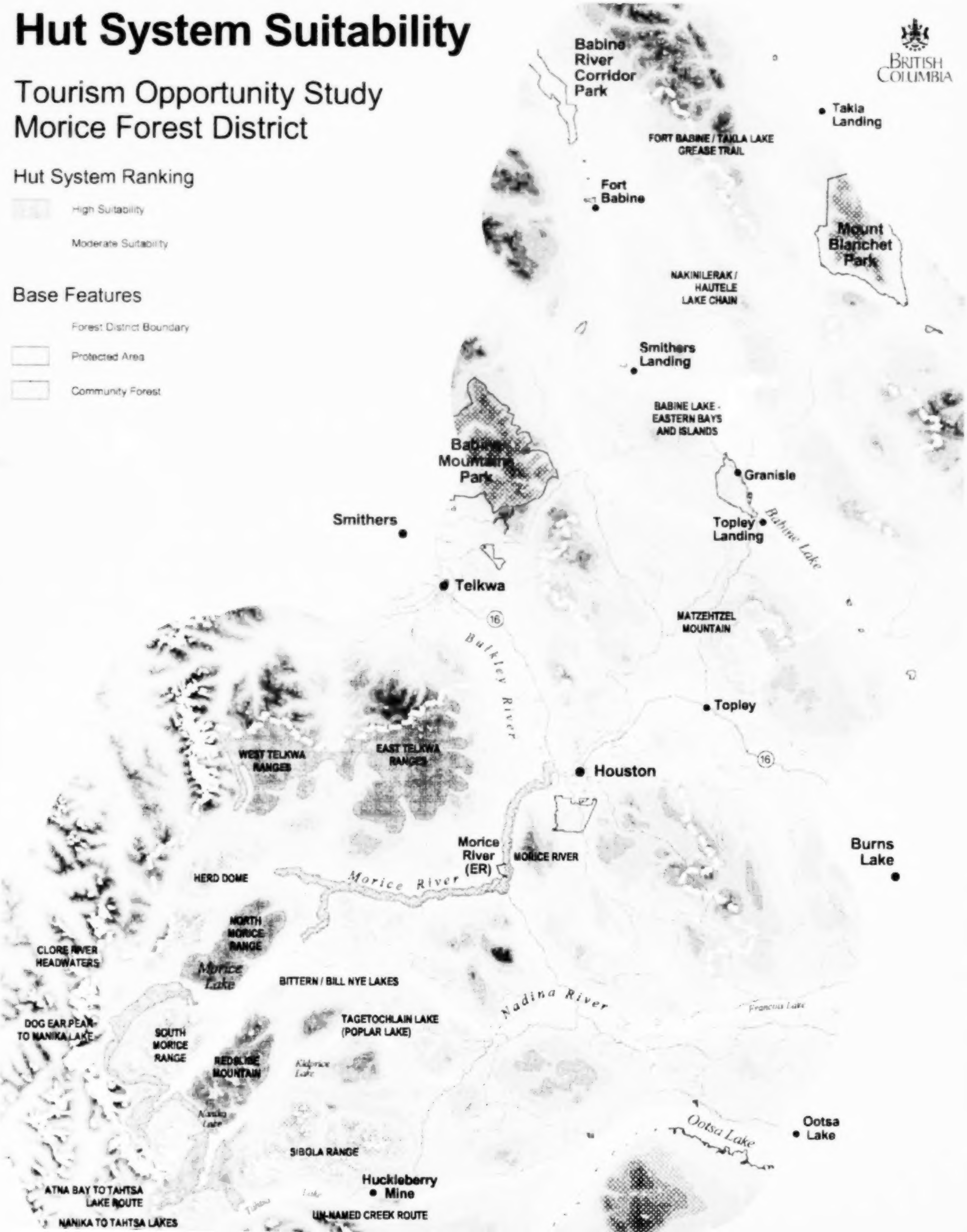
Moderate Suitability

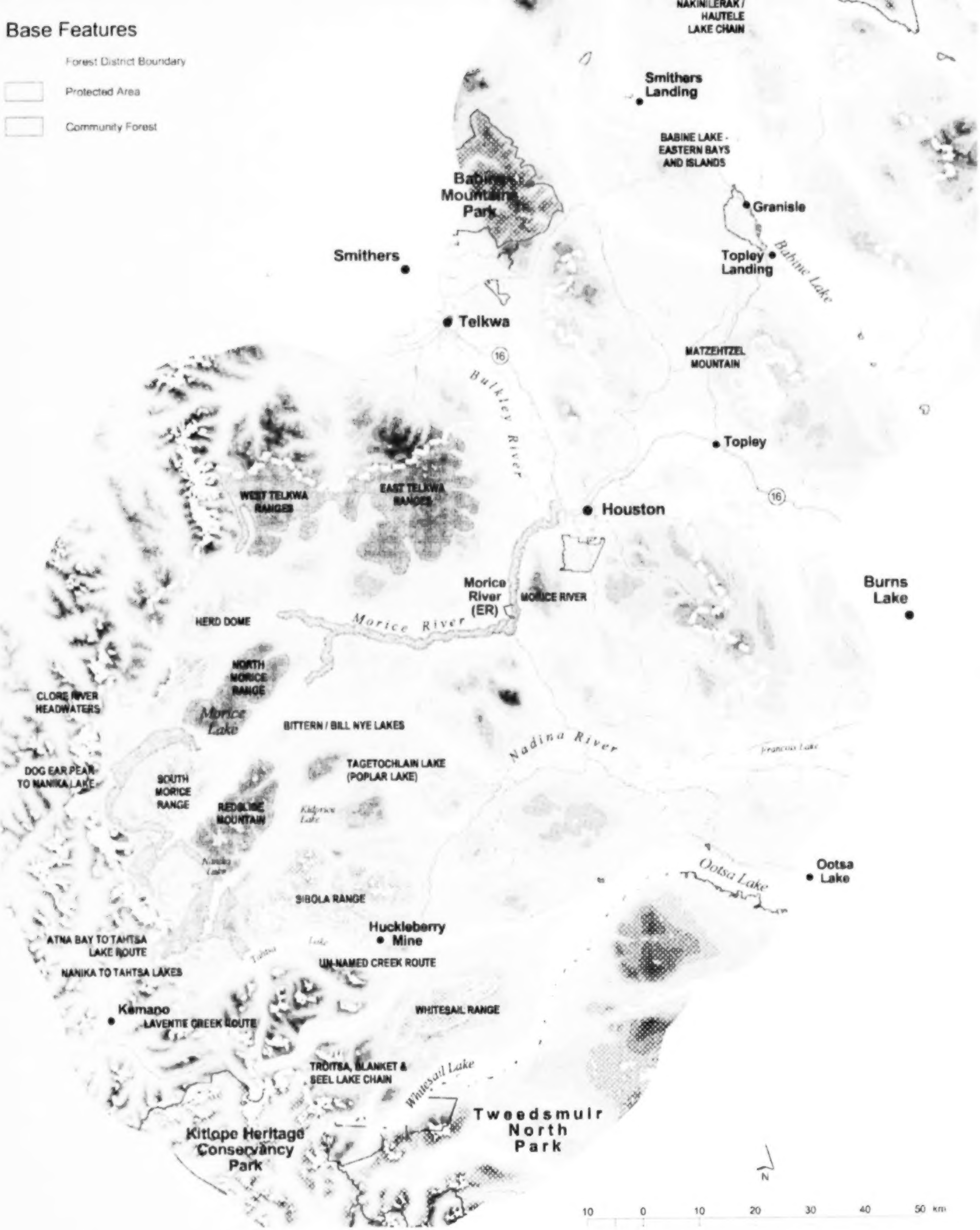
Base Features

Forest District Boundary

☐ Protected Area

☐ Community Forest


British Columbia
Babine River Corridor Park
Takla Landing
FORT BABINE / TAKLA LAKE GREASE TRAIL
Fort Babine
Mount Blanchet Park
NAKINILERAK / HAUTELE LAKE CHAIN
Smithers Landing
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
16
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Burns Lake
HERD DOME
Morice River
NORTH MORICE RANGE
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
Morice Lake
BITTERN / BILL NYE LAKES
Nadina River
Francois Lake
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
SOUTH MORICE RANGE
REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SIBOLA RANGE
Huckleberry Mine
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
UN-NAMED CREEK ROUTE
Tahtsa


Base Features
Forest District Boundary
Protected Area
Community Forest
NAKINILERAK / HAUTELE LAKE CHAIN
Smithers Landing
BABINE LAKE - EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS
Babine Mountains Park
Granisle
Smithers
Topley Landing
Babine Lake
Telkwa
16
Bulkley River
MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN
Topley
16
WEST TELKWA RANGES
EAST TELKWA RANGES
Houston
Morice River (ER)
MORICE RIVER
Burns Lake
HERD DOME
Morice River
NORTH MORICE RANGE
CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS
Morice Lake
BITTERN / BILL NYE LAKES
Nadina River
Francois Lake
DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE
SOUTH MORICE RANGE
REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN
TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)
Kidprice Lake
Nanika Lake
Ootsa Lake
Ootsa Lake
SIBOLA RANGE
Huckleberry Mine
ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE
Tahtsa Lake
UN-NAMED CREEK ROUTE
NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES
Kemano
LAVENTIE CREEK ROUTE
WHITESAIL RANGE
TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN
Whitesail Lake
Tweedsmuir North Park
Kitlope Heritage Conservancy Park
N
10
0
10
20
30
40
50 km

Chapter

8

8 Tourism Action Plans

The previous chapter focused on opportunities related to product development. This chapter deals with broader tourism and community development issues that have implications for product development. The focus is on correcting weaknesses and gaps that may impede development. Without the basic building blocks of economic development, communities will find it difficult to attract and grow the investment, entrepreneurship, labour and infrastructure needed to create high value tourism.

8.1 Issues Overview

There is a steadily growing global market for adventure and wilderness-related tourism products, and that the Morice Forest District has specific features to attract a share of this market. The key development challenges are:

- To develop the local commitment to capitalize on the most promising opportunities.
- To prepare the most promising products for the market.
- To develop quality products that will be competitive regionally and nationally.
- To attract the financing and investment capital required for the development of suitable tourism opportunities.

The consultants have heard from numerous community stakeholders on their goals and objectives for the tourism sector in the Morice Forest District. The key community challenges are to:

- Develop adventure products in a manner that protects community values (i.e., environmental and recreational) and maximizes community participation in terms of ownership and employment.
- Expands the economic benefits derived from tourism development within the local communities.

8.2 Issues Scan

Several key issues were identified during the course of this project by the consulting team either through research, analysis or direct input from community stakeholders and tourism operators. The project team believes these issues should be addressed in further product development planning if the Morice Forest District is to develop its tourism industry in a manner consistent with community and tourism industry needs. The following points have been raised across the region:

1. Communities in the Morice Forest District have identified tourism as a key future economic activity and each community has been working on specific tourism initiatives over the past several years. The communities are becoming more involved in the processes and activities associated with tourism development. The communities recognize the utility of economic diversification into tourism, and have expressed a desire to have tourism contribute to their local economies.

2. In some communities, local residents, particularly those not directly employed by the tourism industry, must show support towards tourism development. Some residents remain sceptical towards the value of tourism and transmit a negative attitude towards tourists. There is concern about the impact that local tourism will bring to the area. Additional educational efforts may be required to show the positive economic impact of tourism for the region and community discussions must occur to explore solutions to local concerns.

3. Tourism stakeholders have identified the tenure process for operating on Crown Land and the number of different agencies that operators must deal with in conducting their tourism venture as a barrier to effectively moving tourism opportunities forward in a timely and efficient fashion. This has made it difficult for tourism opportunities to undertake the investments they need to fully capitalize on identified tourism opportunities.

4. Representatives in the communities have identified several transportation issues as one of the primary impediments to tourism development locally. The lack of trails and signage to several key tourism features has been identified as limiting access for tourists coming to the area. As well, air transportation costs are high and this is reducing the competitiveness of the region's tourism operators.

5. There needs to be better cooperation between local organizations and tourism interests. Ways need to be explored to collaborate over the use and development of specific areas in the region. Currently various groups are in competition when there may be opportunities to accommodate several tourism and recreation objectives in the same area.

6. Throughout the Morice Forest District there are several tourism products currently being developed or considered by several communities. Effort should be given to ensuring that the communities in the region work collaboratively to develop connected and complementary products to offer the touring public.

7. Some of the products identified in this report will require a significant capital investment. Clearly, attracting this kind of capital will be a challenge. An investor will be seeking the best return on investment and minimal risk exposure. The investment decision will be influenced by factors such as the market for the product, the competition, the security of the land base, the location of the venture, and the entrepreneur's experience in the sector. Community and government support will be necessary to create a favourable investment climate.

8. It appears that in some instances that different organizations involved in tourism have not been able to work in a collaborative fashion to benefit the regional tourism sector. As well, while it has been relayed that tourism is a high priority with the communities in the region, key personnel do not have enough resources to properly pursue goals and objectives that they would like to undertake in the tourism sector.

8.3 Regional and Community Recommendations

This section deals with broader tourism and community development issues that cut across geographic boundaries as well as community-specific area of action.

8.3.1 Cooperating on Tourism Planning

Communities in the Morice area do not often cooperate on tourism development initiatives, despite a body of compelling evidence showing regional cooperation to be a preferred path to development, diversification and increased competitiveness. Not that there has been overwhelming opportunities for communities and businesses to work together on tourism. As a small business sector, tourism generally does not generate the interest and concern of local officials that the resource industries do. This, despite the opportunities for economic growth and diversification. The fact that the Morice Forest District is one of the very last districts in the province not to have completed a Land and Resource Management Plan (LRMP) also explains why local tourism businesses have yet to join together to work on issues important to their future, such as land use. The lack of cooperation between First Nations and tourism operators is one of the most conspicuous failings of tourism development in recent years. Tourism development in general, and back/mid-country development in particular, requires implementation capacity built on collective action involving economic development offices, chambers of commerce, tourism operators, recreation groups and First Nations.

8.3.1.1 KEY ACTIONS:

- Consider the coordination of a broader regional approach in cooperation with the Smithers, the Southside Economic Development Association (SEDA) and First Nations to establish a coordinating mechanism for implementation of region-wide tasks. There are many areas of cooperation possible, especially on regional issues such as infrastructure development, marketing and land use planning. A Bulkley TOS was completed last year, as well as a Tourism Development Strategy by SEDA. Tourism activity and development, like tourists, rarely confine themselves to arcane geographic boundaries. Most visitors have no idea about where forest districts begin and end and really could care less. They are really looking for a quality tourism experience and this could involve dealing with any number of hospitality, accommodation, attraction, food service, backcountry and retail businesses, all in a single day. It makes sense for communities within a tourism region to collaborate on initiatives, which will generate more benefits than if, each acted individually.
- A one-year action plan could be developed with established completion dates for high priority initiatives. This could be done through a region-wide workshop to have participants discuss their priorities. The workshop would be a good way to have communities become familiar with the strategy and take interest and ownership in those elements that affect them.
- Work with key senior government agencies to implement tourism development. These agencies need to be active participants in addressing key local tourism issues. As well government agencies need to be encouraged to proactively inform local tourism operators and organizations of the programs, projects and government policies that impact tourism. Some of

the key government agencies and service organizations that could play a role in the development of tourism initiatives and tourism business development include:

- Land and Water BC Inc.
- Community Futures Development Corporations
- BC Ministry Sustainable Resource Management
- BC Ministry of Forests
- Human Resources Development Canada
- Tourism British Columbia
- BC Parks
- Northern British Columbia Tourism Association
- University of Northern British Columbia
- Northwest Community College

8.3.2 First Nations Tourism Development

First Nations tourism, where aboriginal people are directly involved through control or having their culture serve as the primary attraction, is growing at a rate up to five times faster than the conventional tourism industry. Turning that growth to local advantage will require First Nations control of tourism development and the building of effective relationships between tourism operators and aboriginal communities. Tourism then has the potential to stimulate economic and social development and provide a mechanism for re-establishing aboriginal approaches to land use and resource management. This is already happening in the Kitlope (Haisla) and the Queen Charlottes (Haida). More activity along these lines will help rebuild capacity within First Nations communities, affirm cultural values and traditions, empower and strengthen community pride, create employment, generate revenue, provide training and educational opportunities and facilitate cultural exchange. In other words, tourism development can lead to overall community development.

There is an opportunity in the study area for achieving First Nations tourism development through the creation of partnerships, networking and relationships that will bring together all available regional assets into a single development path.

8.3.2.1 KEY ACTIONS:

- Encourage linkages between aboriginal tourism organizations, including the Aboriginal Tourism Association of British Columbia, the Canadian National Aboriginal Tourism Association, and Aboriginal Tourism Team Canada (part of the Canadian Tourism Commission).
- Encourage the implement a visitor services program in cooperation with the Office of the Wet'suwet'en. Most visitors to the study area have no awareness or understanding of whether or not they can visit IRs and the protocol and costs of doing so. A communications program can raise awareness and lower the risk visitors might perceive when travelling the area. One suggestion is to establish protocols for acceptable use, determining which sites are and are not suitable for tourism use, the types of use allowed and a fee structure, if appropriate. Once

standards are established, they have to be communicated to the travelling public. This can be accomplished through various means, including

- A coordinated signage program on trails and sites.
- A map-based web page profiling important sites and use information.
- Brochures and maps for distribution to Travel Info Centres, chambers of commerce and accommodation facilities in the region.
- Central visitor centre(s) within major communities where travellers can go to obtain information on IRs and other tourism products/services.
- An email list of key partners and contacts, which can be used for issuing press releases and other communications activities.
- A list operators, wholesalers, motorcoach services and transportation companies for direct mail notifying them of IR tourism use. The mail out could also be used to encourage partnership development.
- Ensure band and economic development offices are fully aware of protocols and procedures so they can provide information if required.

- Prepare a listing of cultural experiences that could be added to a primary eco-tourism adventure. Such a listing might include performances by traditional and contemporary performing artists (e.g. dance troupes), story-telling by First Nations' elders or excursions to view historic sites or places of interest.

8.3.3 Tourism Business and Product Development

Tourism plans often assume that the trick to expanding the local industry is to advertise enough to attract more visitors, get them to stay longer and have them spend more money. After all, if visitor spending increases, then this will have the effect of encouraging more tourism businesses, employment and community income. Unfortunately, this focus on the advertising mandate is just as often premature as it is misguided. Looked at from a true business development perspective, it is obvious that before there can be sales, there must be a product or service worth selling. Otherwise, there is no point to advertising and promoting the community. Oddly enough, many communities market themselves to visitors, sometimes at great expense, without ever having investigated what it is they are selling, or if indeed they have anything to sell at all. Tourism markets and expanding rapidly, but competition for visitors and their spending is also on the rise. The bread and butter of the local tourism industry – Highway 16 summer visitor traffic – is faced with many options for a tourism experience as they travel through the region. For Houston, Granisle and other communities in the Morice region to stand out and be competitive, they must offer a quality experience that provides value-for-money. This means much more than advertising – it means having a range of products, packages and services that will encourage visitors to willingly increase their per diem spending in the region, which is believed to be amongst the lowest of all visitor regions in the province.

8.3.3.1 KEY ACTIONS:

- The Houston Economic Development Office should prepare an inventory of regional sites suitable for conversion or new development for the mid-country lodge identified as an investment priority in Invest in Houston, BC. The inventory could then be included in a prospectus identifying the highest value tourism activity areas and development sites, using map resources generated by this study. Such a proactive approach has been employed in other areas of the province like Valemount and has given the local community a chance to define development parameters in advance. A Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) could be negotiated with LAWBC to actively identify and promote sites with favourable development prospects. For LAWBC, this proactive approach gives it a chance to review and pre-approve sites that may be targeted in applications for Crown land tenure and sale. For Houston, the supplement could be directly featured in marketing and attraction programs, as well as assist with the forecasting and planning for future infrastructure and services. The benefit for the investor is that much of the site location process that would normally accompany a lodge development, will have already been pre-cleared, thereby eliminating much of the associated risk and cost.

- Houston, Granisle and Topley should jointly fund, in cooperation with the BNRD, a tourism investor's handbook, which would provide a step-by-step guide for dealing with the regulatory process, but particularly land use issues. This could supplement the above-noted lodge development and attraction program. Houston has also identified in-town accommodation as an opportunity.
- Investigate the feasibility of forming a "Product Club" with area operators, the Office of the Wet'suwet'en. The Product Club program[65] is administered by the Canadian Tourism Commission for the purpose of encouraging tourism consortia to develop market-ready products. A consortium of small and medium-sized businesses agree to work together in order to develop new tourism products or enhance existing products which will collectively address issues that are impeding the growth of tourism in a given area or industry sector. A typical Product Club is an independent entity, which could include outfitters, tour operators or tourism associations. Research (on markets, products, and initiatives in other jurisdictions), workshops/seminars for club members, developing a product development plan, developing a sales strategy, and communication tools (e.g. newsletters, meetings) are examples of supported ventures. A meeting could be held with outdoor tourism stakeholders to gauge the level of interest in forming a product club. The Product Club will create year-round barrier-free touring packages through an enhanced communication strategy, research to identify market potential, and a model that can be used in other regions. A proposal call for Product Club submissions will be issued in Autumn 2001.
- Create tourism opportunity lists, using this report as a base line. The list could identify tourism enterprises that do not currently exist in the region, or are under-represented, and for which there is enough apparent demand to support a business. Such as list does not have to be restricted to outdoor adventure enterprises. As the region has a lack of capacity and support services, infrastructure needs should also be listed. These lists could be actively marketed by economic development and outreach personnel to facilitate opportunity development.
- Promote rental and shuttling opportunities in support of product development. Examples of equipment that could be covered include mountain bikes, motorboats, kayaks, canoes, fishing gear, snowmobiles, skiing equipment and possibly climbing equipment. Expansion of rental

---

[65] http://www.canadatourism.com/en/ctc/partner_centre/shortcutindex.cfm?info=productclubs/productindex.html, (613) 946-1000.

equipment would benefit both local residents who wish to try an activity on a limited basis and visitors to the area who are unable or do not wish to bring recreation equipment to the area.

- Compile and maintain planning resource materials at economic development and band offices for use by local entrepreneurs. There are several tourism planning guides and handbooks that could have more circulation locally. A suggested distribution package for local entrepreneurs includes:
    - Business of Adventure: Developing a Business in Adventure Tourism is a good guide for developing a new adventure tourism business or purchasing an existing one. A sample business plan is included.[66]
    - The Adventure Tourism Series published by the Open Learning Agency is a workbook written especially for those who are entering the adventure tourism industry as guides or operators, or who are just about to do so. This series focuses on the core guiding skills and understandings common to all adventure tourism operations and is based upon the Outdoor Guide Occupational Standards.[67]
    - Aboriginal Tourism Business Planning Guide: checklist for success: how to develop, promote and run your own tourism operation. This document is a joint publication of the Aboriginal Tourism Team Canada and the Canadian Tourism Human Resource Council. It can be obtained from the Canadian Tourism Commission offices in Ottawa.[68] There are numerous other planning guides for individual businesses on this site.
    - A step-by-step guide for dealing with the regulatory process, and particularly land use issues, in tourism development was recently prepared by Tourism BC.[69] It would be helpful in navigating through various licensing and permitting processes for those activities occurring off reserve lands.
    - Information on commercial recreation tenures from Land and Water BC Inc. should be distributed in case a proposed operation wishes to make use of Crown land. It is not necessary to distribute the entire policy document but "frequently asked question" information can be obtained from LAWBC and distributed.[70]
- A Road Map to Tourism Financing from the Canadian Tourism Commission outlines the major funding options for new and existing tourism businesses.[71] Although it may be too detailed to hand out to individuals, it could be kept at a central site and an executive summary distributed as part of the package. Other financial information can be obtained from the inventory of government assistance programs maintained by the Canada-BC Service Centre.[72]
- Work with the Houston Snowmobile Club to address commercial development opportunities. The Houston area has a full range of terrain from beginner to expert and is well-positioned to appeal to the non-technical rider and family groups, as well as hill climbers. There have been

---

[66] Published by Bhudak Consultants– ISBN: 0-0682474-0-0.

[67] http://www.ola.bc.ca/

[68] http://www.canadatourism.com/en/ctc/tourismresources/referenceCentre/references_ms.cfm

[69] http://www.cthrc.ca/english/certif/index.html

[70] http://www.bc-land-assets.com/for_business/commercial_recreation/index.htm

[71] http://www.canadatourism.com/en/ctc/tourismresources/publications/publications_ms.cfm

[72] Catalogues are available from the Canada-BC Service Centre.

expressions of interest among club members in starting a commercial snowmobiling enterprise. It is important to note that well-developed snowmobile destinations like Revelstoke, Valemount and Logan Lake have forged a close relationship between local clubs and commercial operators. A business start-up kit has been developed as part of the Houston 2000 Forest Tourism Development Plan. Trail development for the family market, trail and directional signage, environmental impacts on Woodland Caribou, package development and First Nations' partnerships are all priority areas.

- Provide packaging assistance to smaller operators who might not normally have the capacity to engage in sophisticated distribution practices, for example through tour wholesalers and travel agents. Through packaging, operators can create innovative products by pooling their ideas and resources, while visitors have a simplified purchase decision and the chance to experience a unique holiday. The challenge for the community is to create a cooperative environment in which operators see a payoff for participating. The more who participate, the better the opportunities for package development. Areas of need include:
  - Operator training in package design, perhaps through a local workshop.
  - A pilot project involving several operators for a package promotion into a nearby market such as Prince George.
  - An inbound tour operator capable of multi-activity packaging and marketing.
- Undertake the development of a winter festival in Houston and Granisle for the purposes of leveraging product development in other areas. Such events are excellent vehicles for creating awareness of other tourism products.

8.3.4 Marketing

Tourism markets are becoming more specialized and fragmented, forming niches with distinct travel characteristics. Communities and tourism operators wishing to create a position within these niches must streamline and specialize their marketing programs, so the right visitors are targeted and attracted to the area. Targeted marketing can be expensive, however, and many operators cannot afford the money to do so. Cooperative marketing, whereby the community and operators work together to build consistent themes and messages, is one way to overcome this lack of capacity, generate a better marketing reach and draw in more business that benefits the entire industry.

8.3.4.1 KEY ACTIONS:

- Undertake a marketing audit to gain a better understanding of the effectiveness of existing marketing programs and identify areas of improvement.
- Refine web-site resources. Presently, there are good regional web resources available at BCNorth.ca which covers Smithers, Houston and Burns Lake. This site is linked to Houston On-line. From either of these sites, residents and non-guided visitors can get information on primary tourism products, however, there is no linkage back to commercial services and opportunities for visitors who don't want a do-it-yourself approach. A community like Tumbler Ridge, for example, has done an excellent job showcasing its backcountry with an extensive up-to-date photo library, an activity calendar inviting people to take part in local recreation club day-trips, and an event calendar advertising the major events coordinated by the

club.[73] A clear linkage has been drawn between local recreation and tourism, as residents clearly see the latter as an economic development tool that will allow them to remain in the community.

- Investigate map and brochure resources currently maintained by the Ministry of Forests, but scheduled to be cancelled shortly. These marketing materials are very valuable and an important resource for BC resident travellers. Their absence will be an inconvenience and possible deterrent to local backcountry travel.
- A cooperative marketing group, utilizing programs from the Canadian Tourism Commission (CTC) might be feasible. Several CTC programs (e.g. Regional Tourism Marketing Initiative and the Adventure Program) could be utilized locally, providing a consortium of interested stakeholders was formed.
- Encourage targeted product development in the region. Communities can work with government agencies and operators to direct new investment into products and areas with more growth potential. Also, innovation and change are bywords of tourism product development. Rather than simply reproducing products that can be purchased elsewhere, the emphasis should be on developing unique combinations of activities and experiences that define the region's market presence. A logical pairing in the region is the outdoor adventure and First Nations cultural experience.

8.3.5 Training and Education

Human resource development is a critical component of the tourism sector because most visitor experiences are determined by human interactions. Outdoor adventure and nature-based tourism are indeed built around natural resource features, but it is the service aspect that makes a quality product and brings visitors back. In the Morice, the human infrastructure needed to support initiatives is limited and a drawback for new investment. The workforce is changing as resource industries scale back their employment levels, leaving many workers under-employed and unemployed. Many workers will need to learn totally new skills to survive and become competitive in the new workforce of the future. Those who do not will find work harder and harder to find. Communities involved in tourism development need to be aware of this situation and to focus efforts on providing opportunities for gaining the advanced skills necessary for new workforce demands. In addition to these training demands, there are new challenges such as developing strategies to keep youth in the community and the attraction of workers into the local labour market.

8.3.5.1 KEY ACTIONS:

- Distribute information on certification programs for adventure tourism. There is no single set of national or provincial standards of certification either for tourism or outdoor adventure tourism positions. The following are suggested starting points for local certification of operators and guides:
    - The Canadian Tourism Human Resource Council (CTHRC) administers certification of the National Occupational Standards for the tourism industry and they work with provincial agencies for delivery of programs and services. At the time of writing of this report, the designated agency in BC, the Pacific Rim Institute of Tourism, had closed its

---

[73] http://www.pris.bc.ca/wnms

doors. Their educational and training programs are now being handled by the Hospitality Industry Education Advisory Committee.[74] These standards are rooted in the hospitality sector and are broadly based. Relevant profiles for local certification include Freshwater Angling Guide, Heritage Interpreter, Local Tour Guide and Outdoor Adventure Guide. Other training resources are available from the CTHRC website.[75]

  - A comprehensive listing of certification options through industry associations in Canada is now being compiled by the Canadian Tourism Commission. The industry profile and resource guide will soon be available on the CTC website.[76]
  - Formal education programs and degrees in outdoor recreation are available through the Open Learning Agency and the college system in the province. Each college has its own outdoor adventure program and in many cases curriculum. There is now an initiative to establish provincial program standards and streamline delivery so graduates conform to industry-accepted training guidelines.[77] Northwest Community College provides a Wilderness Guiding Skills Program.

- Recruit leaders and key partners such as HRDC and prepare a concept brief which outlines a program for promoting tourism career opportunities. The stereotype of the low-paid tourism job is not entirely accurate. There are a range of occupations that require a variety of skills and training, and earnings reflect these differences. Industries with an important tourism component where weekly wages are above the sector average include air transport, museums and archives, auto and truck rental and travel services. Even the entry-level jobs in tourism which are low-paying provide an opportunity for new workforce entrants to gain experience and ascend to better positions at higher pay. The seasonal and part-time positions available in tourism can be a valuable source of employment for those members of the workforce who may not want full-time work, for example because of family obligations or because the tourism season fits the traditional cultural seasonal lifestyle.
- Gather and distribute training materials and resources for local entrepreneurs and workers interested in pursuing a tourism career. Resources include:
  - Canadian Tourism Human Resources Council[78] offers workbooks, trainer's guides, train-the-trainer resources and videos addressing the skills necessary for professional development. National training resources exist for eight tourism sectors, including adventure tourism.
  - For First Nations members, the Nicola Valley Institute of Technology (NVIT)[79] and other education centres provide a unique venue for resource and information dissemination. Also, Aboriginal Business Canada[80] is involved in a variety of business and management assistance programs for aboriginal clients, including skill development.

---

[74] (604) 930-9770

[75] http://www.cthrc.ca/english/

[76] For more information contact Frank Verschuren at verschuren.frank@ic.gc.ca

[77] For more information call Terry Hood at (604) 329-6476 or thood@telus.net

[78] http://www.cthrc.ca/english/index.html

[79] http://www.nvit.bc.ca/

[80] http://www.strategis.ic.gc.ca/SSG/ab00002e.html

They can also act as a conduit to Industry Canada's information products. Business planning guides, entrepreneurship training software, and a host of aboriginal business development reference material is available by request, or on the Internet.

  - Aboriginal Youth Business Council[81] is a volunteer run, non-profit, youth-driven council of First Nation, Metis, & Inuit entrepreneurs. Their Internet site was created as a resource for youth to learn about business.

- Examine delivery of viable entrepreneurship and skill development programs to encourage more First Nations outdoor adventure businesses. Suggestions include:
  - Identify ways to increase partnerships between operators and students (e.g. guide mentoring program).
  - CESO Aboriginal Services[82] is a volunteer organization which promotes and extends the economic and social growth and well-being of the Aboriginal peoples of Canada. They are extensively involved in skills transfer programs and have a tourism and hospitality program shaped around a series of workshops that can be delivered locally.
  - The Native Tourism Development Program offered by the Native Education Centre in Vancouver is a first year college training program uniquely designed for aboriginal people interested in pursuing a career in the tourism industry.
  - Open Learning Agency[83] can adapt some of its modules for First Nations delivery. There are eight modules in the tourism program, including Adventure Tourism, for individuals working in or considering entering the adventure tourism industry in BC. The material is based upon national occupational standards for Outdoor Guides and was developed by BC and New Zealand adventure tourism leaders in collaboration with industry associations.
  - Community Futures delivers the Western Youth Entrepreneur Program[84]. The program, sponsored by Western Economic Diversification, is meant to boost entrepreneurial opportunities for BC youth. Each Community Futures Development Corporation (CFDC), including Nadina Community Futures, initially received $200,000 in funding to support a loan program for persons between the ages of 18 and 29. Loans of up to $25,000 are provided at competitive interest rates. Wet'suwet'en can assist their young people in accessing the capital, business planning, training and technical assistance for supporting new tourism ventures.

8.3.6 Infrastructure

The design and placement of infrastructure is a powerful community tool for controlling and directing tourism development. Tourism is a small business-oriented industry and requires extensive investments in infrastructure – this applies even to wilderness operators who might be relatively self-sufficient but still require key transportation and supply networks to support their tourism products.

---

[81] http://www.aybc.org/

[82] http://www.ceso-saco.com/aboriginalsvc.htm

[83] http://www.ola.bc.ca/cgi-bin/htsearch

[84] http://www.wd.gc.ca/eng/finance/programs/youth.html

The community can influence backcountry use directly through public infrastructure placement and indirectly by encouraging and shaping private infrastructure (e.g. hospitality services).

8.3.6.1 KEY ACTIONS:

- Monitor progress of the Regional Infrastructure Development Strategy now being prepared for most of Northwest BC, from Endako west to Prince Rupert and including Highway 37 to the Yukon border. This major initiative is being administered by Community Futures and involves municipalities and economic development commissions. The strategy, which will be completed in March 2003, will identify key infrastructure priorities for the Northwest and will help to guide future federal and provincial investments. Tourism is one of the study's strategic priorities. It is important that the Houston area ensure that infrastructure needs it deems priorities are adequately addressed in the study. Issues such as highway conditions, rail facilities, commercial air service and planned new cruise ship port facilities in Prince Rupert, each of which has implications for tourism development in the Morice, should be assessed from a local perspective.
- One infrastructure issue which should be prioritized is that of signage. This was identified as a major issue in the Houston Tourism Development Strategy. Highway signs, off-road signs and trailhead signs could all be coordinated to facilitate ease of movement for winter and summer activities. Highway 16 travellers have to be given a reasonable comfort level that venturing off the main highway does not represent undue risk.
- Investigate the further development of rail passenger service to the region. Rail travel by tourists has been enjoying good growth in BC in recent years and with the reduction in coal and forest product shipments in northern BC and the talk of developing an Alaskan rail line, railways may be interested in exploring new viable business opportunities in the region. Houston could work with other Highway 16 communities on a regional approach to rail tourism development.
- One or more communities should undertake a community recreation plan dedicated to trail system development, with particular attention to identifying and developing an integrated multi-use trail system for land-based and winter-based products. This could include dedicated mountain biking trails in proximity to Houston, something that was highlighted in the recent Houston Tourism Marketing Report.
- There may be opportunities for community control of former Ministry of Forest recreation sites and trails, with some possibilities for commercial development. MoF is no longer managing a network of recreation sites and trails, nor managing a system of recreation maps and brochures. As a transition measure, the ministry has established an implementation team to identify sites and trails best suited for transfer, advertise them for transfer and then negotiate with third parties to take over site and trail management. Much of the transfers will occur before March 2003, so it is important for the community to identify which sites and trails are most valuable and initiate discussions with MoF and other stakeholders for transfers that will create the greatest benefit.
- Make better use of the Northern Development Fund for local infrastructure projects, particularly those related to water-based tourism development. The purpose of the fund, established in 1998, is to promote sustainable economic development in Northwestern British Columbia. It is administered by the Nechako-Kitimat Development Fund Society.[85]

---

[85] http://www.ndf.gov.bc.ca

Annex
A

9 Annex A – Detailed Polygon Descriptions

Units	Descriptions
	Unit A - Forested hills & lakes north of Lake Babine An area of rounded hills and small to large lakes. Much of the area has timber harvesting. The difficult access and low levels of public recreation use (due to the need to cross Babine Lake on an industry owned timber barge) are what makes this area different from similar landscapes found south of Babine Lake.
A 1	**TSITUTL MOUNTAIN** **General Description:** Remote range east of Tochcha Lake on the border with the Ft St James and Lakes Forest Districts. **Outstanding Features**: Scenic area, Peak, subalpine meadows, parkland, wetlands **Associated Products and activities:** Heli-hiking, Snowmobiling and ski touring **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Because access from the west requires crossing Babine Lake this alpine area is more likely to be accessed from forest roads in the two forest districts to the east
A 2	**MORRISON LAKE** **General Description:** Large lake to the northeast of Babine Lake. **Outstanding Features**: Presently undisturbed by industrial activity, scenic with views of Babine Mountains to the west and Frypan Peak to the Northeast, very good fishing, historic trail connecting to Haul Lake and the Babine Grease trail further north. Babine Fish Hatchery operated on the outflow of this lake in the first half of the last century. The river between Morrison and Babine Lakes has high sockeye runs and ten different fish species. **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, hiking **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Forest harvesting near this lake has the potential to negatively impact the visual landscape

A 3	**NAKINILERAK/HAUTELE LAKE CHAIN** (Friday to Natowite Lakes) **General Description:** Chain of lakes that are linked together by Hautete Creek and empty into Natowite Lake. Includes Friday, Nakinilerak, and Hautete Lakes as well as an un-named lake north of Natowite Lake which drains into Hautete Creek. Nakinilerak Lake is known for 20# Lake trout. Hautete is also known for large lake trout. An old mining camping is found on the south shore of Nakinilerak. Marshes dominate certain sections. Friday Lake shoreline has been flooded by beaver dams and some dams are likely on Hautete Creek. **Outstanding Features**: Chain of lakes. Although this area is not easily accessible (requires crossing Babine Lake on an industry log barge), wilderness atmosphere, scenery, high chances of seeing wildlife and good fishing would make this an attractive canoe route. This area was given a "high" significance and sensitivity rating during the 1998 MOF recreation inventory. **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, canoeing, fishing, ice fishing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Three crossings by the Hautete FSR provide access points to Hautete Creek but do reduce the wilderness atmosphere. Additional harvesting near the creek or lakes could significantly reduce the wilderness character of the area.
A 4	**NATOWITE LAKE** **General Description:** A remote lake accessible by road via an industrial barge crossing of Babine Lake near Topley Landing. Good gravel and sand beaches, good moorages, camping, good fishing, at least two cabins. Lake drains eastward into Takla Lake in the Ft St James District. **Outstanding Features:** Generally a wilderness atmosphere, good fishing and camping. 1998 MOF recreation inventory gave a "High" feature significance to this lake. **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, boating, camping, potential snowmobile route to Takla Lake and Ft St James **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Managing harvesting to maintain an un-disturbed viewscape will protect wilderness atmosphere.
A 5	**A5a TOCHCHA LAKE A5b NIZIK LAKE, A5c BIG LOON LAKE** **General Description:** Tochcha Lake - Large lake to the east of Babine Lake. Road accessible with forest development on both east and west sides of the lake. Nizik Lake - small lake on the height of land between Morrison Arm and Natowite – MOF recreation inventory suggests likely good fishing opportunity. Big Loon Lake – small lake SE of Wilkinson Bay on Babine Lake, accessible by ATV from nearby forest roads – MOF recreation inventory documents good fishing **Outstanding Features**: Good fishing opportunities and some camping potential, several cabins on the Tochcha Lake **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, camping **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** The Takla Lake caribou herd extends to the mountain surrounding Tochcha Lake.
A 6	**A6a FORT BABINE / TAKLA LAKE GREASE TRAIL** **A6b FT BABINE TO SMITHERS LANDING SNOWMOBILE LOOP** **General Description:** A6A The snowmobile loop would follow the Grease Trail east to Haul Lake then south along Morrison Lake, over land to Babine Lake and Smithers Landing and then back up Babine Lake to Ft Babine. **Outstanding Features**: **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, horseback, ATV and snowmobile **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** A power line which parallels the trail for much of the route decreases the wilderness aspect. Any snowmobile tourism operator proposing to utilize routes along frozen lakes would have to seriously consider the liability associated with changing ice conditions.

Unit B – Babine Lake

A Very large lake (The largest natural lake in BC - 177 km long) with island groupings along the east shoreline from the southern district boundary to the entrance of Morrison Arm. Protected bays with good anchorages in these areas. Many beaches including pebble, cobble, sand and red sand. Water in shallower bays and protected areas can become quite warm in the late summer. Narrow arms to the northwest and northeast. Lake contains large Rainbows to 12+ lbs, Cutthroat to 2-1/2 lbs and Lake Char that are capable of reaching 35 lbs. Many of the creeks running into this lake host large sockeye runs. Forested shoreline varies from dense wet interior spruce forest on northerly facing slopes to open mixed wood forests on southerly facing slopes

B 1	**BABINE LAKE – NORTHWEST ARM** **General Description:** Narrow northwest arm that runs from Old Fort to Fort Babine with resorts at Smithers Landing, Ft Babine and other locations along the shoreline. Shoreline has relatively few features, timber harvesting is visible in a number of areas on both sides of the lake. Fine views of the Babine Ranges from some locations. **Outstanding features:** Good fishing, particularly in Rainbow alley immediately downstream of Ft Babine. **Associated products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, Snowmobiling, wilderness lodges, Services at Smithers Landing, cultural activities **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Minimizing the visual impact of timber harvesting will maintain tourism values. Road access requires more than one hours travel on gravel forest roads.
B 2	**BABINE LAKE – MORRISON ARM** **General Description:** A more remote arm of Babine Lake. Timber harvesting is occurring on both sides of the lake, some is visible from the water. Islands, Bays and peaks of the Babine Ranges make fine viewing in many locations **Outstanding features:** Good fishing, the Morrison River at the head of the arm is known to have 10 species of fish. **Associated products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, lake touring, Snowmobiling, wilderness lodge, cultural activities **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Minimizing the visual impact of timber harvesting will maintain tourism values.
B 3	**BABINE LAKE – WESTERN SIDE** **General Description:** The most accessible part of the lake with a paved road from Highway 16 to Topley Landing and Granisle. Beach at Topley, Beaches and campsites at Red Bluff Provincial Park, Lions Beach, and Bear Island. Shoreline has relatively few bays, few islands. Water can get rough due to large open areas where wind can build up big waves. **Outstanding features:** Access points, campsites, service communities, Wet'suwet'en community at Tatchek, Fulton River spawning channels near Topley. A seasonally inhabited Wet'suwet'en village at Old Fort has potential for cultural interpretation. **Associated products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, camping, Snowmobiling, lake touring, Mid country/front country lodges, cultural activities **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Considerable timber harvesting is visible from the Granisle and Topley areas. Minimizing the visual impact of timber harvesting will maintain tourism values.

B 4	**BABINE LAKE – EASTERN BAYS AND ISLANDS** **General Description:** The most attractive part of the lake, many bays, beaches, islands, inlet creeks, visually very scenic, protected waters with numerous good anchorages. Relatively remote, most access is by water, but popular with regional boaters. Suitable locations for camping. An abandoned copper mine on Newman Peninsula would be of interest to some. Numerous archaeological sites are reported. **Outstanding features:** Good fishing, sand beaches, protected water, archaeological sites **Associated products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, boating, lake touring, camping, cultural activities, beach activities, wilderness lodges, snowmobiling **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** The mine and timber harvesting both have some visual impact on the landscape. Minimizing the visual impact of timber harvesting will maintain tourism values.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Unit C – Mid-country forested hills and Lakes
Rounded forested hills with a few isolated mountain peaks, many small to large lakes – part of the much larger Nechako Plateau. Extensive timber harvesting, good access throughout the area via forest roads. Many good fishing and camping opportunities. A few hiking trails, numerous snowmobile routes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>C 1</td><td>DOME MOUNTAIN (Haat'eleegh)
General Description: Sub-alpine mountain accessible from several directions – via the Dome Mtn road from McKendrick Pass, via the Deception Lake FSR via Woodmere Road and off the Chapman FSR from either Houston or Granisle.
Outstanding Features: Dome mountain An all season snowmobile club cabin. Suitable for beginner to intermediate.
Associated Products and activities: Snowmobiling, ATV and ORV
Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints: Potential for conflicts between motorized and non-motorized although presence of snowmobile cabin and long term motorized use means very little non-motorized use occurs. Mainly used by snowmobilers from the Smithers area.</td></tr>
<tr><td>C 2</td><td>MATZEHTZEL MOUNTAIN (Tachek, McCrae Peaks and Nez Lake) ('ilh k'il bin)
General Description: Three ridges with Matzehtzel Mt containing alpine Tundra. The presence of small lakes in the alpine and in the valleys further enhance the opportunities. Nez Lake is located in a valley surrounded by the 3 primary ridges. Access to the area is via an old mining road near Topley. A fire lookout road leads to the height of a forested ridge to the north of Matzehetzel Mountain. This area receives high use by Topley area residents
Outstanding Features: Matzehetzel Mountain, Nez Lake. Trails and routes. Views of the Bulkley Valley to the southwest and Babine Lake to the east.
Associated Products and activities: Hiking, horse packing, snowmobiling, hunting.
Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints: This area is used quite extensively by the local Guide outfitter in the fall.</td></tr>
</table>

C 3	**FULTON RIVER AND LAKE** **C3a UPPER FULTON RIVER, C3b FULTON LAKE, C3c LOWER FULTON RIVER** **General Description:** Large lake to the west of Babine lake with good fishing for rainbow, lake char, cutthroat, Burbot and whitefish. The lake is difficult to access for those motor boating and offers few protected anchorages. One of the largest salmon runs in the world is at Fulton River Spawning Channel on the lower river. The Fulton River Hatcheries, holds up to 180,000 adult sockeye salmon. The best viewing is in late August and early September. The shallow river between Chapman Lake in the Bulkley District and the upper end of Fulton Lake offers canoeing opportunities during the early summer with potential to see wildlife along the shoreline. **Outstanding Features**: Fulton River spawning channel, counting fence and interpretive signs, rapids and chutes and canoeing opportunities on the upper river. **Associated Products and activities:** kayaking, canoeing, fishing, wildlife viewing, boating. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Water levels below the dam at the outlet of Fulton Lake can change suddenly with water release at the dam.
C 4	**PAUL LAKE** **General Description:** A small lake with a forest recreation site west of the Granisle Highway **Outstanding Features:** Good fishing and camping opportunities in an undisturbed environment **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, camping **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Managing timber harvesting so that it is not visible from the lake would be beneficial to recreation values. The access road is quite rough, if the MOF does not provide maintenance both the road and the rec site will deteriorate.
C 5	**C5a PINE TREE, C5b DORIS AND C5c TANGLECHAIN LAKES** **General Description:** Three small lakes with MOF recreation sites accessible from the Babine Lake road. They lie on the Babine Lake Forest road near the west end of the Granisle connector . **Outstanding features:** Good fishing,, campground **Associated products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, boating, camping **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** The camp sites experience high use by locals and other users of forest recreation campsites, particularly during the summer months and during the fall hunting season. Unknown what will happen to the forest recreation sites
C 6	**MORICE MOUNTAIN (Dzel Teel)** **General Description:** Rounded alpine peak, southern and western faces burnt by the Swiss Fire in the 1970's. Snowmobilers access the mountain from the Carrier road in the Swiss burn south of the mountain and from the Morice River FSR via private land to the west of the peak. **Outstanding Features**: Trail to alpine from the community forest used by skiers to access backcountry alpine cabin. Regionally significant mountain goat population. Significant local Snowmobiling opportunities close to town. **Associated Products and activities:** Nordic skiing, hiking, snowmobiling. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Morice Mountain Ski Club area of interest with groomed trails, lodge and un-groomed trail to subalpine cabin. Current agreement by snowmobilers to stay away from areas used by cross-country skiers should be continued.
C 7	**CHINA NOSE (Tze Zuul)** **General Description:** China Nose is a unique rock promontory and landmark. A primitive trail provides access from the Heading Creek FSR which leaves Highway 16 at Knockholt east of Houston **Outstanding Features**: China Nose is an accessible rock feature with dramatic views. Opportunities for "crevice crawling" through narrow rock passages. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Some hazards associated with exposed heights exist

C 8	**DUNGATE MEADOWS** **General Description:** A series of open meadows and wetlands accessible from the Equity Mines road east of Houston. A very popular snowmobile area with a snowmobile cabin built by the Houston Club. Highly valued for family riding. A larger area of forested hills and old logging roads surrounds the meadows and runs through the high country between China Nose and Goosly Lake. This whole area is popular for local snowmobilers. This area is also on the most likely snowmobile travel route between Houston and Burns Lake. **Outstanding Features:** Rolling open parkland environment, easily accessible from the community of Houston **Associated Products and activities:** Snowmobiling, dog sledding **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:**
C 9	**NADINA MOUNTAIN** **General Description:** This mountain was formed by an isolated granitic intrusion that has been rounded by glaciation. The mountain is a prominent landmark which is visible from a large surrounding area. The broad, windswept, alpine summit of 2,300 metres elevation is representative alpland. Due to nutritionally poor soil and thin snow pack, there is a great variety of lichen species. The surface includes rock, mossy marsh, and loose shale. There is also a popular hiking trail from Owen Lake to alpine with views of the surrounding landscapes. A camping area is found at one of the two lakes found part way up the access trail. A regionally significant population of mountain goats is found on the mountain. Nadina Wilderness Lodge lies at the base of the mountain. **Outstanding Features**: Nadina Summit. Trails to summit. Mountain goats. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, camping, wildlife viewing, viewing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints: Mountain goats.** Concerns over the spread of mountain pine beetles.
C 10	**SHELFORD HILLS** **General Description:** Rounded hills, mixed forest and subalpine parkland with numerous small ponds and wetlands, high wildlife values, a fossil outcrop is found in the area. Moose, bear and mountain goats found in the area. **Outstanding Features**: Scenic open parkland, wildlife **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, camping, fishing, wildlife viewing, fossil viewing **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Forest Planning & development should consider whether motorized access is desirable – it is likely to develop from surrounding harvesting activities
C 11	**SMOKE MOUNTAIN** **General Description:** A relatively small, isolated peak with rocky outcrops between Newcombe and Kidprice Lakes, known goat population **Outstanding Features:** Good views of Nanika-Kidprice Lake Chain, Newcombe Lake and Nadina Mountain, wildlife viewing opportunities **Associated Products and activities**: Hiking and wildlife viewing **Planning considerations and recommended Constraints:** Much of the surrounding area has timber harvesting, nearby roads may provide easier access to alpine areas

C 12	**MORICE RIVER(Lhudis bin, biwanii, tsin-gozii)** **C12a UPPER MORICE RIVER (TO LAMPREY CREEK), C12b LOWER MORICE RIVER (LAMPREY TO BULKLEY)** **General Description:** A clear river that emerges from Morice Lake (which acts as a "silt catcher") and the Telkwa Range, that is renowned for fishing. The river is fishable for its entire length although fishing regulations list a number of seasonal closures between Morice Lake and Lamprey Creek. The river is a class II fishing water in September and October and a mandatory steelhead stamp is required. The Morice River and Morice West FSR provide access at many points along the river which is well known for Dolley Varden, Rainbow, Cutthroat, Steelhead, Pink, Coho and Chinook salmon. The upper Morice can be a tricky piece of water to navigate with some class 2-3 water - sweepers, log jambs, are also hazards on this section. The lower river is more constant and manageable. Numerous sand and gravel bars provide excellent camping opportunities. The river is popular locally but the level of use is low. There are opportunities for camping and beaches for picnics. There is potential to make a multi-day trip with one or two cabins between Morice Lake and a take out in either Telkwa or Smithers. Archaeological sites occur on the river but locations are not public information. The River is mostly within the Sub-boreal Spruce (SBS) Biogeoclimatic Zone – from Lamprey Creek downstream the river is in the SBSdk subzone - the driest and sunniest zone in the Morice District. Much of the forest harvesting in the surrounding forest lands is not visible and travel on the river is very scenic. The mouths of the Thautil and Gosnell Rivers are known for some of the best grizzly bear viewing opportunities in the region during the summer and fall salmon runs. MOF Forest Recreation Sites occur near the river's outflow at Morice Lake and at Lamprey Creek, Owen Flats (2 sites) and Aspen. The Aspen rec site provides access to the I.D. Byman Trail which provides wheelchair accessible (500 meters) fishing opportunities. The Morice River received the highest possible significance and sensitivity in the 1998 MOF recreation inventory. **Outstanding Features**: Sports fish, scenery. **Associated Products and activities:** Sport fishing, rafting, camping, boating (jet boats). **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** 3 fish guides are licensed for the river. As a wilderness corridor no structures can be built within 400 meters of the river. Hazardous in sections for canoes. Maintenance of MOF recreation sites will be an issue when MOF divests itself of responsibility for the sites. .
C 13	**NADINA RIVER (Tagechtolain)** **General Description:** The Nadina River meanders from Nadina Lake into Francois Lake. Campground include the Nadina Pool and Nadina River forest recreation sites. Heavy summer runs of sockeye make their way up the river. Wetlands on the lower river are important winter moose range. Rainbow are found in the river. Canoeists who appreciate leisurely travel in relatively shallow waters will enjoy this river. **Outstanding Features**:. Nadina River Salmon enhancement Project is an attraction. Scenic, narrow, winding waterway **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, camping, canoeing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** The PAS analysis for conservation and recreation identified the Nadina River as low for recreation. Uncertainty of continued presence of BCFS campsites.
C 14	**C14a MCBRIDE LAKE C14b COLLINS LAKE (Lhudis Bin)** **General Description:** Collins and McBride Lake are noted for cutthroat trout (to 2 lbs), Lake char (to 12 lbs), Burbot, Coho and rainbow. Campsites at both lakes, MOF cabin open to the public at McBride Lake. Numerous archaeological sites around McBride Lake. Strong winds, particularly in the afternoon. **Outstanding Features**: Fish. **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, camping, canoeing, boating, snowmobiling **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:**

C 15	**C15a TAGETOCHLAIN LAKE (POPLAR LAKE)** **C15b BITTERN/BILL NYE LAKES** **General Description:** Poplar Lake is a medium sized marsh and forest fringed lake at an elevation of 838 meters with a small BCFS site at the east end. The lake supports populations of Rainbow trout (3.5 lbs) and lake char (up to 25 lbs.) Complex shoreline, several islands, camping potential. Scenic views of Nadina Mtn to NE and Coast Ranges to the SW. Extensive forest harvesting around the lake. Bill Nye and Bittern Lakes directly northwest have nearby forestry roads. They are reported to have large rainbow and low fishing use. **Outstanding Features**: Fish, scenic views **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, ice fishing, boating, canoeing, camping, viewing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Minimizing the visual impacts of forest harvesting for recreationists on the lake will help maintain recreation values. Uncertainty of continued presence of BCFS campground.
C 16	**C16a NADINA / C16b NEWCOMBE LAKES (tagechtolain)** **General Description:** Nadina and Newcombe Lakes are noted for their wild rainbow trout. Nadina Lake: elevation is 762 m. with an ice over period from November to Mid-April. There is a presence of wilderness lodge and BCFS campsite on Nadina Lake. Also noted for good populations of Kokanee. The Nadina River spawning channels host large numbers of spawning Fraser River sockeye during the late summer months. Although Newcombe Lake is close to forest roads no road access to the shoreline occurs at present. **Outstanding Features**: Fish (rainbow trout, lake char, sockeye salmon). **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, fishing, ice fishing, canoeing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Uncertainty of continued presence of BCFS campground.
C 17	**OWEN LAKE (Biwanii)** **General Description:** Popular lake adjacent to the Houston / Francois road. There is forestry recreation campsite and two lodges on the lake. Excellent fishing. **Outstanding Features**: Lakes, fish, campsite. **Associated Products and activities:** Canoeing, camping, fishing, ice fishing, snowmobiling. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Uncertainty of continued presence of BCFS campground
C 18	**C18a PARROTT LAKES, C18b GOOSLY, C18c TSICHGASS LAKES (Neldzi tezdli bin, t'zin'g'ozay)** **General Description:** Parrott lakes is a scenic chain of 4 small lakes bordered by forest and open meadows. Forest Service campsite at the outflow of the lower lake. Considered excellent family lakes. Fishing provides lots of small rainbow. Goosly Lake lies at an elevation of 900 meters, is noted as an excellent fly fishing lake and is accessed from the Buck Flats road. Tsichgass Lake is accessible via the Morice/Tsichgass FSR and is known for fishing. **Outstanding Features**: Lakes, fish **Associated Products and activities:** Canoeing, camping, fishing, ice fishing, snowmobiling. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Uncertainty of continued presence of BCFS campground on Parrott Lakes

C 19	**FRANCOIS LAKE (Neetaibuhn)** **General Description:** A large lake (25,779.4 ha at an elevation of 715 meters) surrounded by rolling scenery and with many resorts and campsites along the north shore. Numerous fish species including Rainbow, Lake trout, sockeye, kokanee, mountain whitefish and burbot. MOF has two lakeshore campgrounds with boat launching sites near Nora-Lee. Southerly facing shorelines have aspen parkland with many natural openings, near northernmost range of Douglas Fir. Northerly facing shoreline also mixed forest but denser and more coniferous in nature. Many archaeological sites left by 1st nations peoples. Extensive history of ranching beginning in the early 1900's. Ice over time is from November to March. The water is noted for being cold. **Outstanding Features**: Lake, fish, scenery. **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, fishing, camping, swimming, snowmobiling. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Uncertainty of continued presence of BCFS campgrounds at Nora-Lee east and Nora-Lee west
C 20	**C 20a OOTSA LAKE (Wut seexwt'laat) & C20b WHITESAIL LAKE (Put kyo)** **General Description:** Ootsa Lake is a very large dammed lake that is linked to Whitesail Lake, Tahtsa Reach and Tahtsa Lake. Changing water levels caused by lake draw-down for electrical generation at Kemano can leave extensive areas of sand and mud flats as well as drowned forests. Excellent fishing for trout and lake char. A provincial park at Andrews Bay provides the most commonly used access point to this lake in the Morice District. Whitesail Lake provides the northernmost access point to Tweedsmuir Provincial Park. Historical caribou migration corridors cross both Whitesail Reach and Tahtsa Reach connecting Tweedsmuir to more northern portions of the caribou range. **Outstanding Features**: Ootsa Lake. Sportsfish. **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, fishing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Uncertainties of water levels (as per need of the Kemano Power project and a proposal to dredge Tahtsa Narrows to allow Alcan to draw down the reservoir further). Pine beetle kill of the surrounding forests has dramatically increased the amount of harvesting into the area and will continue to provide new access points. Drowned forests create boating hazards and make access to the lake difficult except where dead trees have been removed.
C 21	**C21a HOUSTON TO TOPLEY SNOWMOBILE ROUTE (Neeldziikwe) & C21b HOUSTON TO COLLEYMOUNT SNOWMOBILE ROUTE** **General Description:** This route follows forestry roads and the Equity Mine road, crosses the height of land south of China Nose and goes downhill to near Day Lake where one branch runs north to Topley and the other turns south to Maxan Lake and thence eastwards to Decker Lake. The trail branches south near Goosly Lake and follows old forest roads to Colleymount **Outstanding Features:** a fairly direct travel route between communities which avoids Highway 16 **Associated products and activities:** snowmobile touring and play areas **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Parts of this route cross private land, alternate locations might need to be found if this was developed as a formal snowmobile touring route. Any development of a formal community to community trail network would have to address issues regarding summer motorized use of the trails. There is potential for rutting in wet areas which causes problems for grooming and also potential for siltation of fish bearing streams at any creek crossings.

C 22	**TOPLEY TO GRANISLE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE** **General Description:** This route generally follows the highway between Topley and Topley landing on Babine Lake. In some places it is possible to follow the old highway and get away from road traffic. From Topley Landing the most direct route to Granisle would be along Babine Lake – when the lake is frozen. **Outstanding Features:** A direct route between communities **Associated products and activities:** Snowmobile touring **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Formal designation as a travel route will require permission from the Department of Highways. Travel alongside a highway is less desirable than routes which can avoid encounters with motor vehicles. Any snowmobile tourism operator proposing to utilize routes along frozen lakes would have to seriously consider the liability associated with changing ice conditions. Any development of a formal community to community trail network would have to address issues regarding summer motorized use of the trails. There is potential for rutting in wet areas which causes problems for grooming and also potential for siltation of fish bearing streams at any creek crossings.
C 23	**GRANISLE TO MCKENRICK PASS SNOWMOBILE ROUTE** **General Description:** There is little possibility of developing a direct snowmobile route between Houston and Smithers because of the extensive private property holdings in the Bulkley Valley. An alternative for distance touring would be to travel to Granisle and then overland via Dome Mountain or the Deception Lake forest road to either McKendrick Pass or (in the case of the Deception Lake road – the end of Woodmere Road). From Granisle the route would follow forestry roads in the community forest and then along the north shore of Fulton Lake to the west end of the lake and thence across the Chapman road to either Dome Mtn or Deception Lake. **Outstanding Features:** views along Fulton Lake, Dome Mountain and Deception/Guess Lakes **Associated products and activities:** Snowmobile touring, play areas on Dome Mountain **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Distance tourers would require transportation from the end of the snowmobile trail to the community of Smithers. Any development of a formal community to community trail network would have to address issues regarding summer motorized use of the trails. There is potential for rutting in wet areas which causes problems for grooming and also potential for siltation of fish bearing streams at any creek crossings.
C 24	**GRANISLE TO BURNS LAKE SNOWMOBILE ROUTE (tseel k'ez bin)** **General Description:** This route would travel down Babine Lake to Pendleton Bay and thence over snowmobile trails used by the Burns Lake Snowmobile Club to Burns Lake **Outstanding Features:** Fine viewing along the lake, opportunity for quick travel in the right conditions **Associated products and activities:** Snowmobile touring, playing on the lake in the right conditions, ice fishing **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Only useable during the times of the year when the lake is frozen – usually sometime in January to sometime in April. Any snowmobile tourism operator proposing to utilize routes along frozen lakes would have to seriously consider the liability associated with changing ice conditions. Any development of a formal community to community trail network would have to address issues regarding summer motorized use of the trails. There is potential for rutting in wet areas which causes problems for grooming and also potential for siltation of fish bearing streams at any creek crossings.
C 25	**GRANISLE TO FT ST JAMES SNOWMOBILE ROUTES** **General Description:** This route would travel across the lake south of the Newman Peninsula, north up the east side of the peninsula to Morrison Arm, up Morrison Arm and then by forest roads to Natowite Lake, from there to Talkla Lake and then down Takla and Stuart Lakes to Ft St James. **Outstanding Features:** Fine views of the open lakes, much of the trip in undisturbed environment **Associated products and activities:** Snowmobile touring, ice fishing, winter camping **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Travel on this route may depend on which forest roads are being used for winter harvesting. The distance may be too long to complete in one day under adverse conditions. One or more cabins might be required to make this route feasible. Travel would only be possible during times when the lakes are securely frozen. Any snowmobile tourism operator proposing to utilize routes along frozen lakes would have to seriously consider the liability associated with changing ice conditions.

C 26	**DUNGATE CREEK TO BUCK FALLS ROAD TOUR CIRCUIT (tsin'k'ozay)** **General Description:** Tour begins at Houston, heading south along Dungate Creek to Goosly Lake, heading west to Buck Falls and returning north up the Buck Flats road . **Outstanding Features**: Dungate Meadows is a popular snowmobile area with the presence of a warming hut (Houston to Equity Mine Site). Goosly Lake (fishing), Buck Falls contains waterfalls and trails. **Associated Products and activities:** Walks, interpretation. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Gravel roads with the potential for reduced maintenance under the new MOF mandate could provide challenges to tour operators. Hazards associated with public travel on industrial forest roads.
C 27	**MORICE RIVER – FORESTRY TOUR** **General Description:** This 1/2 day sightseeing van tour leaves Houston and proceeds up the Morice River valley to Owen lake. It then back tracks and crosses through the Swiss Burn via the Carrier Road and on to Buck Creek Falls, a series of 3 falls as well as deep potholes worn in the rock. The tour returns to Houston via the Buck Flats road. **Outstanding Features**: Owen Lake, Buck Creek Falls **Associated Products and activities:** Walks, interpretation. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** 1/2 day. Gravel roads with the potential for reduced maintenance under the new MOF mandate could provide challenges to tour operators. Potential for increased logging traffic due to beetle salvage operations. Opportunities to use MOF campsites may change with decision by MOF to discontinue responsibility.
C 28	**BABINE LAKE CIRCLE TOUR** **General Description:** This full day tour leaves Houston and heads east on Highway 16 to Topley and onto the Granisle road. Stops of interest along the way are at Findlay Falls, and the Fulton River Salmon Spawning channels and Red Bluff Provincial Park on Babine Lake. Continue to Granisle and Bear Island MOF Recreation site, and onward to the Granisle / Smithers road through McKendrick Pass and the Telkwa Hi road to Telkwa. The tour proceeds east on Highway 16 towards Houston, with side trips on the Round Lake road and to Quick Station. **Outstanding Features**:. Findlay Falls, Fulton River Salmon Spawning channels (sockeye salmon present from mid August to late Sept.), Red Bluff Provincial Park and Bear Island on Babine Lake. Round lake, Indian Lovestone telegraph cabin at Quick and the Walcott suspension bridge. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, interpretation **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** 1 day. Gravel roads with the potential for reduced maintenance under the new MOF mandate could provide challenges to tour operators. Opportunities to use MOF campsites may change with decision by MOF to discontinue responsibility.
C 29	**FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR (Houston-Burns -Houston) Option 1 (Biwanii-tagechtolain-mesdzi kwe-honeagh bin)** **General Description:** Full day tour leaves Houston follows the Morice River valley. The first stop is Aspen campsite on the Morice River, in the shadow of Morice Mtn. Then the Swiss Burn (1983) with a brief discussion, and a look for mountain goats on the upper ridges of Morice Mtn. From there it is on to the Owen East road to Francois Lake, stopping at Noralee, then along the north shore of Francois Lake to Nourse Creek falls. Continue to Tcshesinkut Lake and Burns Lake. Return is along Highway 16 west to Houston, with brief stops are points of interest along the way **Outstanding Features**: Morice Mt., Swiss Burn, Francois Lake, Early ranching history along Francois Lake, Norse Creek Falls, Tcshesinkut Lake. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, interpretation **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** 1 day. Gravel roads with the potential for reduced maintenance under the new MOF mandate could provide challenges to tour operators. Potential for increased logging traffic due to beetle salvage operations. Opportunities to use MOF campsites may change with decision by MOF to discontinue responsibility.

C 30	**FRANCOIS LAKE CIRCLE TOUR (Houston-Burns -Houston) Option 2 (Tselh tse k'iz-Netanli)** **General Description:** This tour follows the same route as Option 1 to Francois Lake then heads south to Wisteria and on to Ootsa Lake.. From there to Takysie Lake where we take a break. Then it is on to Southbank and a short ferry ride across Francois Lake, where it resumes the Option 1 route. **Outstanding Features**: Morice Mt., Swiss Burn, Francois Lake,, Ootsa Lake, Wisteria, Takysie Lake, ferry ride across Francois lake, Tchesinkut Lake **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, interpretation **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** 1 day. Potential for increased logging traffic due to beetle salvage operations. Gravel roads with the potential for reduced maintenance under the new MOF mandate could provide challenges to tour operators. Opportunities to use MOF campsites may change with decision by MOF to discontinue responsibility.
C31	**Sweeney Lake** **General Description:** Small lake with two MOF recreation sites, popular for camping and fishing **Outstanding features**: fish **Associated products and activities:** fishing, ice fishing, camping, canoeing **Planning Considerations and recommended Constraints**: Opportunities to use MOF campsites may change with decision by MOF to discontinue responsibility.

Unit D Front country & rural landscapes

Landscapes that lie closest to Houston and Highway 16.

D 1	**FRONT COUNTRY LAKES** **General Description:** Near urban forest. **Outstanding Features**: Morice and Bulkley Rivers. Lakes including: Klinger, Irrigation, Barrett, Vallee, Helen, Hidden, Summit and Sunset Lakes. Near urban trails including Barretts Hat, the Houston Walking trails. . **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, fishing, ice fishing, Snowmobiling, mountain biking. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Private lands. Small lakes in this area could be susceptible to a deterioration in fishing quality if used for a commercial recreation business.
D 2	**HOUSTON COMMUNITY FOREST** **General Description:** Community Forest with an extensive network of cross-country ski trails developed and maintained by the Morice Mountain Ski Club. Generally rolling forested terrain with two small lakes. Also Old Pines Interpretive trail through pine forest and along the shoreline of a small lake. **Outstanding Features**: Ski cabin off the Buck Flats road, extensive network of ski trails, trail to ski cabin on Morice Mountain and Nature trail. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, cross-country skiing, mountain biking **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Community Forest. Presence of cabin and Nordic ski trails. Concern by ski club that ATV and ORV use in the summer has caused damage to the trails. Ruts are hard on grooming equipment, delay date of early season grooming and can cause erosion of the trails. Trails in the community forest will no longer be maintained by the Ministry of Forests. Any developments within the community forest would have to be considered within the management framework for the community forest
D3	**BULKLEY RIVER** **General Description:** Clear water, a few small riffles, meanders through rural farming landscape between Houston and the district boundary near Quick. Public access points at Highway 16 west of Houston, at the Walcott suspension bridge and at the Quick bridge. High fisheries values for salmon and steelhead, popular for canoeing. **Outstanding Features:** Fish, canoeing water, rural scenery **Associated products and activities:** Canoeing, tubing, raft floats, fishing **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Limited number of access points, close to railway tracks in a number of places (sound considerations), mostly surrounded by private land

D4	**GRANISLE COMMUNITY FOREST** **General Description:** A fringe of un-harvested forest near the Granisle town site and along the highway, otherwise mostly young forest plantations with many old forest roads. The Devil's Club nature trail starts at the west edge of Granisle and a Lakeshore walking trail follows the shoreline from Granisle south to the edge of Red Bluff Provincial Park. **Outstanding Features:** Old roads and trails **Associated products and activities:** Walking, mountain biking, Snowmobiling, forest interpretation **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Any developments outside of the Granisle town site would have to be considered within the management framework for the community forest

	Unit E - Southwest Ranges & Lakes The Kitimat Range is characterized by round-topped, dome-like mountains with peaks from 2200 to 2500 metres and northerly facing cirques. These ranges have been over-ridden by the ice sheet, which left behind deep U-shaped river valleys with numerous hanging valleys in the steep walls and glaciers in the cirques. South of Morice Lake, the drainage is eastward across the Nechako Plateau to the Fraser River system through the valleys of Tahtsa, Troitsa, Whitesail and Eutsuk lakes, all at about 900 metres elevation. The serrate ridges and peaks are between 2100 and 2500 metres high, with glaciers in most northeast-facing cirques. The lakes occupy ice-modified valleys extending eastwards from within the granitic Coast Range Mountains onto the Nechako Plateau.
E 1	**EAST TELKWA RANGES** **E1a EAST TELKWA RANGES, E1b MOOSESKIN JOHNNY LAKE & VALLEY (Nelgi'l'at)** **General Description:** Rolling range of open alpine, plateaus, ridge systems and peaks – some permanent snow on the peaks at the east end of the range. Many old mining exploration trails cross the range. Several areas with ponds and tarns, wildflowers. The Houston Snowmobile Club has a cabin at the east end of the range and use a large area there which is designated motorized under the caribou management plan. Mooseskin Johnny Lake lies just inside the Bulkley Forest District in a valley which separates the east and west Telkwa Ranges **Outstanding Features**: Extensive open terrain. Wildlife. Scenic views of the Bulkley Valley to the north and east, the Howson Ranges to the west and many peaks in the coastal ranges to the south west. Existing lodge on Mooseskin Johnny Lake. **Associated Products and activities:** Snowmobiling. Hiking. ATV (limited). Skiing. Wildlife watching, mountain biking. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** The Telkwa Caribou Management Plan has suggested that much of this area be designated non-motorized. It is uncertain that any motorized tourism products would be approved for this area.
E 2	**BURNIE RIVER (Taldzee Wecoo tsanli)** **General Description:** Braided river with many gravel and sandbars, river terraces, canyons, very scenic amongst the Coast Ranges, wildlife **Outstanding Features:** scenic wild river with wildlife viewing **Associated products and activities:** Canoeing, Kayaking, camping, viewing, wildlife viewing. **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Forest road development will provide access to this river in the future

E 3	**WEST TELKWA RANGES** **E3a WEST TELKWA RANGES, E3b BURNIE LAKES, E3c HOWSON RANGE (Talzi wiyez bin)** **General Description:** The rolling ridges of the south Telkwa become increasingly steep and jagged towards the coastal mountains. Burnie Lakes are high mountain lakes that are adjacent to the rugged glacial covered Howson Range. Backcountry skiers have built a cabin in the headwaters of Starr Creek near the west end of the range and typically fly-in for spring skiing. The Tom George Lakes area, a pond filled plateau overlooking the eastern rim of the Burnie Lakes valley is extremely scenic. The Burnie Lakes are glacially fed and therefore very silty. Fishing is not good. The Howson Range directly to the west provides excellent climbing and mountaineering opportunities. These are utilized by Bear Enterprises who have recently built a mountaineering cabin above the upper Burnie Lake. The majority of this area is non-motorized under the Telkwa Caribou Recovery Program. (Voluntary). During the last few years (2001, 2002) snowmobilers from the Houston and Smithers area have made increasing use of this area accessing it from the east via the Thautil Forest Road/ Shea and Burnie Lakes route or the Starr Creek route. Access from the north has been via the Telkwa River Forest road and the Howson Creek route near Mooseskin Johnny. Snowmobile clubs in Houston and Smithers do not feel non-motorized designation for the area is valid but they have agreed with Government wildlife representatives that they will leave the area if they encounter caribou. The Burnie Lakes area is a PAS goal 1 area and will be considered for park status during the current Morice LRMP process. This area received the highest potential significance and sensitivity during the 1998 MOF recreation inventory. **Outstanding Features**: Rolling ridges. Jagged, glaciated Howson Range. Excellent snow conditions. Burnie Hut - a lodge that sleeps 10 + 2 staff and caters to backcountry skiing. **Associated Products and activities:** Backcountry skiing, hiking, (Snowmobiling – see below). **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Preferably non-motorized (closed unless open to motorized). Some conflicts have occurred between snowmobilers and back country skiers. It is uncertain that any motorized tourism products would be approved for this area.
E 4	**HERD DOME (Wo'betl'eet)** **General Description:** Mostly rolling alpine, some talus slopes on the eastern and western flanks, central location provides views in all directions: Burnie River to the West, Gosnell Creek to the south, Morice River Valley to the east and Howson Ranges to the north. Easy access from nearby forest roads. Mountain goats. **Outstanding features:** Scenic views, wildlife viewing **Associated products and activities**: Hiking, Camping, Snowmobiling, wildlife viewing, horseback riding **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Timber harvesting could potentially provide access to ATVs to the alpine. Access management planning should consider whether or not this is desirable.
E 5	**MORICE RANGES (Lho kwah)** **E5a NORTH MORICE RANGE, E5b SOUTH MORICE RANGE** **General Description:** E5A North of Atna Bay - Rolling alpine ridges, glacial features, views of Morice Lake to the south and Gosnell Creek to the north. Mountain Goat and Grizzly Bear populations. It is accessible by trail from logging roads along the Morice River. E5B South of Atna Bay – Rounded ridges, glaciated peaks, cirque basins, several large glaciers, very scenic with Morice Lake to the east and spectacular Atna River floodplain and coastal peaks to the west. Wildlife **Outstanding Features**: Spectacular views, wildlife. **Associated Products and activities:** North Range -Hiking, camping ski touring, Snowmobiling, wildlife viewing, horseback riding. South Range – Potential for summer trail use, Snowmobiling, ski mountaineering, viewing **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Beetle salvage operations and other harvesting in both the Morice and Gosnell drainage may make access to the alpine easier in the future. Timber harvesting could potentially provide access to ATVs to the alpine. Access management planning should consider whether or not this is desirable.

E 6	**TABLELAND MOUNTAIN (Dzel Tsedeec)** **General Description:** rounded alpine summit, extensive meadows, wildflowers, mountain goats, wild berries, views SE to Nanika/Kidprice canoe chain, West to Morice Lake and NE to Nadina mountain **Outstanding Features:** Scenery **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, Snowmobiling, berry picking, wildlife viewing **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Beetle salvage operations and other harvesting may make access to the alpine easier in the future. Timber harvesting could potentially provide access to ATVs to the alpine. Access management planning should consider whether or not this is desirable.
E 7	**REDSLIDE MOUNTAIN (**Ranges between Morice & Nanika Lakes) **General Description:** 1) Redslide Mountain and other peaks between the Nanika River and Camp Creek – numerous cirque basins, arêtes, peaks, snowfields, tarns. Views of Morice Lake to the west and the Nanika/Kidprice to the east. Very Scenic, Wildlife. High ratings in the 1998 MOF recreation inventory. **Outstanding Features**: Scenery, terrain variety **Associated Products and activities:** 1) North of Camp Creek – some Snowmobiling on Redslide Mountain ridge, used by local guide outfitter, hiking, viewing, wildlife viewing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** These areas are currently outside of the operable forest in the Morice District which would be an advantage for any commercial recreation enterprise. This area is strongly influenced by coastal weather with higher snowfalls and more rain during the summer months than areas further to the east
E 8	**ATNA BAY TO TAHTSA LAKE ROUTE (C'iniggit Nenikekh)** **E8a ATNA LAKE, E8b ATNA RIVER TO TAHTSA LAKE** **General Description:** A potential hiking route with an amazing variety of spectacular scenery and wildlife viewing potential. 1) Atna Bay to Atna River headwaters – A portage route exists along the Atna River from Atna Bay to Atna Lake. Summer sockeye run, falls on river, many archaeological sites, wilderness canoeing on Atna Lake, guide outfitter cabin on Atna Lake, splendid views throughout. The Atna headwaters have extensive wetlands abundant river braiding, sand and gravel bars, wildlife, very scenic views of glaciated coastal mountains. Hiking opportunities best after spring freshet. Highest significance & sensitivity in 1998 MOF Recreation Inventory. 2) Low pass to Morice Lake & another low pass between Morice & Nanika Lakes– route travels from the Atna headwaters through open meadows and wetlands with lake at the height of land and then down to Morice Lake, scenic, wildlife. Route could potentially cross Morice Lake by boat to mouth of creek on east shore which provides access to another low pass through to Nanika Lake. An old cat track is said to exist between Morice and Nanika Lakes and could provide the basis for a hiking route. Mountains, glaciers, lakes, meadows, wetlands and wildlife provide spectacular viewing opportunities throughout. 3) From the west shore of Nanika Lake the route could either circumnavigate the south end of the lake or travel down the lake by boat to pick up the route on the east side where another low pass provides an opportunity to access Tahtsa Lake. **Outstanding Features:** Spectacular scenery, variety of travel (hiking, boating, potential for air travel for pick up and/or drop off, wildlife **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, heli-hiking, viewing, wildlife viewing, Snowmobiling in winter **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** This route is entirely outside of the operable forest which would be beneficial for commercial recreation businesses. This area is strongly influenced by coastal weather with higher snowfalls and more rain during the summer months than areas further to the east. All the lakes in this area can have strong winds and high waves particularly in the afternoon. Forest development in the Upper Gosnell has the potential to provide land access into this area. It would be advisable to evaluate the potential impact of motorized access to this area – One of the highest present values is the wilderness atmosphere.

E 9	**CLORE RIVER HEADWATERS (Ooyeni)** **General Description:** Very similar to the Atna River headwaters directly to the south. Braided river channels, wetlands, high wildlife values, stupendous views of Coastal Ranges including glaciated Atna Peak. The area would be most accessible in the late summer and fall after spring freshets have subsided. This area has the highest possible feature significance and sensitivity designated in the 1998 MOF Recreation features inventory. Houston contacts report possible use of this area by Kitimat snowmobilers accessing it from the west. **Outstanding Features:** Stupendous views, wildlife **Associated products and activities:** Hiking, viewing, wildlife viewing, hunting, snowmobiling **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** This area is strongly influenced by coastal weather with higher snowfalls and more rain during the summer months than areas further to the east. Forest development in the Upper Clore River in the Kalum Forest District has the potential to provide land access into this area. It would be advisable to evaluate the potential impact of motorized access to this area – One of the highest present values is the wilderness atmosphere
E 10	**COASTAL DIVIDE RANGES** **E10a DOG EAR PEAK TO NANIKA LAKE, E10b NANIKA TO TAHTSA LAKES, E10c PEAKS SOUTH OF COLES LAKES** The name is intended to identify the height of land between the coastal and interior water sheds from the headwaters of the Clore River south to Tahtsa Lake. From north to south it includes Dogs Ear Peak, Atna Peak, Mt. Mortella, Peaks between Nanika and Tahtsa Lakes and Peaks south of Coles Lakes. **General Description:** Generally the peaks are rugged with glaciers and permanent snow fields. The lower slopes often have extensive wet meadows with numerous streams and ponds. **Outstanding Features:** Very scenic **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, camping, Snowmobiling, ski touring, mountaineering, potential for hut system **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Very remote, currently outside of the operable forest, little existing use, suitable for commercial recreation development.
E 11	**SIBOLA RANGE (Nde Deteest'ay)** **General Description:** U-shaped range of peaks and rolling sub-alpine that include Mt Ney, Sibola Peak, Rhine Craig and Mt. Sweeney. Historical mining area – much of the access to these alpine areas is provided by old mineral exploration roads. Interesting remains of mineral exploration activities. A fossil outcrop is found on the south face of the range above Twinkle Lake. The up-graded road to Huckleberry Mine has significantly improved the access to this area. This is one of very few road-accessible alpine areas in the Morice Forest district. A known caribou calving area exists in this range. A goat population is found here as well. **Outstanding Features**: Rolling subalpine. Deactivated roads have had bridges built by local users. These ATV accessible trails are maintained by the Houston/ Burns Lake Snowmobile Club. Both the Houston Snowmobile Club and Top of the Hill Tours have cabins on the old mining roads on the north side of the range. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, snowmobiling, ATV. Summer glacier skiing, mountain biking, horseback riding. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Road access to Huckleberry mine is excellent. Trails developed for motorized use. A review of the impact of ORV use on the alpine is suggested.
E 12	**KASALK RANGE** **General Description:** Snow capped peaks and rugged ridges bisected by river valleys. Presence of small lakes including Sandifer and Spike lakes. The 1998 MOF Recreation Inventory generally views this range as having lower recreation values than the balance of the Coastal Ranges in the Morice District – probably because of more rugged ridges and denser, coastal influenced, forests in the valleys. **Outstanding Features**: Peaks, Spike Lake, Sandifer Lake. Views of surrounding scenery. Presence of Kemano Resort camp on Sandifer Lake. **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, ATV, Snowmobiling. Wildlife viewing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Guide outfitter territory. Remote and difficult to access.

E 13	**WHITESAIL RANGE (C'ele'legheel dzel)** **General Description:** Snow capped peaks. Volcanic range with potential for opal. Permanent snow pack covers much of the terrain. Tenacious alpine plants cover any marginally, habitable ground so outcrops and exposure of bedrock are minimal on the top. The top is relatively flat with the sides very steep. Old mining exploration trails provide access from the north for those who know where to find them. A known caribou calving ground exists in these ranges. Hunters are known to use the area in the fall. Grizzly are common **Outstanding Features**: Scenic views of the Ootsa reservoir system North, South and East, Troitsa Lake to the west along with peaks of the Coastal Ranges, wildlife viewing **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, ATV, Snowmobiling, Wildlife viewing. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** There is on-going active harvesting around the base of Whitesail Range. Harvesting may improve access opportunities. Mountain Pine beetle infestations may accelerate harvesting in this area. Opal mining claims.
E 14	**MORICE LAKE (Wetzen ben)** **General Description:** At 43 km long, 2 km–8 km wide is a large lake that links to the Bulkley River via the Morice River. Spectacular scenery in untouched wilderness. It is noted for large trout and although trolling is the most common fishing method, fly fishing is excellent. Fishing is concentrated near the outflow at the north end and in Atna Bay. The lake is unique in the Morice District because it does not freeze in the winter. Numerous archaeological sites are known to occur in the Atna Bay area. There are many beaches along the lake but few protected anchorages with the exception of Atna Bay. Operable forest is considered to run down both shores of the lake as far as Atna Bay. **Outstanding Features**: Lake, Scenery, Fish. **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, fishing **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Strong winds make this lake unsuitable for canoeing and even boating with larger boats can be problematic at times. Beetle salvage and other timber harvesting at the northeast end of the lake have the potential to reduce the present wilderness atmosphere of the lake.

E 15	**NANIKA / KIDPRICE / STEPP / ANZAC/ LAMPREY LAKES (lhudis bin) E15a LAMPREY, ANZAC & STEPP LAKES, E15b NANIKA & KIDPRICE LAKES, E15c NANIKA RIVER** **General Description:** The key feature of this very scenic area, is the remote, wilderness canoeing opportunities that this lake-chain offers. There are very few large wilderness lakes left in the province, and other protected lake chains such as Bowron and Wells Gray PP are in heavy demand. The lake chain is scenic, becoming more so the further down the chain one travels. Fishing varies, some lakes have mainly small fish, the bigger lakes have bigger fish. Afternoon westerly winds can push up big waves and make travel hazardous. Although this is the most popular local canoe route use is quite low. Camping, hiking and wildlife viewing are common activities. Nanika Lake is noted for spectacular mountains views , sandy beaches and excellent fishing. The jade green Kidprice Lake lies close to Nanika Falls. Most canoe tripping occurs on just Lamprey, Anzac and Stepp Lakes. Although a portage trail does exist from Stepp to Kidprice Lake it is approximately 2 kms in length and most people just hike through to Kidprice rather than pack their canoes.. Canoe travel on the river linking Nanika and Kidprice Lakes is considered difficult with stretches of sweepers and log jams so very few people attempt to travel through to Nanika. The local guide outfitter has cabins on both Kidprice and Nanika Lakes. This lake chain and the surrounding area received the highest possible feature significance and sensitivity in the 1998 MOF Recreation Features inventory. This area is as a PAS study area and will be considered for park status under the current Morice LRMP process. Experienced whitewater canoeists and kayakers can portage the falls where the Nanika River flows out of Kidprice Lake and travel downriver to Morice Lake. Nanika River also supports productive fish populations including chinook, sockeye, Dolly Varden, cut-throat trout, rainbow trout, and mountain whitefish. *There is a population ofblue-listed bull trout in the Upper Nanika River*. (RPAT). Fishing is reported to be very good below the falls. **Outstanding Features**: Each lake is in itself an outstanding feature. Nanika Falls. Sports fish. **Associated Products and activities:** Flatwater and whitewater canoeing, camping, fishing, hiking, wildlife viewing, ice fishing, snowmobiling. **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** The river between Nanika and Kidprice Lakes has many sweepers and logjams and is potentially hazardous. Afternoon winds can make travel in open canoes hazardous on these lakes. Operable forest is considered to extend as far up the chain as Kidprice Lake. New access points would destroy the current wilderness canoeing experience. Any new access points should be seriously considered for the negative affects they could have on recreation opportunities.
E 16	**TAHTSA LAKE & TAHTSA REACH (Tsce'ulh Tesdliz Bin)** **General Description:** A reservoir linked to Ootsa lake. The intake for the Kemano hydro-electric plant is found at the west end of the lake. Spectacular mountain scenery. Tahtsa Lake with its steeper shorelines has more beaches and a more natural appearance then Ootsa Lake. Stretches of shoreline snags caused by the flooding may still be found. Fishing is reported to be good although few people use the lake at this point, likely due to difficulty in accessing the water. Strong winds make this large lake unsuitable for canoeing. Access to Tahtsa Lake is from the end of the Huckleberry Mine road about 110 kms south of Houston. Use of the boat launch may require the use of a chainsaw to clear driftwood. Tahtsa Reach may be accessed from the forest road which leaves the Huckleberry mine road at approximately 89 km south of Houston to connect with the barge carrying industrial traffic to the Whitesail area. **Outstanding Features**: Surrounding scenery, fish. **Associated Products and activities:** Boating, fishing, camping, ice fishing **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Pollution concerns linked to sludge production from mine. Changing water levels related to draw down for electricity generating in Kemano and concerns related to further changes in water levels which would be caused by the proposed dredging at Tahtsa Narrows.

E 17	**TROITSA, BLANKET & SEEL LAKE CHAIN (Tsec'ulh Tesdliz Bin)** **General Description:** A narrow lake surrounded by forested slopes and snow clad peaks, Known for trophy rainbow fishing opportunities. An under-water land slide has caused major suspended siltation in the water over the last few year which has made the water nearly un-fishable until 2001. A fishing lodge is located at the east end of the lake on the north shore. A road provides access to the lodge from Tahtsa Lake. A known caribou calving area exists between Troitsa and Tahtsa Lakes. A portage trail extends from the west end of Troitsa to the Blanket Lakes further west. A cat track provides access from the south shore of Troitsa over the height of land to the Coles Lake chain. Hiking opportunities abound on nearby ridges. The potential for Snowmobiling is high. Caribou and Grizzly are found throughout the area. Elevation and location close to coastal ranges often leaves snow on the ground until late June. **Outstanding Features**: Scenery, fish, wildlife **Associated Products and activities:** Fishing, ice-fishing, wildlife viewing, viewing, Snowmobiling, ski touring, hunting, hiking, camping **Planning Considerations and Recommended Constraints:** Operable forest exists around the east end of the lake – road access would change the nature of the recreation experience available and would seriously affect the business opportunities for the guide outfitter on the lake. Remote access creates both business challenges and opportunities for a tourism operation.
E 18	**COLES LAKE CHAIN (Wesel Bin)** **General Description:** Very scenic lake chain with several cabins/camps operated by a local guide outfitter, portage trails between the lakes allows for canoe travel up and down the chain. Steep forested slopes on either side, snow capped peaks of the Coast Range to the south and west. Creek has falls. A hiking trail exists from the cabin on Coles Lake to a cabin on Whitesail Lake to the south. **Outstanding Features:** Scenery, canoe chain, fish, wildlife **Associated Products and activities:** Canoeing, fishing, wildlife viewing, hiking, camping **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:**
E 19	**KASALK RANGE CIRCUM-NAVIGATION** **E19a UN-NAMED CREEK ROUTE, E19b LAVENTIE CREEK ROUTE** **General Description:** The potential exists to create a hiking circuit from the shores of Tahtsa Lake which circumnavigates portions of the Kasalk Ranges. Potential travel routes exist up Laventie Creek to the headwaters of Seel Lake and up an un-named drainage to the east with leads to a height of land near the west end of Troitsa Lake. The Laventie drainage is mainly in the Coastal Western Hemlock biogeoclimatic zone and the forest is likely very dense. The more eastern creek is within the Engleman Spruce subalpine fire zone with likely more areas of open forest **Outstanding Features:** Wilderness, wildlife, scenery **Associated Products and activities:** Hiking, camping, Hut to Hut travel, boating **Planning considerations and recommended constraints:** Boat or air travel would be required to access both ends of the route. Route finding and trail clearing could be problematic in the more densely forested areas of the route

Annex
B

10 Annex B — Data Collection Results

10.1 Survey Results

A total of 99 operators were identified as having head offices or operations that take place in the Morice Forest District. Of these 33 were considered to be providing a back country tourism product, an additional 22 were fishing guides and the other 44 operators provided mainly front country services including accommodation, shopping, golf, transportation and related services.

Thirty-three of the backcountry operators were contacted and asked to complete the survey. 19 operators agreed to complete the survey however only ten actually returned the completed survey (Approximately 30% of those contacted). All declined to do it over the phone so completed surveys were submitted via fax or email.

Information regarding operators who did not participate in the survey was extracted from secondary sources including the 2001 BC accommodation guide, The IFPA (Innovative Forest Practices – Industry planning initiative), The Ministry of Water, Lands and Parks (for Guide Outfitters and Fishing Guides), The Houston Chamber of Commerce (2001 Business Directory) and local phone books (For businesses not otherwise identified). The distribution of responses were as follows:

Response Category	Number	Percent
Total Potential Survey Respondents	99	100%
Telephone interview completed	0	
Returned completed survey	10	
Total response and response rate	**10**	**10%**

10.2 Respondent Profile

The following set of tables show the distribution of tourism operators in the study area by various categories of operation. A number of operators offer two or more types of tourism activities and in some cases several distinct types of tourism operations. Each of the secondary activities is given an equal weight, resulting in totals greater than the total number of operators in the study area.

Accommodations		
Code	Description	
A01	Hotel	1
A02	Motel	4
A03	RV/Campground	9
A04	Lodge/Resort	16
- 56A05	Camps	3
A06	Huts/ Cabins	7
A07	Cabins/Cottages	5
A08	Guest Ranches	0
A09	Bed and Breakfast	3
A11	Hostel	0
Total – 48		

Attractions	
Code	Description
T01	Museum - 0
T02	Arts/Culture/Heritage – 13
T03	Recreation – 62
T07	Nature – 56
T08	Sports – 0
T09	Golf – public – 2
T11	Golf - semi-private – 0
T12	Marina – public – 3
T14	Ski Facility – 0
T16	Rental - 5
Total – 141	

Guides/Tour Operators		
Code	Description	
R01	Guide-outfitter	9
R02	River rafting	0
R04	Marine Charters, Fresh	36
R05	Air tours/charters	3
R06	Geology & minerals	2
R07	Kayak/Canoe	3
R08	Bus Charters / Tours	3
R11	Hiking/Mountaineering	7
R14	Snowmobile	1
R15	Cycling	0
R16	Rock climbing	1
R17	Horse and Trail	1
R18	Ski Touring	4
R19	Other	0
Total – 70		

Transportation (Scheduled)	
Code	Description
P05	Air - 1
P08	Bus
P09	Rail
P19	Taxi
P20	Car Rental
Total – 1	

10.2.1 Tourism Survey Instrument

On the following pages, the reader will find a sample of the tourism stakeholder survey instrument.

BRITISH
COLUMBIA

Morice Forest District
Tourism Opportunities Study

Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management

Stakeholder Survey

As an integral component of the Morice Forest District Land & Resource Management Plan (LRMP), the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management (MSRM) is undertaking a *Tourism Opportunity Study* (TOS). We are seeking your input as a local tourism operator in the completion of the TOS for the Morice Forest District. The project is in support of land use planning, tourism development planning and economic development opportunities. Your answers to this questionnaire are very important in ensuring that your tourism & resource needs, opportunities and concerns are addressed within the Study Area. MSRM will use the results to better understand how the tourism businesses use the study area so they can make planning decisions that support the tourism industry.

Please answer only those questions which apply to your business Of the information collected below – only generic summaries will be included in the report. Individual details will not be disclosed.

We may need to contact you for further information. Please update the address information below, including the name of a contact person for your business. Thank you for assisting MSRM in completing this survey ☺.

Organization/Company Name:______________________________

Contact:______________________**Title:**____________________

Mailing Address:______________________________________

Physical Address (if different from above):______________________

City, Prov:________________**Postal Code:**____________________

Phone:______________________________**Fax:**________________

E-Mail:________________________________

Web Site:______________________________

1. If you are **based in or use the Study Area and offer overnight accommodation facilities**, please indicate for each type of facility you operate, the following information.

- If you do not have an accommodation facility please go to Question 3.

Type of Facility	Number of Accommodation units (rooms)	Number of Campground Sites
Hotel / Motel		
Condominium		
Cabins	(# beds or cabins)	
Lodge / Resort		
Fishing / Guide Camp	(# beds or tents)	
Bed &Breakfast		
RV Park / Campground With hook-ups	Number of RV sites	Number of Campsites
No hook-ups		
Charter Boat (overnight)	Number of Berths	
	Number of Moorage Sites	Feet of Moorage
Marina		

2. Please check (✓) all the services offered by your facility. Do not include services that are offered by businesses nearby; these services should be specific to your operation.

☐ Pool
☐ Sauna / hot tub
☐ Gym / fitness equipment
☐ Conference facilities
☐ Internet / data lines
☐ Playground
☐ Child Care Services
☐ Groceries
☐ Fresh Water
☐ Ice

☐ Sani-dump
☐ Hook ups
☐ Laundry
☐ Showers
☐ Hunting / Fishing Licence
☐ Activity specific supplies
☐ Auto Fuel
☐ Marine Fuel
☐ Marine / auto repairs
☐ Boat Ramp

☐ Restaurant → __ Number of Seats
☐ Coffee Shop → __ Number of Seats
☐ Bar / Pub → __ Number of Seats
☐ General/Convenience Store
☐ Gift Shop
☐ Guided facility tours
☐ Pets Welcome
☐ Pay Telephone

☐ Kayak / canoe rentals
☐ Power Boat rental
☐ Bicycle rental
☐ Horse Boarding Available
☐ Tour Bookings

3. Which of the following activities are provided by your operation in **the Study Area** *(refer to the attached map if unsure of the extent of the study area).* Please indicate whether the activity is the principle activity offered, or is a secondary activity undertaken in conjunction with the primary activity

- e.g.: Hiking = primary activity;

→ Camping = secondary activity.

A secondary activity is one which is part of the experience offered, but would not be supplied without the presence of the primary activity. A secondary activity does not have to be guided.

If the activity is supplied by another company please check the appropriate box (✓ all that apply).

Activity	**Primary Activity**	**Secondary Activity**	**Supplied by other co.**
Camping	☐	☐	☐
Day Hiking	☐	☐	☐
Overnight Hiking	☐	☐	☐
Heli-Hiking	☐	☐	☐
Rock Climbing	☐	☐	☐
Mountaineering	☐	☐	☐
Caving	☐	☐	☐
Bicycling (road)	☐	☐	☐
Mtn. Biking	☐	☐	☐
Trail Riding	☐	☐	☐
Hunting	☐	☐	☐
Trapping	☐	☐	☐
Wildlife Viewing	☐	☐	☐
Bird Watching	☐	☐	☐

Activity	Primary Activity	Secondary Activity	Supplied by other co.
Nature Studies	☐	☐	☐
Landscape Viewing	☐	☐	☐
Photography	☐	☐	☐
Rockhounding / Prospecting	☐	☐	☐
Gathering/ Collecting (e.g. mushrooms)	☐	☐	☐
Air tours			
(fixed wing)	☐	☐	☐
(helicopter)	☐	☐	☐
Golf	☐	☐	☐
Alpine Skiing	☐	☐	☐
Cross Country Skiing	☐	☐	☐
Ski Touring	☐	☐	☐
Heli-Skiing	☐	☐	☐
Snowmobiling	☐	☐	☐
Saltwater Fishing	☐	☐	☐
Freshwater Fishing	☐	☐	☐
Rafting	☐	☐	☐
Canoeing	☐	☐	☐
Lake Kayaking	☐	☐	☐
River Kayaking	☐	☐	☐
Sail Boating	☐	☐	☐
Power Boating	☐	☐	☐
Whale	☐	☐	☐
Scuba Diving	☐	☐	☐
Swimming	☐	☐	☐
Wind Surfing	☐	☐	☐
Beach	☐	☐	☐
Road/car tours	☐	☐	☐
Bus/Van tours	☐	☐	☐
4-Wheel Drive tours	☐	☐	☐
Cultural/ Heritage tours	☐	☐	☐
Other:	☐	☐	☐

Please Specify → ____________________

____

____

____

4. Please list the name of other companies whose services you utilize as part of your operations. (e.g. Air charter, hotel or B & B accommodation, boat or kayak charter)

____

____

____

____

5. Please check (✓) the months of your business operation in the **Study Area**.

☐ All Year

☐ January
☐ February
☐ March
☐ April
☐ May
☐ June
☐ July
☐ August
☐ September
☐ October
☐ November
☐ December

6. If you offer only a limited number of trips per year in the **Study Area** (less than three), please specify the dates of the trips:

____

____

7. Please indicate (✓) the category which best describes the percent of trips your company offers in the **Study Area** compared to the total number of trips offered by your organization.

☐ < 10 % ☐ 10%-30% ☐ 30%-50%
☐ 50%-70% ☐ 70%-90% ☐ >90%

8. Please indicate (✓) the size of group you can accommodate on each trip:

☐ < 2 people ☐ 3-6 people ☐ 7-12 people
☐ 13-15 people ☐ 16-20 people ☐ > 20 people

9. What is the guide/participant ratio?

____

10. For each season that you operate in the **Study Area,** please indicate (✓) the occupancy rate for your operation or facility. If you only operate for a portion of a season, record the average level of use for that portion in which you operate.

Average Occupancy For Season	Summer (July-Aug)	Fall (Sept-Nov)	Winter (Dec-Mar)	Spring (Apr-Jun)
Greater than 85%	☐	☐	☐	☐
55% - 85%	☐	☐	☐	☐
Less than 55%	☐	☐	☐	☐
Do not operate during that season	☐	☐	☐	☐

11. How many clients did you have in 2001?

____

12. How many clients do you expect in 2002?

____

12. What is the average length of stay for clients?

____

13. What is the average daily charge per client for:

Trips less than one day in duration? ________ $.
Trips more than one day in duration? ________ $.

14. What does your daily charge include?

☐ accommodation ☐ all ☐ partial meals
☐ equipment ☐ guiding ☐ use of boats
☐ instruction ☐ other _____________________

15. Please indicate the number of people (including yourself &/or family members) that you are employing for operations in the **Study Area** in 2001 for the following categories:

_____________ full time year round
_____________ full time seasonal
_____________ part time year round
_____________ part time seasonal
_____________ total employees

16. What is your vision for your business over the next 5 years?

☐ Sell/retire ☐ maintain current number of clients and size of operating area. ☐ expand number of clients within current operating area ☐ expand number of clients and operating area(s)

If your vision is to expand, please indicate which activities you feel could be expanded, whether they would be a new activity for your operation and where they would take place ____________________________________

____

17. Please describe (geographically) the areas of the Morice Forest District that you utilize in undertaking your tourism services?

____

____

____

____

____

Further comments:

____

____

____

____

On behalf of all local tourism stakeholders, thank you very much for your participation & assistance.

Should you have any questions regarding this survey or the *Morice Forest District -Tourism Development Study* in general please contact:

Butch Morningstar Manager for Tourism & Economic Development Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management Smithers (250) 847-7797	Greg Meredith Meredith & Associates Telkwa/Smithers (250) 847-3196	Dave Harris Hillcrest Consulting Quick (250) 846-9246

11 Annex C – Product Pre-Feasibility Profiles

There are 8 product profiles covered in this appendix. The purpose of the profiles is to give readers some understanding of the issues surrounding business development. The main report dealt with the two key issues of land/resource capability and community capacity for tourism development. This section takes a business focus by assessing other inputs an operator requires in order to create a competitive and successful commercial recreation venture. The products are:

- Canoeing/kayaking
- Hiking
- Snowmobiling
- Ski touring
- Cross-country skiing
- Road touring
- Lodge/resort
- Huts

Each profile consists of an assessment of market, location, infrastructure, financial and business development issues. Key success factors and complementary activities are also discussed. Readers are reminded that the following profiles are general in nature. Further assessment and planning is required to determine the actual feasibility of product development in the Morice Forest District.

CANOEING/KAYAKING	
Product Description	***Canoe/kayak tour company.***
Markets	Participants/soft adventurers from BC, short-haul markets (Canada and US) and overseas markets (Germany). Enthusiasts/hard adventurers (BC and Alberta residents).

CANOEING/KAYAKING

<table>
<tr><td>Competition</td><td colspan="4">There is extensive competition regionally and across Canada for canoeing and kayaking. Canadian Rockies, Kootenays, Thompson Okanagan and the Cariboo offer quality river/lake experiences, with similar or better features.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overall Potential</td><td colspan="4">Long-term trends show rising participation rates among North American markets, particularly among soft adventure participants rather than the extreme enthusiast market. All of these markets are seeking a broader outdoor adventure experience and may decide to participate in recreational paddling once in the region. The Morice FD can offer a range of close-in/remote adventures and is very well positioned to attract more visitors.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Location Needs</td><td colspan="4">For river activities, access to single and multi-day canoe/kayak routes, flat water routes and fast water routes, varying grades of water for all levels of expertise, play areas and water suitable for instruction are all important considerations.
For lakes, larger lakes with variable shorelines, and attractive scenery with little sign of human presence are the primary attractants for this activity. Generally, lakes that permit half-day to full day paddling and enable participants to achieve a sense of isolation (including being away from other participants) are preferred. Smaller lakes can also have potential, but would require the presence of additional features to enhance the experience. Such features include historical or cultural sites, wildlife viewing, sandy beaches, waterfalls, fishing, etc.
Less modified landscapes are preferred to highly modified landscapes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Issues</td><td>Licences & permits
Weather conditions</td><td>Fluctuating water levels on reservoirs</td><td>Environmental, wildlife and fishing guidelines</td><td>Good road access & egress points</td></tr>
<tr><td>Infrastructure</td><td colspan="4">Access for put- in and take-out
Campsites
Transportation access from staging area
Shuttling services
Accommodation and food service support
Trained guides & instructors</td></tr>
<tr><td>Financial</td><td colspan="4">Low capital costs - Typically, to operate within established industry standards, maximum tour group size is ten guests with two guides, and using a mixed fleet of double and single kayaks or canoes. A fleet of 5 double and two single fibreglass kayaks, with all necessary kayaking equipment (paddles, PFDs, spray decks, pumps, and required safety equipment) would cost an operator between $25-30,000. Many companies also provide tents, sleeping pads, dry bags, paddling jackets or wetsuits, and all camp kitchen facilities (shelter, portable stove, pots, etc.). Start-up equipment needs and costs will vary depending on partnerships with other tourism product operators, and on the style and remoteness of the trips.
Operators offering kayaking tours had annual revenues of approximately $120,000 in 1993, with approximately one third bringing in less than $50,000. The kayak business is very profitable because of lower-than-average operating expenses. The average outfit has 700 clients with an average daily revenue of $113 per traveller. The average trip length was 5.7 days.</td></tr>
</table>

CANOEING/KAYAKING	
Business Development	Instruction services are essential for a guiding outfit so having instructors with the ability to clearly explain, demonstrate and provide feedback and coaching is a benefit. This usually means instructors/guides who have proven certification and demonstrate an ability to teach. Nature observation, wildlife viewing and fishing are also attractants for these markets. The German market, especially, is interested in wildlife viewing. Whether canoeing or kayaking, product development has to incorporate some outstanding recreational feature, aesthetic appeal or valued secondary activity. Multi-activity packaging and interpretation is essential. More vertical integration of product design and marketing is required, including raising awareness of the potential of lakes and rivers among BC residents (i.e. enthusiasts who are activity-oriented travellers). Resource management has a significant impact on the marketability of canoeing and kayaking. The extensive evidence of industrial forestry has compromised the potential of some river sections. Visual quality is a very important attribute for this pursuit. Hydroelectric activity is a major consideration for river and lake product – water levels will influence how and where development can take place. The most reliable flow rates/levels for river activities are associated with fall to spring precipitation (which are also colder months). If an operator uses a specific land feature such as a beach or camp on a regular basis then CBR tenure will be required. Typically, conflicts with other users are low, but jet boats can be a problem in high use areas. People are generally looking for shorter trips, on average for 7 days when traveling abroad. Yield management for tour operators will be increasingly important as a result of running more numerous, short-term trips.
Key Success Factors	Having modern, well-maintained equipment is important. This will require ongoing upgrading to newer equipment, which is especially important for river kayaking. A variety of water classes will give an operator some flexibility when catering to markets. Good whitewater is essential for enthusiasts, while lower classes are needed when serving lower-skilled, soft adventurers. If water flow is controlled by dams, a coordinated plan to match water conditions with planned usage is important. This means investing time and effort in developing the itineraries and routes for trips. There should be pre-prepared options in the event of poor weather. Put-in and take-out sites should be easily accessible while coordinated support should be in place for take-outs. Interpreters and guides with a thorough knowledge of the area and ability to convey this in an interesting and informative way will appeal strongly to the soft adventure market which is interested in more than the canoeing or kayaking activity itself. This also applies to food and accommodation planning, making sure that clients have been matched with the anticipated service expectations.
Complementary Activities	Natural and cultural features viewing. Heritage interpretation. Fishing. Camping. Hut systems.

HIKING

Product Description	***Guided Interpretive hikes and nature tours.***
Markets	All markets, especially the soft adventure visitors among short-haul (Canada and US), long-haul (Canada and US) and overseas markets (Germany). Hiking enthusiasts (interpretive tours into new areas). Park visitors, including tour travellers. Seniors for Elderhostels Nature lovers of all ages
Competition	There is extensive competition regionally, nationally and internationally for travellers interested in pursuing hiking. The hiking enthusiast in pursuit of a challenging, wilderness trek product has a wide range of products and experiences to choose from. The national parks cater extensively to this market. Many communities and all parks have developed trail inventories and related services that create a safe and interesting product for the soft adventurer/participant.
Overall Potential	The potential for development in the region is average. There are high quality resources and visitor markets that place a high value on hiking activity. However, a lack of well known trail systems will limit development. Demand will continue to increase for hiking both as a primary activity and as a secondary activity in conjunction with other products. Because of its accessibility, low skill requirements, relative safety and instant appeal, growth rates among North American and European hiking markets are expected to continue to climb even as the overall population ages. The potential for commercial hiking tours spans a full range of options from multi-day trekking tours to short interpreted tours of the frontcountry.
Location Needs	Wilderness areas and parks. Trails and trail systems. High scenic and natural values. Wildlife and wildlife viewing opportunities. Natural habitats. Solitude.
Issues	Applicable licences and permits. Wildlife issues – most clients want to see bears. Conflicts on trails with other users.
Infrastructure	Well signed and maintained trails Roads for access Shuttle service Maps / information Certified hiking guides

HIKING

Financial	Low capital costs – hiking and backpacking does not require a significant investment in equipment but trail and accommodation infrastructure is very important. Since the provision of these components can rarely be justified based on revenues available from hiking, multi-activity tourism has to be accommodated. The average Canadian tour operator offering hiking as the major activity had annual gross revenues of $167,000 in 1993. Almost two thirds of operators brought in less than $50,000 and this contributed to a low average gross margin of 6.9%, considerably less than other activities. With an average number of travellers of 1,390, this equated to about $120 in revenue per traveller.	
Business Development	The average Canadian hiking tour operator employed five seasonal personnel in 1993, with the majority of operators have less than four staff. Trained interpreters/guides who are experts in the area and interact well with people are important. First aid training is also a factor for day-hikes as well as for overnight trips. Target future M-K park visitors, including tour travellers in promotional activities. Niche marketing (e.g. slide shows, local presentations, communication with community groups) should be used to increase regional awareness of newly developed hiking products. The operation should be flexible enough to offer day hikes as well as overnight trips. The latter will have to be pressed through tour wholesalers or retail tour operators. Day hikes can be directly marketed to regional visitors who have some flex time for a short excursion. Hiking tour routes have to be developed around highly scenic, natural and recreational, and/or heritage/cultural resources. The better the signage, parking, garbage disposal, washrooms, and interpretative facilities the better the trip experience will be for users. Quality map information and investment in facilities is also important. In order for a guiding operation to succeed, it must provide a value-added service that hikers cannot obtain through self-guided hikes. This means creating a high-end experience through linkages to cultural/heritage interpretation, wildlife viewing, meals and lodging. Develop specialized tours or specialize completely in a specific market segment such as women only, seniors or at-risk youth. Although hiking appeals to a wide range of people demographically, it is important to identify specific target markets and their distinct needs.	
Key Success Factors	For soft adventure travellers, well-developed, relatively easy trails, in an uncrowded and pristine environment are preferred. Interesting features for nature and/or culture for day trips. Overnight trips need access to good camping or hut locations. Soft adventure travellers will prefer lodges/cabins while the enthusiast will prefer tenting. Offering activities which add an educational or recreational component such as nature interpretation and wildlife viewing and photography. This may include teaching participants how to minimize impact when hiking and camping in wilderness areas. Developing good routes for trips including contingency routes in case of poor weather conditions or other parties. Understanding, then exceeding, expectations of participants for meals. An operator should always enquire about dietary restrictions and preferences of participants before the trip and develop a meal plan accordingly. For soft adventure, inbound logistics are important – providing the right transportation from a primary site, to the staging area and beyond is critical. This will require detailed planning to ensure that the appropriate vehicles are available and supplies packed.	
Complementary Activities	Accommodations Visitor Centre	Locally focused booking / central registry agency

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">SNOWMOBILING</th></tr>
<tr><td>Product Description</td><td colspan="4">Snowmobile terrain complex (location for related special events).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Markets</td><td colspan="4">In BC, the regional and Canadian short-haul visitors comprise the majority of the snowmobile market. The best potential is within the regional market with a 500 mile radius, primarily Alberta. Participation by US and international visitors is minor.
Soft-adventurers who are participating in other winter destination activities such as downhill and cross-country skiing are prime targets.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Competition</td><td colspan="4">Broad choice of destinations are available across the province.
Province-wide trail network will improve access to quality terrain in affected communities, but it will also increase participation.
For commercial operators, converting self-guided visitors to buyers of a commercial product will be a major challenge.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overall Potential</td><td colspan="4">There is good resource attributes and snow conditions for snowmobiling throughout western portions of the District. The activity is growing extremely fast, perhaps more so than any other outdoor activity, motorized or non-motorized. The increased demand and use is coming from residents, regional visitors and short-haul visitors. The major limiting factors include distance from major regional markets and the lack of service infrastructure.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Location Needs</td><td colspan="4">A site should be 5 – 10 minutes from a town or service centre to take advantage of infrastructure, services such as fuel and mechanical, and hospitality (food, beverage, accommodation).
Site must have a variety of terrain (ups, downs, flats).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Issues</td><td>Business licence
Wildlife</td><td>Noise
Pollution</td><td>Zoning
Liability insurance</td><td>Access
Conflicting use</td></tr>
<tr><td>Infrastructure</td><td colspan="4">On site needs include concession, washroom facilities, storage, parking, signage etc.
A facility could be based on a commercial business, but for less developed areas it may be more practical to have the local snowmobile club manage the operation. A certain amount of sweat equity and volunteer time would be required to offset capital costs anyway.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Financial</td><td colspan="4">Moderate capital costs – a basic facility comprising trail building and minor service development would incur cash costs of at least $25,000 to $35,000 plus contributed equity in the form of volunteer labour.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Business Development</td><td colspan="4">The cooperation of local snowmobilers is essential as it will be difficult to justify the investment in facilities on a strictly commercial basis. Any development in a major community would automatically attract local users and may conflict with other possible uses (e.g. cross-country skiing).
A new facility could be based on an all-season product (e.g. ATVs, motor cross in the summer). Developing trails in co-operation with off-season users such as hikers, mountain bikers and horseback riders would also facilitate development.</td></tr>
</table>

SNOWMOBILING

Key Success Factors	Access to high quality resources. Ensuring trails and play areas are well-maintained by working with local snowmobile clubs and associations. Improving infrastructure and hospitality services to encourage longer and more frequent trips. Working with government and tourism agencies as well as environmental groups to develop and promote the trail systems, avoid user conflicts and manage visitation to avoid carrying capacity constraints. Developing a code of conduct for safety and environmental concerns which is strictly adhered to.
Complementary Activities	Special events. Repair and maintenance services. Sales and rentals.

SKI TOURING

Product Description	Guiding ski touring services.
Markets	Experienced/hard adventurers from all markets, with the best potential among short-haul US and Canadian markets. Participation rates are low but market demand is annually increasing. Good potential among soft adventurers (destination-oriented decision-makers) who may be introduced to ski touring given up-to-date ski technology, safe conditions and quality instruction.
Competition	There are several areas in BC and Alberta with quality ski touring terrain. Infrastructure is very well developed in the Canadian Rockies, clustered around the National Parks. Commercial operators will be challenged to attract clientele, because the park system, local alpine clubs and societies provide access to over 40 public backcountry huts to ski tourers at little or no cost.
Overall Potential	Demand is low but growing for this product. As skiing technology improves and as lift-service options expand, ski touring will become even more accessible to a broader market. Parks Canada has stated that there is potential for some immediate modest growth in the local, regional and international adventure recreation markets, principally among winter backcountry users. Promotional efforts could be focussed on the parks' high quality winter backcountry recreation opportunities in trying to convert more international visitors from touring travellers to ecotourists. The best potential for commercial development is in association with hut or lodge-based operations.
Location Needs	Available terrain within the parks system Good variety of terrain (beginner to expert, treed to alpine) Variety of access options (from roads, helicopter)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">SKI TOURING</th></tr>
<tr><td>Issues</td><td>Requirement for certified & licensed guides</td><td>Tenured access to large areas of varied terrain</td><td>Wildlife conflicts
Avalanche hazards</td><td>Conflicts with other users</td></tr>
<tr><td>Infrastructure</td><td colspan="4">Roaded access
Backcountry huts and cabins
Front-country food /accommodation services</td></tr>
<tr><td>Financial</td><td colspan="4">Low capital costs – initial costs would be low comprising equipment and gear. If needed, transportation services could be contracted locally. Any hut or lodge development would add significantly to costs.
The average Canadian tour operator offering ski touring as the major activity had annual gross revenues of $230,122 in 1993, with about 50% bringing in less than $50,000 annually. The gross margins are not that attractive, averaging 4.2% due to higher-than-average operational expenses. The average number of skiers per operation was 572, trip length was between 4 and 4½ days, and per day revenues approximately $100. This is believed to be a good representation of the BC sector as almost one half of all operators in the country are based in BC.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Business Development</td><td colspan="4">Hiring qualified and certified guides and instructors is increasingly important as backcountry visitation increases and the risk to personal safety climbs. The vast majority of commercial ski tour operators use professionally certified adventure travel guides and/or tour leaders.
Telemark skiing will become increasingly popular as will the overall market for Nordic skiing. This will create demand for good beginner instruction and also increase the importance of the accommodation and other facilities in attracting the broader market.
Specific niche markets such as women-only clinics and tours have good potential for expansion.
As user fees becomes more prevalent in backcountry areas, more operators may begin working with recreational skiers and clubs to maintain and enhance high quality areas.
Providing courses packaged with rentals and guided tours will encourage beginners and casual participants to participate.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Key Success Factors</td><td colspan="4">Good access to high quality terrain, including permits/tenure for secluded backcountry areas.
For the destination-based traveller, high quality accommodation and support facilities. If specialized target markets are being attracted, then developing menu and accommodations have to be designed accordingly.
High quality, well-maintained equipment, with a variety of sizes suitable for the family market.
Ability to answer questions from both beginners and experts on equipment and trails in the area.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Complementary Activities</td><td colspan="4">Development of temporary or permanent backcountry accommodations (tents/yurts, huts/cabins/lodges).</td></tr>
</table>

CROSS-COUNTRY SKIING

Product Description	***Development of a long distance Nordic ski trail system and event sponsorship to attract skiers and promote spin-off benefits for the community (e.g. loppet).***
Markets	Participants and enthusiasts from BC and short-haul markets, especially Alberta. The US and overseas markets are limited, but downhill skiers of all geographic origins are a potential target. Families and local skiers. Racers and elite athletes. Destination skiers who want to try a variety of activities.
Competition	There are many well-established cross-country ski areas in BC and Alberta that offer similar terrain features and snow conditions and in some cases have superior infrastructure and amenities. There are 22 major races/loppets in BC this year, primarily in the Interior and the Okanagan.
Overall Potential	Long-term participation trends are only average, and the ability to stage events should be tied to a well-serviced Nordic centre which will have the capacity to deal with periodic increases in activity. According to Cross Country BC, "super events" could have some potential in the province, especially if they can appeal to the softer, beginner markets. Current loppets are top-down events geared toward the skilled enthusiast.
Location Needs	Requirement for a large, relatively flat area with good snow conditions and trails with a variety of terrain to meet the needs of beginners, intermediate and advanced skiers. Appropriate elevation for consistent snow conditions. Road access to at least one end of the trail system.
Issues	Tenure for use of public land or access/purchase of private land. Potential conflict with existing tenures and operators. Environmental and wildlife guidelines. Need to develop a trail complex more appropriate for racing.
Infrastructure	An organized, well designed and signed trail complex. Groomed trails. Warming hut facilities. Parking areas. Signage and maps. Fee collection and sales area. Ski patrol services. Grooming machines. Fuel, storage equipment and repair facilities. Event organization skills.
Financial	Moderate to high capital costs – a basic facility comprising trail building and minor service development would incur cash costs of at least $25,000 to $35,000 plus contributed equity in the form of volunteer labour. Land and warming hut costs would be in addition.

CROSS-COUNTRY SKIING	
Business Development	Families with children value good instruction for both the children and adults, activity areas specifically for younger participants, good ski rental facilities in terms of equipment quality and size selection and dining facilities catering to families. Couples will value not only the facilities and trails for the ski activity itself, but the overall ambience of the area, including dining and accommodation. A potential area would have to be thoroughly researched and planned to ensure there is the right product/market mix. The initial focus would be on identifying potential locations for trails, assessing the feasibility of each (what type of skiing?), and deciding what is needed to develop and maintain the trail system. For events, cooperation and participation of local outdoor clubs is essential. Affiliations with official race or event series (e.g. BC Cup Series) is essential. Cross Country BC sanctions races in the province among its affiliated local clubs. National and international sanctions are also possible. As with any Cross-country ski product, there must be a favourable Nordic ski area or centre and the required hospitality services. A minimum of 30 km events are standard. Organizing the loppet is very important and in order to be sanctioned must be innovative and enhance the visitor experience to increase participation and visitation. An assessment of the most successful loppets in other parts of the world could be undertaken. Local members may have to be educated on the different "styles" and "formats" of cross country ski competitions and encouraged to put them into their event hosting plans before a loppet is considered. Cross Country BC's Western Edge loppet program may be a model for development.
Key Success Factors	Cross-country ski areas are being transformed into multi-use, winter playgrounds or resort areas to appeal to broader markets. There is unlikely to be sufficient demand for solely cross-country unless other activities are factored into the development. While natural features such as varied terrain are important, the built environment is critical – that means things like night lighting, parking, clear signage, high-quality and well-maintained equipment, transportation services and the availability of multi-activity packages can really broaden the appeal. A Nordic centre will not catch on in a big way unless there is extensive grooming on the trail system, perhaps using snowmobiles to pull small groomers. If trails are groomed skiers can count on good conditions and so will be more willing to drive to the area for a day or weekend. Trails for skiers could be utilized in the summer and off-seasons for hikers, bicyclists, horseback riders for connecting various components of a site. But trails would have to allow the user to view and visit a variety of ecological and natural features.
Complementary Activities	Trails can be used for mountain biking and hiking in the summer / shoulder seasons. Provision of accommodation and services.

ROAD TOURS

Product Description	***Highway Circle Tours.***
Markets	Primarily free independent regional and short-haul visitors from North American markets. This group tends to travel by private vehicle and will make a decision to participate in sightseeing and touring once in the region. Secondarily, bus/motorcoach tour participants from the US, Europe and Asia.
Competition	Many regions of the province and neighbouring Alberta have upgraded their hospitality infrastructure, services and attractions in recent years to pursue independent travellers. A major source of competition is Alaska, the Yukon and Northwest BC. Many visitors to the Peace region are travelling to and from Alaska and do not have a lot of discretionary holiday time. Catering more to this market means providing experiences not available further north. As an alternative route to Alaska, Northwest BC is also a competitive threat.
Overall Potential	The overall potential is good for the circle tour product, although the lack of growth in highway traffic counts suggests that communities will have to attract more of the existing visitor volumes if they are to increase activity.
Location Needs	Access to a variety of frontcountry attractions and interpreted experiences. High quality scenic viewing, wildlife viewing and sightseeing potential. Convenient access to parks and natural areas in the mid-country.
Issues	Highway safety. Road conditions. Cooperation among municipalities.
Infrastructure	Well-paved and maintained highway system. Secondary road system that provides access to staging areas for day activities. Pullouts and interpretive signage at regular intervals throughout the route. Visible, efficient visitor information centres. Well trained hospitality personnel. Visitor attractions.
Financial	Low capital costs (marketing) – Circle tours are primarily a marketing tool linking together a variety of existing features and attractions so as to encourage highway travellers to spend more time in the region. High capital costs (infrastructure) – Developing and maintaining a quality highway system with the necessary interpretive facilities and visitor attractions requires a significant investment in public and private infrastructure.
Business Development	In order to compete in the tourist market regionally and worldwide, communities in the region will need to find ways to coordinate their development and marketing efforts that emphasize the area's distinctive features in order to draw tourists. Internet websites are being used to provide information that allows individual tourists to plan their own itineraries and make bookings for accommodations in advance. Tourists should able to develop self-guided tours. There should also be supporting material and interpretive/sightseeing facilities along the touring route to support this self-guided activity. More conventional collateral material such as brochures and maps/guides in cooperation with communities and operators throughout the route will be required. Another possible tool are cassettes and CDs with narrative tours of the area.

ROAD TOURS	
Key Success Factors	Successful road touring regions have made commitments to preserving their areas while developing roads for improved access. Corridor Management Plans (CMP) are being used to establish clear guidelines for development and activities along a route. Thus, while infrastructure development is important for tourism, communities and operators will need to also be aware of the need to act in a way that conserves and protects the area for sustainable development. There is a need to encourage input from various parties and develop a cohesive strategy for tourism along the touring route. The ability to tap into senior government funding for highway development and improvement projects could determine how successful communities will be for developing their road tour markets. Developing highways in scenic areas with regular points of interest en route. Having clear signage throughout the route. Developing an adequate number of multi-lane roads to handle traffic volumes and maintain safe conditions. Variety of accommodation, particularly for families.
Complementary Activities	Any accessible day-use outdoor activity. Local attractions such as museums, interpretive centres and resorts. Accommodation packages.

LODGE/RESORT	
Product Description	***Lodge / Retreat / B&Bs.***
Markets	Soft adventure markets. Seniors for Elderhostels. Nature lovers of all ages. North American, Europeans, Japanese, other international. Destination market.
Competition	Backcountry accommodation is not well developed in BC and, except in the case of fishing lodges, not that well marketed. There are some high quality lodge/resorts in the Canadian Rockies and on the Coast, but there is also room for expansion.
Overall Potential	Lodge/resort accommodation supports the development of many other products assessed in this report which cater to the growing soft adventure market. In general, the hard adventure/enthusiast market will be satisfied with minimal infrastructure and the availability of camping facilities. Lodges and resorts lodges are generally preferred by the experienced ecotourist, with 66 percent stating them as their preferred choice of accommodation. In contract, the general touring traveller prefers to stay in hotels/motels (56 percent).
Location Needs	Access to different activities from accommodation location. Roads / fly in areas / hike in. Wilderness areas, parks, solitude, wildlife and wildlife viewing.

LODGE/RESORT

Issues	Crown lease if development is on public land.	Applicable licences and permits.	Capacity of trails, areas to accommodate activities.	Conflicts on trails with other users.
Infrastructure	Trails or trail systems. Roads for access or fly-in capabilities. Availability of hospitality personnel. Certified guides. Access to municipal services or provision of same.			
Financial	Moderate to high capital costs – a wide range of capital costs are possible, depending on the nature and size of the facility, but generally this product calls for significant land and building development. There are few statistics available for backcountry accommodation operations in BC outside of the sport fishing sector. Unaffiliated front-country accommodation facilities such as hotels and motels are rarely profitable without food and licensed beverage services, so backcountry cabins/lodges that are removed from convenient road access will be even more difficult to support.			
Business Development	Cabins/lodges require a significant investment in "human capital" for hospitality services (i.e. food and lodging), interpretation and guiding. Lodges are becoming multi-activity and multi-season resort destinations for both guided and self-guided activities. By being multi-activity and multi-season, lodges are in a better position to manage their cash flow and staff. It will be important to find complementary activities to leverage staff and equipment across seasons. Partnering with guiding operations to offer tours where expertise does not exist in-house. Theming is on the rise. 36 percent of leisure travellers surveyed said they were looking for a lodge, resort or hotel with a distinctive theme. Although outdoor adventure could be considered a theme in and of itself, the increasing number of lodges will dilute this as a differentiating factor. Therefore, specialization will become more important for a lodge to succeed.			
Key Success Factors	A remote, uncrowded, scenic location that has controlled access is preferred for accommodation development. Adding amenities that add to the enjoyment of the overall experience would improve marketability but this will be limited by the availability of capital. Providing gear, guides and interpretive services linked to multi-activity experiences. Ease of access to and from staging areas. Where the facility is geared toward trail-based activities like hiking, biking and nature observation there must be reasonable trails and access. Accommodation facilities which conform to sustainability princ [illegible] first priority is facilities with minimum environmental impact. Buildings that demonstrate the use of recycled materials are becoming more common. The use of low quantities of water and electricity is desirable. Where possible, internal electrical generation, from water, wind and sun should take place.			
Complementary Activities	Any number of theme focused retreats (health, food, hobbies, business workshops). Tie in with other activities in the area. Locally focused booking / central registry agency.			

HUTS

Product Description	***Individual hut or hut system.***
Markets	The market for the hut will depend on the activity being targeted and the degree of "rusticness" of the accommodation. Huts can range from the very comfortable to the very primitive. Generally, the soft adventure traveller will value a hut for its comfort, the access that it provides to more remote outdoor area and other amenities such as meals. The hard adventure traveller is likely an active enthusiast in the particular activity being performed, and appreciates the proximity and shelter from the elements in the high alpine or wilderness areas, making more challenging routes possible. Single hut users will select the hut based on its location vis-à-vis a particular destination (i.e. a climbing peak) or an area (i.e. backcountry bowl for skiing) that suits the level of challenge they are seeking. They will also look for the hut to have a variety of excursions from the hut. Hut-to-hut users will select a hut system based on the variety of features within the area covered throughout the system. They will rarely spend more than one or two nights at a single hut.
Competition	Most of the existing huts and hut systems in Western Canada are targeted at backcountry skiers in the winter and hikers, backpackers and mountaineers in the summer. For both these activities the national park huts and others operated by the Alpine Club of Canada are major attractants. Many snowmobile and cross-country clubs maintain warming huts for local recreationists. Internationally, Colorado, Alaska and Europe have destination hut systems.
Overall Potential	There is good potential for a hut system in the region because of the overall lack of tourism infrastructure and the possibility of linking up with the highway system for entry and exit points.
Location Needs	Access to different activities from accommodation location. Access to high quality resources and features. Wilderness areas, parks, solitude, wildlife and wildlife viewing.
Issues	Crown lease or licence of occupation if development is on public land. Vandalism and unlicensed use. Hut maintenance and upkeep. Fee collection.
Infrastructure	Trails or trail systems. Signage. Reasonable road access to staging areas. Hospitality and transportation services near visitor centres and staging areas.

HUTS	
Financial	Moderate capital costs – rustic huts can be constructed for as little as $20,000 and range upward depending on size and comfort level. Huts are rarely developed for exclusive private sector use because of difficulties associated with fee collection and unapproved use. The revenue potential is rarely high enough to justify an on-site attendant or manager so the ability to control use is limited.
Business Development	Typically, recreation clubs who have been licensed for such development by LWBC have erected huts on Crown land outside of parks. There is no exclusivity of access to or within the huts in order to preserve the right of public access. Commercial use is considered unethical unless the operator reimburses for that use or otherwise contributes to maintenance and upkeep. There are few instances of hut development on Crown land by commercial operators because of problems associated with vandalism and unauthorized use by the public. As huts would be constructed on an existing trail, access would be available to all trail users. Even if a private operator constructed new trails for a hut or hut system, LWBC is likely to authorize such development through a Licence of Occupation, which would still allow public use of the trails and access to the hut (although the hut itself could be locked). This lack of exclusivity is likely to deter future commercial hut development. The funding of hut development is a major issue in BC, both for the initial capital investment and the ongoing operating costs. Most public or club huts have depended on donations and volunteers to build and operate. For privately-owned huts or refuges, such as those in France, many were previously farmhouses that were converted into huts, thereby reducing the initial capital cost. As well, these huts are in areas that already had well-developed and popular trail systems – in other words, demand preceded the fulfillment of the need. Huts can be developed to some extent through volunteer efforts and "sweat equity", but new facilities will have to demonstrate the ability to be somewhat self-sustaining. This will require careful demand assessment among targeted users. Where public huts are projected to operate on a deficit, the shortfall must be made up through other revenue sources, such as fundraising activities and membership dues. Any hut development must establish clear guidelines for acceptable use and activities and the extent to which they can be done in the area supported by the huts. They must follow practices that minimize the impact on the environment. A hut be developed either with minimal amenities that only need replenishment once in a while, or arrange for regulartransport of supplies into the hut, either by motorized or non-motorized means. This will require careful planning to meet the expectations of users once they have been established while not compromising land health. Hut operators must establish a clear code of conduct and payment schedules. This information should be made available to users before they embark on their trip to the hut. In terms of enforcement, it may be necessary to employ hut wardens for the peak seasons, if not at all times the hut is open.

HUTS	
Key Success Factors	Clearly identifying purpose of the hut – is it for safety purposes, or for a comfortable stay in the mountains? Encouraging a sense of responsibility and peer pressure to keep the hut clean. Ensuring users understand the accommodation limits and space beforehand. Following sustainability principles Publishing exactly what is available at each hut how spots can be obtained as well as up-to-date information on availability. Making use of the Internet to accept and track bookings, which requires minimal staffing once system has been developed. Encouraging sharing of information amongst clubs, tour operators and other users.
Complementary Activities	Any remote or trail-based outdoor activity, especially hiking, backpacking, ski touring, snowmobiling and lakes/rivers tours. Locally focused booking / central registry agency.

Annex
D

12 Annex D – List of Acronyms

ABC	Aboriginal Business Canada
AGM	Annual General Meeting
AGOP	Angling Guide Operating Plan
ATBC	Aboriginal Tourism Association of British Columbia
ABTTC	Aboriginal Tourism Team Canada
B&B	Bed and Breakfast
LWBC	British Columbia Assets and Land Corporation
BCEAD	British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office
CFDC	Community Futures Development Corporation
CoC	Chamber of Commerce
CTC	Canadian Tourism Commission
EAO	British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office
ERDZ	Enhanced Resource Development Zone
FishRBC	Fisheries Renewal British Columbia
FIT	Fully Independent Traveler
FRBC	Forest Renewal British Columbia
HRDC	Human Resources Development Canada
IRDZ	Integrated Resource Development Zone
LAC	Local Advisory Committee for Tourism Opportunity Study
LRMP	Land Resource Management Plan
MCD	Ministry of Community Development
MELP	Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks
MoF	Ministry of Forests
MoFish	Ministry of Fisheries
MSBTC	Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture
PAS2	Goal 2 Protected Area Strategy
PUP	Park Use Permits
RCEP	Regional Community Enterprise Program
ROS	Resource Opportunity Spectrum
SRDZ	Special Resource Development Zone
SWOT	Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats Analysis
TBC	Tourism British Columbia
TIA	Travel Industry Association of America
TOS	Tourism Opportunities Study
WTO	World Tourism Organization
WTTC	World Travel and Tourism Council

13 Annex E – Bibliography

- Aboriginal Tourism Markets: Analysis of Germany, Japan and Canada 1999, by Dr. Peter Williams and Karim B. Dossa

- Beeton, Sue. 1998. *Ecotourism A Practical Guide for Rural Communities*. Landlinks Press, Collingwood, Australia.

- Chamberlin Consulting Group. February 8, 2001. Bulkley LRMP Implementation Monitoring Report. Prince Rupert Inter-Agency Management Committee

- Charles W.L. Hill. 2001. *International Business*.

- Coopers and Lybrand Consulting. April 1995. Economic Benefits of BC Parks. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks.

- Court of Appeal transcripts, Delgamuukw v Her Majesty the Queen and the Attorney General of Canada. March 8, 1991. *Statement of Facts, Appellants Factum*.

- Crane Management Consultants Ltd. January 1996. *Morice TSA: Socio-Economic Analysis. Economics and Trade Branch*, BC Ministry of Forests.

- David Crane. 1992. *The Next Canadian Century, Building a Competitive Economy*.

- Debbie Park, Economic Development Officer – Nadina Community Futures. *Invest in Houston BC*. District of Houston.

- Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Fall 1999. *Intellectual Property and Aboriginal People: A Working Paper*. Research and Analysis Directorate.

- DPA Group Inc. and MacLaren Plansearch Corp. March 1988. *Fishing Lodges and Resorts in BC Marketing and Development Initiatives*.

- Fuller, A.M., and D.G. Reid. 1998. "Rural Tourism Planning: A Community Development Approach," in *Rural Rehabilitation: A Modern Perspective*. S.T. Smith (Ed.), Ahab Press, Whiteplains, New York.

- Gitxsan and Wet'suwet'en Hereditary Chiefs. 1989. *The Spirit in the Land*.

- Hannah Horn & Greg C. Tamblyn. May 2000. *Morice Planning Area Background Report: An Overview of Natural, Cultural and Socio-Economic Features, Land uses and resources Management*. Prince Rupert Interagency Management Committee.

- Harris Hudema Consulting Group Limited & Eric Vance & Associates. January 2000. *Houston Community Profile*. The District of Houston.
- Houston Snowmobile Club. December 2001. *Morice District Snowmobile Use Information*. Morice & Lakes TSA's IFPA.
- Howe, Jim et al. 1997. *Balancing Nature and Commerce in Gateway Communities*. The Conservation Fund and the Sonoran Institute.
- *Indian Act*, Section 18 (1)
- ISTC-Tourism. December 1990. *Fishing and Hunting Lodges/Resorts in Canada: A Position Paper*.
- J Paul & Associates Inc. March 1999. *Projecting BC Recreation Use to the Year 2012*. Ministry of Environment Lands and Parks, Parks Division.
- J.O.A.T. Consulting. December 11, 2001. *District of Houston: Community Economic development Strategy & Implementation Plan*. Community Futures Development Corporation of Nadina.
- Jo-Anne Fiske and Betty Patrick. 2000. *Cis Dideen Kat, When the Plumes Rise*.
- John P. Kotter. 1996. *Leading Change*.
- Johnston, Margaret E., Twyname, G. David and Haider, Wolfgang, eds. 1998. *Shaping Tomorrow's North: The Role of Tourism and Recreation*. Lakehead University Centre for Northern Studies.
- Justice Institute of British Columbia. *Critical Skills for communicating in Conflict*.
- KPMG Consulting. March 1995. *District of Houston: Economic Contributions and Benefits Received*. District of Houston.
- LaRue Tone Hosmar. 1996. *The Ethics of Management*.
- Lindberg, Kreg and Hawkins, Donald E., eds. 1993. *Ecotourism: A Guide for Planners and Managers*. The Ecotourism Society.
- Michael M'Gonigle, Brian Egan Lisa Ambus. July 2001.*When there's a Way, there's a Will*.
- Ministry of Forests. August 1992. *Morice River Local Resource Use Plan*. Morice Forest District.
- Ministry of Forests. February 1996. *Morice Timber Supply Area: Timber Supply Review Discussion Paper*.
- Ministry of Forests. February 1996. *Morice TSA: Timber Supply Analysis*.
- Outdoor Recreation Council of America. 1997. *Human Powered Outdoor Recreation State of the Industry Report*.

- Pam Wight and Associates. March 1999. *Catalogue of Exemplary Practices in Adventure Travel and Ecotourism.* Canadian Tourism Commission.
- Pannell Kerr Forster Consulting Inc. December 2001. *National Snowmobile Tourism Study*. Canadian Tourism Commission, Canadian Council of Snowmobile Organizations & Provincial / Territorial Partners.
- Paul Tennant. 1990. *Aboriginal People and Politics, The Indian Land Question in British Columbia, 1849-1989*. UBC Press.
- Peter W. Williams and Greg George. August 2000. *Shaping Aboriginal Tourism Product Response to the International Marketplace*.
- Price Waterhouse Coopers. Markets 2000. *Demand for Aboriginal Culture Products in Key European Markets.*
- Province of B.C. Ministry of Environment Lands and Parks. April 1999. *Commercial Recreation on Crown Land Policy.*
- Stephen Brooks.1998. *Public Policy in Canada*.
- Synergy Management Group Ltd. March 1999. *Morice Forest Sector Strategic Plan: Opportunity Study and Action Plan*. Forest Renewal BC.
- Tetrad Consulting Services. March 2000. *Business Start-Up Kit: Snowmobile Guiding*. Part of the Houston 2000 Forest Tourism Development Plan. Houston and District Chamber of Commerce.
- Tetrad Consulting Services. March 2000. *Houston Forest Tourism Development Plan*. Houston and District Chamber of Commerce.
- Tetrad Consulting Services. March 2000. *Houston Tourism Marketing Strategy*. Houston and District Chamber of Commerce.
- The Economic Planning Group. March 1999. *On the Path to Success- Lessons from Canadian Adventure Travel and Ecotourism Operators.* Canadian Tourism Commission.
- The Randolph Group. January 1997. *Adventure Travel and Ecotourism in Canada: Strategic Framework for Development*. Canadian Tourism Commission.
- Tourism British Columbia. 1997 "The Report on Visitors to Northeast BC Region". *British Columbia Visitor Study: Report on Travel in British Columbia*.
- Tourism British Columbia. 1999. *Tourism Product Guide*. Annual Visitor Information Counsellor Handbook.
- Tourism British Columbia. 2000. *Accommodations*. Vancouver, BC. OP Publishing.
- Tourism Canada. February 1995. *Adventure Travel in Canada: An Overview of Product, Market and Business Potential*.

- Tourism Research Group and DPA Group Inc. November 1989. *A Marketing and Development Plan for the Freshwater Fishing Resorts of BC*.
- Urban Systems. January 2002. *Official Community Plan*. District of Houston.
- Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting. 1999. *Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy*.
- Yin'Tah Marketing & Consulting.1999. *Wet'suwet'en Tourism Strategy*.